ADVANCES IN EXPERIMENTAL MEDICINE AND BIOLOGY

Volume 560

MECHANISMS OF LYMPHOCYTE ACTIVATION AND IMMUNE REGULATION X

Innate Immunity

Edited by
Sudhir Gupta,
William E. Paul,
and
Ralph Steinman

MECHANISMS OF LYMPHOCYTE ACTIVATION AND IMMUNE REGULATION X

Innate Immunity

ADVANCES IN EXPERIMENTAL MEDICINE AND BIOLOGY

Editorial Board:

NATHAN BACK, *State University of New York at Buffalo*

IRUN R. COHEN, *The Weizmann Institute of Science*

DAVID KRITCHEVSKY, *Wistar Institute*

ABEL LAJTHA, *N. S. Kline Institute for Psychiatric Research*

RODOLFO PAOLETTI, *University of Milan*

Recent Volumes in this Series

Volume 553
BIOMATERIALS: From Molecules to Engineered Tissues
Edited by Nesrin Hasırcı and Vasıf Hasırcı

Volume 554
PROTECTING INFANTS THROUGH HUMAN MILK: Advancing the Scientific Evidence
Edited by Larry K. Pickering, Ardythe L. Morrow, Guillermo M. Ruiz-Palacios, and Richard J. Schanler

Volume 555
BREAST FEEEDING: Early Influences on Later Health
Edited by Gail Goldberg, Andrew Prentice, Ann Prentice, Suzanne Filteau, and Elsie Widdowson

Volume 556
IMMUNOINFORMATICS: Opportunities and Challenges of Bridging Immunology with Computer and Information Sciences
Edited by Christian Schoenbach, V. Brusic, and Akihiko Konagaya

Volume 557
BRAIN REPAIR
Edited by M. Bähr

Volume 558
DEFECTS OF SECRETION IN CYSTIC FIBROSIS
Edited by Carsten Schultz

Volume 559
CELL VOLUME AND SIGNALING
Edited by Peter K. Lauf and Norma C. Adragna

Volume 560
MECHANISMS OF LYMPHOCYTE ACTIVATION AND IMMUNE REGULATION X: Innate Immunity
Edited by Sudhir Gupta, William Paul, and Ralph Steinman

Volume 561
CHEMISTRY AND SAFETY OF ACRYLAMIDE IN FOOD
Edited by Mendel Friedman and Don Mottram

A Continuation Order Plan is available for this series. A continuation order will bring delivery of each new volume immediately upon publication. Volumes are billed only upon actual shipment. For further information please contact the publisher.

MECHANISMS OF LYMPHOCYTE ACTIVATION AND IMMUNE REGULATION X

Innate Immunity

Edited by

Sudhir Gupta
University of California Irvine
Irvine, California

William E. Paul
NIAID, NIH
Bethesda, Maryland

and

Ralph Steinman
Rockefeller University
New York, New York

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Gupta, Sudhir.
Mechanisms of lymphocyte activation and immune regulation X: innate immunity/
Sudhir Gupta, William E. Paul, Ralph Steinman.
p. cm. (Advances in experimental medicine and biology; vol. 560)
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0-387-24188-4
1. Natural immunity—Congresses. 2. Lymphocyte transformation—Congresses. 3. Immune response—Regulation—Congresses. I. Paul, William E. II. Steinman, Ralph. III. Title. IV. Series.

QR185.2.G87 2005
616.07′9—dc22

2004065389

A C.I.P. Catalogue record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.

Proceedings of 10th International Conference on Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation: Innate Immunity, held February 6–8, 2004 in Newport Beach, California

ISSN: 0065 2598
ISBN-10: 0-387-24188-4
ISBN-13: 978-0387-24188-3

©2005 Springer Science+Business Media, Inc.
All rights reserved. This work may not be translated or copied in whole or in part without the written permission of the publisher (Springer Science+Business Media, Inc., 233 Spring Street, New York, NY 10013, USA), except for brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis. Use in connection with any form of information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed is forbidden.
The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

Printed in the United States of America

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

springeronline.com

PREFACE

Immunological science is an ever expanding enterprise in which new vistas continually open. Indeed, immunology represents one of the major scientific crossroads, linking human disease and fundamental biology. Yet even in a field as vigorous as this, the revolution touched off by the demonstration that the nature of innate immune responses determines the quality and the intensity of the adaptive response has been almost unprecedented.

Charles Janeway's prescient presentation at Cold Spring Harbor in 1989, in which he argued that there were receptors on critical cells in the immune system that were specific for certain invariant ligands expressed by microbial pathogens, planted a seed that has yielded a bumper crop. When he and Medzhitov showed that the Drosophila *toll* had a vertebrate homolog in the TLRs and that the TLRs were the (or one of the families of) *pattern recognition receptors* (PRRs) that he had postulated, there was no stopping the flood of highly innovative and important research that followed. Eleven different TLRs have been identified and the list of their ligands grows. Other molecules, some known for a long time, can also be validly considered PRRs.

The cellular and molecular details of how pathogens are detected by the immune system and how that detection is translated into the mounting of an immune response appropriate in quality to the lifestyle (disease style) of the pathogen are being rapidly unraveled. In many respects, this newly recognized "third law of immunology" — *the innate immune response directs the adaptive response* — has established itself fully beside the first law (*universality of immune recognition*) and the second law (*avoidance of self reactivity*).

The *Tenth International Conference on Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation*, part of the biennial series held at Newport Beach California, dealt with this critical area. The presentations revolved about the topic of innate immunity, which was the title of the conference. Many of the leading figures in research in this subject were present. The presentations represented the cutting edge of contemporary research and inspired a spirited and highly useful discussion.

This volume, representing the papers that summarize the lectures, should provide the reader with a very good picture of this field in the midpoint of the first decade of the 21st century. The meeting and the book are organized along the main themes of the field, Toll Receptors and TLRs, NK cells, Dendritic Cells, and the Complement System.

Rather than reviewing the contents of the individual chapters, which the reader can do at his/her leisure, we emphasize the fact that this is a field in flux. Much has been

accomplished but the field has by no means become "mature." Areas of major controversy exist; progress is rapid; today's certainty may be the concept on tomorrow's dust heap. We can only say this to the reader: stay tuned, the best is yet to come.

The organizers are particularly grateful to all who played a role in making the meeting a success and the book a reality. We particularly thank Janet Nagurski for editorial assistance.

Sudhir Gupta
William E. Paul
Ralph Steinman

CONTENTS

1. **TIR DOMAIN-CONTAINING ADAPTORS REGULATE TLR SIGNALING PATHWAYS**
Masahiro Yamamoto and Shizuo Akira 1

2. **TOLL-LIKE RECEPTORS: LINKING INNATE AND ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY**
Chandrashekhar Pasare and Ruslan Medzhitov 11

3. **ACTIVATION OF INSECT AND VERTEBRATE TOLL SIGNALING: FROM ENDOGENOUS CYTOKINE LIGAND TO DIRECT RECOGNITION OF PATHOGEN PATTERNS**
Nicholas J. Gay, Alexander N. R. Weber and Monique Gangloff 19

4. **GENETIC ANALYSIS OF INNATE IMMUNITY: IDENTIFICATION AND FUNCTION OF THE TIR ADAPTER PROTEINS**
Bruce Beutler, Kasper Hoebe, Philippe Georgel, Koichi Tabeta, and Xin Du 29

5. **NF-κB, AN EVOLUTIONARILY CONSERVED MEDIATOR OF IMMUNE AND INFLAMMATORY RESPONSES**
Changchun Xiao and Sankar Ghosh 41

6. **INFLUENCE OF KIR DIVERSITY ON HUMAN IMMUNITY**
Peter Parham 47

7. **NKG2D IN INNATE AND ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY**
Lewis L. Lanier 51

8. **SPECIFIC AND NON-SPECIFIC NATURAL KILLER CELL RESPONSES TO VIRAL INFECTION**
Wayne M. Yokoyama 57

9. **ANTIGEN PROCESSING AND PRESENTATION BY DENDRITIC CELLS: CELL BIOLOGICAL MECHANISMS**
Ira Mellman 63

10. **HUMAN THYMIC STROMAL LYMPHOPOIETIN TRIGGERS DENDRITIC CELL-MEDIATED ALLERGIC INFLAMMATION AND CD4+ T CELL HOMEOSTATIC EXPANSION**
Norihiko Watanabe, Vassili Soumelis, and Yong-Jun Liu 69

11. **ROLE OF TRAF6 IN THE IMMUNE SYSTEM**
Yongwon Choi 77

12. **THE INNATE FUNCTIONS OF DENDRITIC CELLS IN PERIPHERAL LYMPHOID TISSUES**
Ralph M. Steinman, Laura Bonifaz, Shin-ichiro Fujii, Kang Liu, David Bonnyay, Sayuri Yamazaki, Maggi Pack, Daniel Hawiger, Tomonori Iyoda, Kayo Inaba, and Michel C. Nussenzweig 83

13. **THE MANNOSE-BINDING LECTIN: AN INFECTION SUSCEPTIBILITY GENE**
R. Alan Ezekowitz, Lei Shi, Iain Fraser, and Kazue Takahashi 99

14. **IMMUNOTHERAPY VIA DENDRITIC CELLS**
A. Karolina Palucka, Beatrice Laupeze, Caroline Aspord, Hiroaki Saito, Gaetan Jego, Joseph Fay, Sophie Paczesny, Virginia Pascual and Jacques Banchereau 105

15. **ONTOGENY OF LANGERHANS CELLS AND GRAFT VERSUS HOST DISEASE**
Miriam Merad 115

16. **ROLE OF THE CD19 AND CD21/35 RECEPTOR COMPLEX IN INNATE IMMUNITY, HOST DEFENSE AND AUTOIMMUNITY**
Karen M. Haas and Thomas F. Tedder 125

17. **ROLE OF COMPLEMENT RECEPTOR 2 IN THE PATHOGENESIS OF SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS**
Susan A. Boackle 141

18. **COMPLEMENT REGULATION DURING PREGNANCY**
Hector Molina 149

INDEX 157

1

TIR DOMAIN-CONTAINING ADAPTORS REGULATE TLR SIGNALING PATHWAYS

Masahiro Yamamoto[1] and Shizuo Akira[1,2]

1. INTRODUCTION

Against invading microorganisms, vertebrates including mammals develop innate immune systems, which are activated by microbial components possessing conserved structures called pathogen associated molecular patterns (PAMPs); including bacterial cell wall components, and viral genomic DNA and RNA. PAMPs are recognized by pattern recognition receptors mainly expressing on immune responsive cells. Toll-like receptors (TLRs)[1-3] are an example of pattern recognition receptors, and TLR family members are conserved among mammals. To date, 10 and 12 TLRs have been reported in human and mouse, respectively. Almost all TLRs have been shown to recognize PAMPs; TLR2 is the receptor for peptidoglycan and lipoprotein, including bacterial lipoprotein (BLP) and mycoplasmal lipoprotein (MALP-2)[2-5]. Especially, BLP and MALP-2 are reportedly recognized in the functional heterodimeric association of TLR2 with TLR1 and TLR6, respectively. TLR4 is involved in the recognition of a gram-negative cell wall component, lipopolysaccharide (LPS)[6,7]. TLR5 is a receptor for flagellin, a component of bacterial flagella[8]. TLR3 and TLR9 are receptors for double-stranded (ds) RNA and unmethylated CpG DNA, respectively[9,10]. Although the natural ligand for TLR7 is yet to be identified, the receptor has been shown to recognize imidazoquid or its derivative, R-848. Since they are utilized in the treatment of genital warts caused by human papilomavirus, the ligand for TLR7 seems to be a component of viruses[11]. Thus, accumulating evidence clearly demonstrates that TLRs serve as pattern recognition receptors to detect invading microbes (Figure 1).

[1]Department of Host Defense, Research Institute for Microbial Diseases, Osaka University. [2]ERATO, 3-1 Yamada-oka, Suita Osaka 565-0851, Japan. Correspondence should be addressed to: Shizuo Akira, Department of Host Defense, Research Institute for Microbial Diseases, Osaka University, 3-1 Yamada-oka, Suita Osaka 565-0851, Japan; phone: 81-6-6879-8303; fax: 81-6-6879-8305; E-mail: sakira@biken.osaka-u.ac.jp.

Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation X
Edited by Gupta *et al.*, Springer, 2005

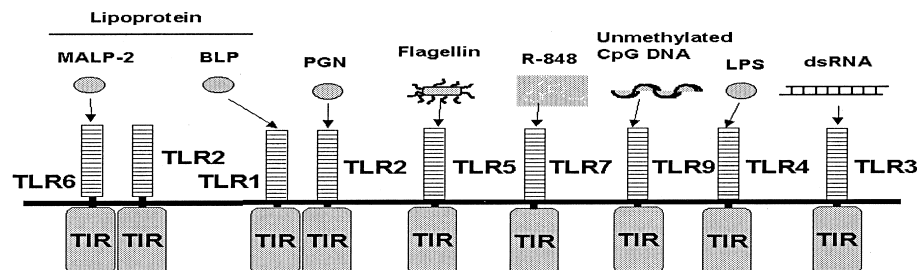


Figure 1. Summary of PAMPs that are recognized by TLRs

2. THE MYD88-DEPENDENT PATHWAYS AND THE MYD88-INDEPENDENT PATHWAYS

As a structural feature, all TLRs possess an extracellular domain rich in leucines, called the leucine-rich repeat (LRR), and an intracellular domain which shows substantial homology with the intracellular portion of IL-1 receptor (IL-1R) family members, the so called Toll-IL-1R (TIR) domain. LRR has been shown to be responsible for the interaction with PAMPs. Ligation of the extracellular domain of TLRs with microbial components activates intracellular signaling cascades, culminating in various immune responses such as proinflammatory cytokine production, B cell proliferation and dendritic cell (DC) maturation[1-3]. The signaling cascades originate from the TIR domain, which recruits an intracellular TIR domain-containing adaptor molecule, MyD88 (Myeloid Differentiation factor 88), which was originally identified as a myeloid differentiation primary response gene that is rapidly up-regulated upon IL-6-stimulated differentiation of M1 myeloleukemic cells into macrophages[12]. Subsequent *in vitro* studies showed overexpression of MyD88 leads to activation of NF-κB and MAPKs[13,14]. MyD88 possesses a TIR domain in the C-terminal portion and a Death Domain (DD) in the N-terminal portion, which interacts with DD-containing kinases such as IL-1R-associated kinase (IRAK) family members. Among them, IRAK-1 and IRAK-4 have been shown to participate in activation of IL-1R and TLR-mediated signaling pathways. Ligation of PAMPs with TLRs leads to phosphorylation of IRAK-1 and IRAK-4, and then activates NF-κB and MAPKs via TRAF6[15-17].

Evidence provided from studies using gene-targeted mice clearly demonstrates the significance of MyD88 in the activation of TLR signaling pathways. MyD88-deficient mice showed completely defective responses to IL-1 family members in terms of gene expression and activation of signaling molecules[18]. Moreover, responses to TLR1, TLR2, TLR5, TLR6, TLR7 and TLR9 ligands were also completely abolished in MyD88-deficient cells, indicating that MyD88 is an essential adaptor for those receptors[8,11,19-21].

However, MyD88-deficient mice retain certain types of responses, particularly observed in TLR3 and TLR4-mediated signaling pathways[9,22]. LPS and dsRNA still stimulated activation of NF-κB and MAPKs with delayed kinetics, even in the absence of MyD88[9,22]. In addition to those activations, IRF-3, a transcription factor crucial for the expression of IFN-β, was activated in response to LPS and poly(I:C) in MyD88-deficient mice[23,24]. Further analysis revealed that TLR3- and TLR4-mediated MyD88-independnent signaling pathways associate with IFN-β induction and subsequent expression of interferon-inducible genes such as IP-10, RANTES, and GARG-16[23,24]. Moreover, LPS and poly(I:C)-induced up-regulation of CD40,CD80, and CD86 in MyD88-deficient DCs was still observed, indicating that TLR signaling pathways were separated into two classes[25]. One is the MyD88-dependent pathway that leads to proinflammatory cytokine production, B cell activation; the other the MyD88-independent pathway observed in TLR3 and TLR4 signaling pathways, culminating in the expression of IFN-β and IFN-inducible genes. Several groups have attempted to elucidate the molecular mechanisms of the MyD88-independent pathway on the hypothesis that other TIR domain-containing adaptor molecules may regulate MyD88-independent pathways.

3. TIRAP: THE SECOND ADAPTOR MOLECULE

Two groups independently reported the identification of the second TIR domain-containing adaptor named TIRAP (for TIR domain-containing Adaptor Protein, also known as Mal)[26,27]. TIRAP possesses a TIR domain in the C-terminal portion. Ectopic expression of TIRAP strongly up-regulated the NF-κB-dependent promoter, and the dominant-negative form of TIRAP significantly inhibited TLR4-mediated, but not IL-1R- and TLR9-mediated, NF-κB activation. In addition, ectopic expression of TIRAP associated with the TIR domain of TLR4, but not TLR9. TIRAP inhibitory small peptide severely impaired LPS-induced DC maturation as well as proinflammatory cytokine production. Given that LPS-stimulated DC maturation is one of hallmarks of the MyD88-independent pathway, TIRAP may be involved in the TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathway.

However, analysis using TIRAP-deficient mice did not support the in vitro data; namely, the MyD88-independent signaling pathway in response to LPS was normal in TIRAP-deficient mice[28,29]. TIRAP-deficient mice showed normal induction of IFN-inducible genes in macrophages and similar levels of up-regulation of surface marker molecules in DCs in response to LPS. Furthermore, the MyD88-independent responses in MyD88/TIRAP-doubly deficient mice were also intact, indicating that TIRAP is dispensable for the MyD88-independent pathway[28]. However, LPS-stimulated proinflammatory cytokine production such as TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-12 p40 was not observed in TIRAP-deficient macrophages. In vivo responses to LPS in TIRAP-deficient mice were also severely impaired. TLR3, TLR5, TLR7, and TLR9-mediated proinflammatory cytokine production were normal; however, TLR2 (TLR1/TLR6)-mediated production was significantly perturbed in TIRAP-deficient mice. In terms of signal transduction, TLR2 and TLR4-mediated, but not TLR7-mediated, NF-κB and MAPKs activation were impaired in TIRAP-deficient cells. Especially, TLR4-mediated NF-κB and MAPKs were activated with delayed kinetics, suggesting that TIRAP is not involved in the MyD88-independent pathway. Instead, TIRAP is essential for the MyD88-dependent pathways

shared by TLR2 and TLR4. Taken together, these data indicate that molecules other than MyD88 and TIRAP are responsible for the MyD88-independent pathways.

4. TRIF: THE THIRD ADAPTOR MOLECULE

Further database searching and yeast two-hybrid analysis independently identified the third TIR domain-containing adaptor molecule, TRIF (for TIR domain-containing adaptor inducing IFN-β, also known as TICAM-1)[30,31]. Ectopic expression of TRIF significantly activated the NF-κB-dependent promoter, like MyD88 and TIRAP. Additionally, overexpression of TRIF strongly up-regulated the IFN-β promoter, unlike MyD88 and TIRAP. Biochemical analysis showed TRIF directly associated with the TIR domains of TLR3 and IRF-3, indicating that TRIF may be related to the TLR3-mediated MyD88-independent pathway, however, the involvement of TRIF in the TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathway remains to be determined.

TRIF-deficient mice and mice carrying a mutation in *Trif* gene (LPS2 mice) were generated and analyzed to examine the physiological function of the molecule [32,33]. TRIF-deficient mice showed defective responses to poly(I:C) including expression of IFN-β and IFN-inducible genes, and B cell activation. TLR3-mediated NF-κB and IRF-3 activation was also impaired in TRIF-deficient mice, indicating that TRIF is responsible for the TLR3-mediated MyD88-independent pathway *in vivo*. In the case of TLR4-mediated responses, LPS-induced expression of IFN-inducible genes was significantly reduced in TRIF-deficient cells; however, LPS-activated NF-κB and MAPKs were apparently intact. Even if TRIF-deficient cells may lack the MyD88-independent pathway, they retain MyD88-depednent NF-κB and MAPKs activation. This shows that the MyD88-depedent pathway may mask the loss of the MyD88-independent pathway. Indeed, LPS-induced NF-κB and MAPKs activation and the expression of IFN-inducible genes were completely abolished in MyD88/TRIF-doubly deficient mice, demonstrating that TRIF plays a central role in the TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathway as well as that of TLR3.

Further, TRIF-deficient mice showed defective proinflammatory cytokine production and B cell activation in response to the TLR4 ligand, but not to other TLR ligands. Although proinflammatory cytokine production has been considered to be MyD88-dependent, the impairment in TRIF-deficient mice suggested that, at least in the TLR4 signaling pathway, not only the MyD88-dependent pathway but also the MyD88-independent pathway may be required for proinflammatory cytokine production. *In vitro* studies using deletion mutants of TRIF indicated that the N-terminal and C-terminal portions of TRIF differentially take part in the activation of NF-κB. Furthermore, the N-terminal, but not the C-terminal, portion has been shown to potentiate the activation of the IFN-β promoter. These results suggest that the N-terminal portion of TRIF may be responsible for the MyD88-independent pathway. However, which portions of TRIF are required for proinflammatory cytokine production remains to be seen.

5. TRAM: THE FORTH ADAPTOR MOLECULE

To date, 2 more TIR domain-containing adaptor molecules have been registered in the database (Figure 2)[34]. One is TRAM (for TRIF-Related Adaptor Molecule, also

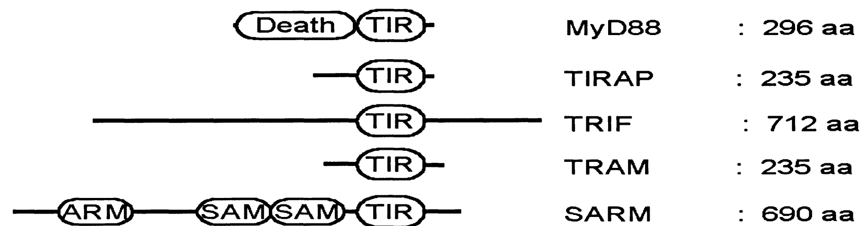


Figure 2. TIR domain-containing adaptor family consists of five members. To date, 5 molecules have been reported as TIR domain-containing adaptors. Death: the death domain. TIR: the Toll/IL-1 Receptor domain. SAM: the SAM domain. ARM: the armadillo repeat.

known as TICAM-2)[35-37]. TRAM is the fourth adaptor whose functions have been analyzed using gene-targeted mice and small inhibitory RNA (siRNA). TRAM possesses the TIR domain in the central portion and showed greater homology with TRIF than MyD88 and TIRAP. Ectopic expression of TRAM induced the activation of NF-κB and the IFN-β promoter, albeit at more reduced levels than MyD88 and TRIF, respectively.

In vivo analysis using TRAM-deficient mice showed that LPS-induced expression of IFN-β and IFN-inducible genes was not observed in TRAM-deficient macrophages[35]. However, poly(I:C)-induced expression of these molecules was intact. Moreover, LPS-mediated, but not other TLR ligand-mediated, production of proinflammatory cytokine, B cell activation and maturation were severely impaired in TRAM-deficient cells. In view of the activation of signaling molecules, TRAM-deficient cells showed defective levels of LPS-induced, but not poly(I:C)-induced, IRF-3 activation. This phenotype was reminiscent of that of TRIF-deficient mice in the TLR4 signaling pathway[32,33]. Moreover, LPS-mediated, but not poly(I:C)-mediated, activation of NF-κB and MAPKs was significantly abrogated, especially at later time points. Given that LPS-induced activation of the signaling cascade with delayed kinetics was the feature of the MyD88-independent pathway, the TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathway was affected by the TRAM deficiency. Compared with TRIF-deficient mice showing defective responses in TLR3- and TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathways, the TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathway was specifically blocked in TRAM-deficient mice. Further, biochemical analysis showed that TRAM associated with TRIF and TLR4, but not with TLR3 and other TLRs[36,37]. Together, these studies clearly demonstrated that TRAM is specifically involved in the MyD88-independent pathway of TLR4 signaling (Figure 3).

The other molecule registered in database is SARM[38], which was originally identified as containing an Armadillo motif and two SAM domains in the N-terminal portion; and

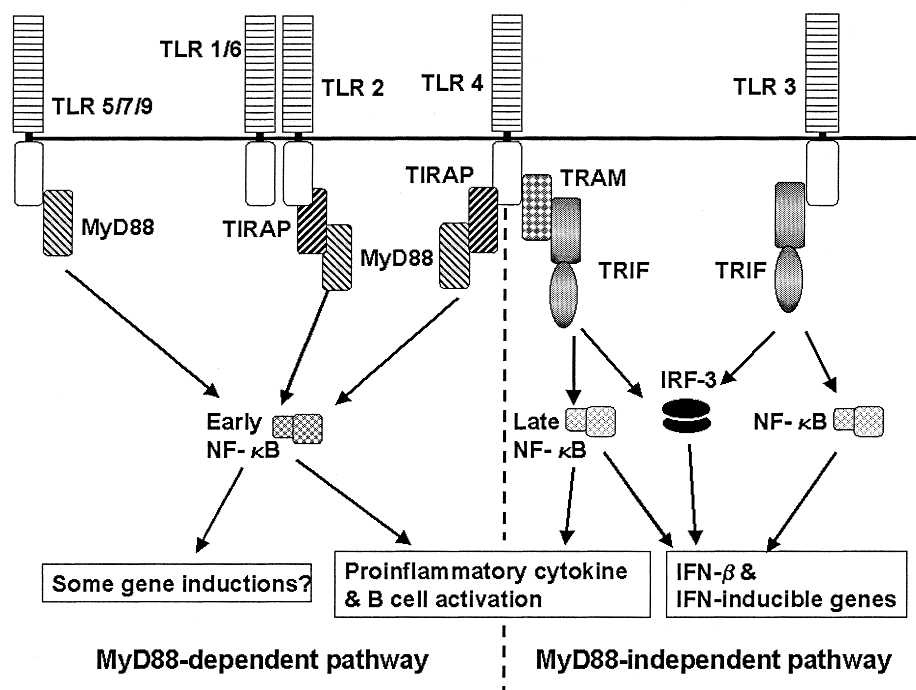


Figure 3. Participation of adaptors in TLR signaling pathways. MyD88 is essential for inflammatory cytokine production in response to all TLR ligands, except for the TLR3 ligand. The second adaptor, TIRAP/Mal, is required for TLR2/TLR1/TLR6- and TLR4-mediated MyD88-dependent pathways. The third adaptor, TRIF, is an essential signal transducer for both TLR3- and TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathways. The fourth adaptor, TRAM, is specifically involved in the TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathway. Other adaptor(s) may participate in the MyD88-dependent pathways via other TLRs such as TLR5, TLR7, and TLR9.

subsequently to possess the TIR domain in the C-terminal portion. The physiological functions of SARM in TLR signaling pathways or others remain unknown.

6. OTHER MOLECULES POSITIVELY REGULATING TLR SIGNALING

The analysis using TRIF-deficient mice showed TRIF is a key signal transducer in the MyD88-independent pathway leading to IRF-3[32,33]. Although IRF-3 was activated through the phosphorylation in the C-terminal portion, TRIF contains no kinase domain or kinase activity itself; indicating that there may exist a kinase(s) that bridges TRIF and IRF-3. Recent studies determined 2 candidates, IKKϵ and TBK1 (also known as IKK-*i* and NAK/T2K, respectively), out of a number of kinases[39,40]. Overexpression of IKKϵ or TBK1 strongly activated the IFN-β promoter, like TRIF and TRAM. Moreover, both IKKϵ and TBK1 phosphorylated IRF-3 *in vitro*. Analysis using siRNA targeted to IKKϵ

and TBK1 showed significant reduction in TRIF-mediated activation of the IFN-β promoter. Biochemically, both kinases associated with TRIF and IRF-3. Taken together, IKKϵ and TBK1 may act as IRF-3 kinases downstream of TLR3 and TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathways. Very recent studies using TBK1-deficient cells clearly demonstrated that TBK1 acts as an IRF-3 kinase downstream of TRIF[41].

Several molecules possibly relate to MyD88-dependent pathways downstream of MyD88. One is the Pellino family of proteins. In *Drosophila melanogaster*, Pellino has been initially identified as a molecule associating with Pelle, a Drosophila homologue of IRAK[42]. In mammals, the Pellino family has 3 members, Pellino1, 2, and 3. Pellino1 appears to activate NF-κB in the IL-1R signaling pathway through the integration of IL-1R-IRAK1-IRAK4-TRAF6 complex[43]. Pellino2 and Pellino3 promote activation of c-Jun and Elk-1 in the TLR-IL-1R signaling pathway[44-46]. However, the physiological roles of the Pellino family of proteins remain to be determined. Another is TRAF6. The significance of TRAF6 in the MyD88-dependent singling pathway has been well established. Indeed, TRAF6-deficient cells showed defective responses in IL-1 and LPS-induced cellular responses and activation of signaling molecules[47,48]. Surprisingly, TRAF6 has been shown to associate with TRIF and to be involved in the activation of NF-κB via the N-terminal portion of TRIF. Given that TRIF mediates the MyD88-independent late-phase NF-κB activation in the TLR4 signaling, TRAF6 may possibly participate not only in the MyD88-dependent pathway, but also in the MyD88-independent pathway via TRIF[49].

7. CONCLUDING REMARKS

MyD88 is a TIR domain-containing adaptor common to signaling pathways via the TLR family. However, MyD88-deficient mice show normal responses in TLR3-ligand stimulation and maintain certain types of cellular responses such as the production of IFN-β and IFN-inducible genes in TLR4-ligand stimulation; indicating that TLR3- and TLR4-mediated signaling may possess MyD88-independent pathways. The identification of other TIR domain-containing adaptors, TRIF, TIRAP and TRAM, revealed that TRIF is an essential signal transducer in TLR3- and TLR4-mediated MyD88-independent pathways. Moreover, TIRAP and TRAM provide specificity for the MyD88-dependent component of TLR2 and TLR4 signaling, and the MyD88-independent component of TLR4 signaling. Taken together, TIR domain-containing adaptors may account for specificity in the downstream signaling of individual TLRs.

8. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

We thank Akira's Lab members for their helpful discussion, and M. Hashimoto for secretarial assistance. Supported by grants from Special Coordination Funds, the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology, Research Fellowships of the Japan Society for the Promotion of Science for Young Scientists, The Uehara Memorial Foundation, The Naito Foundation, and The Junior Research Associate from RIKEN.

9. REFERENCES

1. Takeda, K., Kaisho, T. & Akira, S. Toll-like receptors. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **21**, 335-376 (2003).
2. Janeway, C.A. Jr., & Medzhitov, R. Innate immune recognition. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **20**, 197-216 (2002).
3. Yamamoto, M., Takeda, K. & Akira, S. TIR domain-containing adaptors define the specificity of TLR signaling. *Mol. Immunol.* **40**, 861-868 (2004).
4. Takeuchi, O. et al. Differential roles of TLR2 and TLR4 in recognition of gram-negative and gram-positive bacterial cell wall components. *Immunity* **11**, 443-451 (1999).
5. Alexopoulou, L. et al. Hyporesponsiveness to vaccination with Borrelia burgdorferi OspA in humans and in TLR1- and TLR2-deficient mice. *Nat. Med.* **8**, 878-884 (2002).
6. Hoshino, K. et al. Toll-like receptor 4(TLR4)-deficient mice are hyporesponsive to lipopolysaccharide: evidence for TLR4 as the Lps gene product. *J. Immunol.* **162**, 3749-3752 (1999).
7. Poltorak, A. et al. Defective LPS signaling in C3H/HeJ and C57BL/10ScCr mice: mutations in Tlr4 gene. *Science* **282**, 2085-2088 (1998).
8. Hayashi, F. et al. The innate immune response to bacterial flagellin is mediated by Toll-like receptor 5. *Nature* **410**, 1099-1103 (2001).
9. Alexopoulou, L., Holt, A.C., Medzhitov, R. & Flavell, R.A. Recognition of double-stranded RNA and activation of NF-κB by Toll-like receptor 3. *Nature* **413**, 732-738 (2001).
10. Hemmi, H. et al. A Toll-like receptor recognizes bacterial DNA. *Nature* **408**, 740-745 (2000).
11. Hemmi, H. et al. Small anti-viral compounds activate immune cells via the TLR7 MyD88-dependent signaling pathway. *Nat. Immunol.* **3**, 196-200 (2002).
12. Lord, K.A., Hoffman-Liebermann, B., & Liebermann, D. A. Nucleotide sequence and expression of a cDNA encoding MyD88, a novel myeloid differentiation primary response gene induced by IL6. *Oncogene* **5**, 1095-1097 (1990).
13. Wesche, H., Henzel, W.J., Shillinglaw, W., Li, S. & Cao, Z. MyD88: an adapter that recruits IRAK to the IL-1 receptor complex. *Immunity* **7**, 837-847 (1997).
14. Muzio, M. Ni, J., Feng, P., & Dixit, V.M. IRAK (Pelle) family member IRAK-2 and MyD88 as proximal mediators of IL-1 signaling. *Science*. **278**:1612-1615 (1997).
15. Kanakaraj, P. et al. Interleukin (IL)-1 receptor-associated kinase (IRAK) requirement for optimal induction of multiple IL-1 signaling pathways and IL-6 production. *J Exp Med.* **187**:2073-2079 (1998).
16. Thomas, J.A. et al. Impaired cytokine signaling in mice lacking the IL-1 receptor-associated kinase. *J Immunol.* **163**:978-84 (1999).
17. Suzuki, N. et al. Severe impairment of interleukin-1 and Toll-like receptor signalling in mice lacking IRAK-4. *Nature.* **416**:750-756 (2002).
18. Adachi, O. et al. Targeted disruption of the MyD88 gene results in loss of IL-1- and IL-18-mediated function. *Immunity* **9**, 143-150 (1998).
19. Takeuchi, O. et al. Discrimination of bacterial lipoproteins by Toll-like receptor 6. *Int. Immunol.* **13**, 933-940 (2001).
20. Hacker, H. et al. Immune cell activation by bacterial CpG-DNA through myeloid differentiation marker 88 and tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated factor (TRAF)6. *J Exp Med.* **192**:595-600 (2000).
21. Schnare, M. et al. Recognition of CpG DNA is mediated by signaling pathways dependent on the adaptor protein MyD88. *Curr Biol.* **10**:1139-1142 (2000).
22. Kawai, T., Adachi, O., Ogawa, T., Takeda, K. & Akira, S. Unresponsiveness of MyD88-deficient mice to endotoxin. *Immunity* **11**, 115-122 (1999).
23. Kawai, T. et al. Lipopolysaccharide stimulates the MyD88-independent pathway and results in activation of IFN-regulatory factor 3 and the expression of a subset of lipopolysaccharide-inducible genes. *J. Immunol.* **167**, 5887-5894 (2001).
24. Doyle, S. et al. IRF3 mediates a TLR3/TLR4-specific antiviral gene program. *Immunity* **17**, 251-263 (2002).
25. Kaisho, T., Takeuchi, O., Kawai, T., Hoshino, K. & Akira, S. Endotoxin-induced maturation of MyD88-deficient dendritic cells. *J. Immunol.* **166**, 5688-5694 (2001).
26. Horng, T., Barton, G.M. & Medzhitov, R. TIRAP: an adapter molecule in the Toll signaling pathway. *Nat. Immunol.* **2**, 835-841 (2001).
27. Fitzgerald, K.A. et al. Mal (MyD88-adapter-like) is required for Toll-like receptor-4 signal transduction. *Nature* **413**, 78-83 (2001).
28. Yamamoto, M. et al. Essential role for TIRAP in activation of the signalling cascade shared by TLR2 and TLR4. *Nature* **420**, 324-329 (2002).

29. Horng, T., Barton, G.M., Flavell, R.A. & Medzhitov, R. The adaptor molecule TIRAP provides signalling specificity for Toll-like receptors. *Nature* **420**, 329-333 (2002).
30. Yamamoto, M. et al. Cutting edge: a novel Toll/IL-1 receptor domain-containing adapter that preferentially activates the IFN-β promoter in the Toll-like receptor signaling. *J. Immunol.* **169**, 6668-6672 (2002).
31. Oshiumi, H., Matsumoto, M., Funami, K., Akazawa, T. & Seya, T. TICAM-1, an adaptor molecule that participates in Toll-like receptor 3-mediated interferon-β induction. *Nat. Immunol.* **4**, 161-167. (2003).
32. Yamamoto, M. et al. Role of adaptor TRIF in the MyD88-independent Toll-Like Receptor signaling pathway. *Science* **301**, 640-643 (2003).
33. Hoebe, K. et al. Identification of Lps2 as a key transducer of MyD88-independent TIR signalling. *Nature* **424**, 743-748 (2003).
34. O'Neill, L.A., Fitzgerald, K.A. & Bowie, A.G. The Toll-IL-1 receptor adaptor family grows to five members. *Trends. Immunol.* **24**, 286-290 (2003).
35. Yamamoto, M. et al. TRAM is specifically involved in the Toll-like receptor 4-mediated MyD88-independent signaling pathway. *Nat Immunol.* **4**:1144-1150 (2003).
36. Fitzgerald, K. A. et al. LPS-TLR4 signaling to IRF-3/7 and NF-κB involves the toll adapters TRAM and TRIF. *J Exp Med.* **198**:1043-1055 (2003).
37. Oshiumi H, et al. TIR-containing adapter molecule (TICAM)-2, a bridging adapter recruiting to toll-like receptor 4 TICAM-1 that induces interferon-β. *J Biol Chem.* 278:49751-49762 (2003).
38. Mink, M., Fogelgren, B., Olszewski, K., Maroy, P. & Csiszar, K. A novel human gene (SARM) at chromosome 17q11 encodes a protein with a SAM motif and structural similarity to Armadillo/beta-catenin that is conserved in mouse, Drosophila, and Caenorhabditis elegans. *Genomics* **74**, 234-244 (2001).
39. Sharma, S. et al. Triggering the interferon antiviral response through an IKK-related pathway. *Science* **300**, 1148-1151 (2003).
40. Fitzgerald, K.A. et al. IKKε and TBK1 are essential components of the IRF3 signaling pathway. *Nat. Immunol.* **4**, 491-496 (2003).
41. McWhirter, S.M. et al. IFN-regulatory factor 3-dependent gene expression is defective in Tbk1-deficient mouse embryonic fibroblasts. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* Dec 16 (2003).
42. Grosshans, J., Schnorrer, F. & Nusslein-Volhard, C. Oligomerisation of Tube and Pelle leads to nuclear localisation of dorsal. *Mech. Dev.* **81**, 127-138 (1999).
43. iang, Z. et al. Pellino 1 is required for interleukin-1 (IL-1)-mediated signaling through its interaction with the IL-1 receptor-associated kinase 4 (IRAK4)-IRAK-tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated factor 6 (TRAF6) complex. *J. Biol. Chem.* **278**, 10952-10956 (2003).
44. Yu, K.Y. et al. Cutting edge: mouse pellino-2 modulates IL-1 and lipopolysaccharide signaling. *J. Immunol.* **169**, 4075-4078 (2002).
45. Jensen, L.E. & Whitehead, A.S. Pellino2 activates the mitogen activated protein kinase pathway. *FEBS Lett.* **545**, 199-202 (2003).
46. Jensen, L.E. & Whitehead, A.S. Pellino3, a novel member of the Pellino protein family, promotes activation of c-Jun and Elk-1 and may act as a scaffolding protein. *J. Immunol.* **171**, 1500-1506 (2003).
47. Lomaga, M.A. et al. TRAF6 deficiency results in osteopetrosis and defective interleukin-1, CD40, and LPS signaling. *Genes Dev.* **13**:1015-1024 (1999).
48. Naito, A. et al. Severe osteopetrosis, defective interleukin-1 signalling and lymph node organogenesis in TRAF6-deficient mice. *Genes Cells.* **4**:353-362 (1999).
49. Sato, S. et al. Toll/IL-1 receptor domain-containing adaptor inducing IFN-β (TRIF) associates with TNF receptor-associated factor 6 and TANK-binding kinase 1, and activates two distinct transcription factors, NF-κB and IFN-regulatory factor-3, in the Toll-like receptor signaling. *J Immunol.* **171**:4304-4310 (2003).

2

TOLL-LIKE RECEPTORS: LINKING INNATE AND ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

Chandrashekhar Pasare and Ruslan Medzhitov*

1. ABSTRACT

Work in recent years has shown an essential role for Toll-like receptors (TLRs) in the activation of innate and adaptive immunity in vertebrate animals. These germ-line encoded receptors, expressed on a diverse variety of cells and tissues, recognize conserved molecular products derived from various classes of pathogens, including Gram-positive and -negative bacteria, DNA and RNA viruses, fungi and protozoa. Ligand recognition induces a conserved host defense program, which includes production of inflammatory cytokines, upregulation of costimulatory molecules, and induction of antimicrobial defenses. Importantly, activation of dendritic cells by TLR ligands is necessary for their maturation and consequent ability to initiate adaptive immune responses. How responses are tailored by individual TLRs to contain specific classes of pathogens is not yet clear.

2. INTRODUCTION

In all animals, the innate immune system provides essential protection against invading pathogens. A key component of this system is a collection of germ-line encoded receptors called pathogen recognition receptors (PRRs), which recognize a highly conserved set of molecular structures specific to microbes (Pathogen associated molecular patterns, or PAMPs) [1]. In addition to this system, vertebrates have a second line of defense called the adaptive immune system, which employs a diverse set of somatically rearranged receptors (T- cell receptors [TCRs] and B-cell receptors [BCRs]) with the ability to recognize a large spectrum of antigens.

---

*Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Section of Immunobiology, 300 Cedar Street, TAC S660, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT 06510.

The best understood and perhaps the most important subgroup of PRRs is the Toll-like receptor family. These receptors have the ability to recognize pathogens or pathogen derived products and initiate signaling events leading to activation of innate host defenses. Signaling by TLRs initiates acute inflammatory responses by induction of anti-microbial genes and inflammatory cytokines and chemokines [2,3]. In addition, TLRs have an important role in activation of adaptive immune responses [4,5]. Although T and B cells of the adaptive immune system express receptors of enormous diversity, activation of these cells depends on induction of co-stimulatory molecules and secretion of cytokines and chemokines by the cells of the innate immune system. Effective response to microbial infection requires several levels of interactions between innate and adaptive immune systems. A variety of cell surface receptors, secreted cytokines and chemokines participate in the induction of protective immunity. We will discuss here current paradigms of the importance of innate immune recognition by TLRs and the significance of that recognition for the outcome of adaptive immune responses. We will also discuss how inappropriate activation of TLRs under certain circumstances can lead to autoimmune diseases.

3. TLRs AND THEIR LIGANDS

The mammalian TLR family consists of 10 members with distinct ligand specificities and gene targets [2,3]. TLR4 recognizes lipopolysaccharide (LPS) [6,7] from gram-negative bacteria, TLR2 recognizes peptidoglycan from gram-positive bacteria [8], TLR3 recognizes double-stranded RNA from double stranded and negative strand viruses [9], TLR7 and 8 recognize RNA from single stranded viruses [10,11], and TLR9 recognizes unmethylated CpG DNA found abundantly in prokaryotic genomes and DNA viruses [12,13]. A comprehensive list of ligands and signaling events downstream of various TLRs is described elsewhere [3,14]. In addition, several reports have suggested that some TLRs can also recognize host-derived ligand. One example is the recognition of heat shock proteins by TLR2 and TLR4 [15-17]; however, it remains possible that the recombinant heat shock proteins used in these studies were contaminated with endotoxin (or other TLR ligands), consistent with more recent reports that more stringent purification of the hsps resulted in a loss of stimulatory activity [18-20]. Another example of recognition of a host ligand by a TLR (chromatin associated DNA by TLR9) is discussed in more detail below.

4. ADAPTIVE IMMUNE SYSTEM: MECHANISMS OF TOLERANCE AND IMPORTANCE OF INNATE IMMUNE RECOGNITION

Although most auto-reactive T and B lymphocytes undergo clonal deletion during their development in primary lymphoid organs (central tolerance), a few nevertheless escape into the periphery and must be held in check by mechanisms of peripheral tolerance [21].

Clonal deletion of auto-reactive B cells is achieved in the bone marrow. Immature B cells that interact with membrane bound self-antigens are promptly deleted, while those that interact with soluble self-antigens are subject to a much more prolonged process of anergy followed by apoptosis [22-25]. In the case of T cells, clonal deletion is the fate of thymocytes with high affinity to self-antigens expressed in the thymus [21]. To make this an effective process, it is important that genes that function only in peripheral tissues and organs are expressed in thymic epithelium and DCs resident in thymus. Recent findings identify a transcriptional regulator called autoimmune regulator (AIRE) that permits thymic expression of many genes that function or are otherwise expressed only in peripheral tissues and organs [26,27]. Mice and humans with defective AIRE have an increased number of self-reactive T cells, which underscores the important role of AIRE in central tolerance [26-28]. Because expression of co-stimulatory molecules on thymic APCs is essential for induction of negative selection, it will be interesting to address the role of TLRs in controlling co-stimulatory molecule upregulation in this context [29-32].

Tolerance to self-antigens in the peripheral tissues and secondary lymphoid organs is achieved by at least two distinct and equally important mechanisms. The first one is through controlled expression of co-stimulatory molecules on professional APCs. The second is by the suppressor activity of a specialized group of cells called suppressor or regulatory T cells (Tr cells). Priming of naive T cells can be induced only when TCR-MHC/peptide interaction is coupled with a second (co-stimulatory) signal provided by interaction between CD28 on T cells and CD80/CD86 molecules on APCs [33,34]. This second signal, a result of dendritic cell (DC) maturation [35], is regulated by Toll-like receptors, and in effect, flags the antigen as being pathogenic [36]. Another consequence of TLR-induced DC maturation is the elaboration of a variety of cytokines and chemokines [2,3]. These soluble signals play an important role in the outcome of adaptive immune responses. Some cytokines are particularly important for overcoming suppression mediated by Tr cells; others like IL-12 are responsible for directing the T cell responses towards a Th1 phenotype.

Recently, several studies have suggested that peripherally-resident DCs, in addition to TLR-induced migration to draining lymph nodes during infection, may also traffick to lymph nodes even in the absence of infection. This homeostatic migration enables DCs expressing self-peptides either to tolerize self-reactive T cells [37,38] or to promote these T cells to acquire properties of suppressor T cells [39,40], thereby promoting peripheral tolerance.

The second mechanism by which peripheral tolerance is maintained is through the activity of Tr cells. These cells can be divided into two major classes based on their function. The first class, which express CD4 and CD25, [41] reside in all the secondary lymphoid organs and develop in the thymus under control of a specialized transcription factor Foxp3 [42,43]. This class of suppressor cells may have evolved to prevent activation of auto-reactive T cells that escape thymic deletion; humans and mice with defective Foxp3 expression develop generalized, fatal autoimmune [42,44]. The second class is characterized by the secretion of either of two anti-inflammatory cytokines, IL-10 (Tr1) [45], or TGF-beta (Th3) [46]. These suppressor cells typically reside in mucosal tissues of the body such as the gut and lung, and may have evolved to prevent destruction of host tissues caused by chronic inflammatory processes.

5. ROLE OF TLRs IN PROTECTION FROM INFECTIONS

5.1. Induction of Innate Immune Responses

The primary function of pattern recognition receptors is to provide an immediate protection from invading pathogens [3,47]. This is achieved through activation of a plethora of defense mechanisms, including inflammatory cytokines, complement, phagocytosis, and killing via anti-microbial proteins and peptides [48]. In addition, many members of the TLR family are potent inducers of type I interferons and the consequent suite of interferon-inducible genes in response to viral DNA and RNA [9-11,13,49]. Below we will discuss data indicating an essential role for TLRs in control of adaptive immunity.

5.2. Induction of Adaptive Immune Responses: Role of Co-stimulation and Cytokines

As described earlier, TLR-induced DC maturation during infection is essential for naive T cell activation. This has been demonstrated in mice lacking MyD88, and adapter protein downstream of all TKRs. optimal activation of naive T cells requires signals through both TCR and CD28 molecules [33,34]. These requirements are met only by a fully mature DC exposed to TLR ligands either in the secondary lymphoid organ or the peripheral tissues. Engagement of TLRs on DCs by TLR ligands (presence of infection) leads to up-regulation of both MHC and co-stimulatory molecules [35]. Migration of this professional APC to the draining lymph node and subsequent interaction with naive T cells ensures that immune responses are mounted only to pathogen-derived antigens. As discussed earlier interaction of immature DC and naive T cells leads to tolerance or induction of suppressor T cells [50]. The scenario of exposure to pathogens is mimicked in most experimental conditions by use of TLR ligands as adjuvants. The hypothesis that induction of DC maturation by microbial stimuli is essential for naive T cell activation was experimentally confirmed using MyD-88 deficient mice. MyD88 is an adapter protein that functions downstream of all TLRs and deletion of this adapter abolish signal transduction downstream of most TLRs

As described earlier, TLR-induced DC maturation during infection is essential for naive T cell activation. This has been demonstrated in mice lacking MyD88, and adapter protein downstream of all TLRs. [3]. Unlike wild-type mice, MyD88-deficient mice failed to induce T cell activation and interferon-gamma production when immunized with antigens emulsified in complete Freund's adjuvant (CFA), which is essentially heat killed Mycobacterium and contains several TLR ligands [4]. Further analysis showed that mycobacterial extracts fail to induce maturation of DCs derived from MyD88-deficient mice [4], underscoring the importance of TLR-induced DC maturation for T cell priming.

In addition to controlling the co-stimulatory pathway, DCs seem to contribute to T cell activation by overcoming suppression mediated by Tr cells. This was shown in experiments using LPS-treated MyD88-deficient DCs, which can still undergo maturation, but cannot produce inflammatory cytokines [51]. Surprisingly, when these DCs were used as APCs in T cell priming assays, they failed to induce effective priming. Additional experiments revealed that the cytokine IL-6, produced by DCs upon TLR ligation, is essential to overcome the function of Tr suppressor T cells, by making responder T cells refractory to

suppression [5]. Importantly, TLR-induced cytokines, in the absence of co-stimulatory molecule induction, seem to be insufficient by themselves to induce T cell activation (unpublished observations, CP and RM), thereby ensuring that bystander T cells are not activated non-specifically by DCs during infection.

6. TLRs AND AUTOIMMUNITY

6.1. Control of B Cell Activation

In addition to their clonally-expressed B cell receptors, B lymphocytes express most known TLRs. TLR ligation on B cells induces polyclonal proliferation and expression of co-stimulatory molecules, and also promotes plasma cell differentiation, but the significance of these events (with regard to inducibility by TLR signaling) is not yet clear. However, that TLR activation on B cells can contribute to pathology in at least some contexts has been shown. In this study, linked recognition of ligands by BCR and TLR9 has been shown to initiate and exacerbate at least one autoimmune disease. While TLR9 evolved to recognize unmethylated CpG motifs found in bacterial genomes and DNA viruses, TLR9 can also be activated by self DNA under certain special circumstances. One such case occurs when apoptotic cells are inefficiently removed, leading to secondary necrosis and release of high quantities of chromatin-bound DNA fragments. B cells specific to these fragments efficient take them up via BCR-mediated endocytosis and deliver them to intracellular sites containing TLR9. Signaling through TLR9 in such a scenario can lead to activation of B cells and differentiation into plasma cells that secrete antibodies specific to chromatin or chromatin-associated antigens and lead to immune pathology. A mouse model has been described recently that demonstrates that uptake of such complexes by rheumatoid factor positive (RF+) B cells leads to highly efficient activation of such B cells [52]. This activation was shown to be dependent on TLR9-mediated recognition of DNA present in the mammalian chromatin. Dual signaling through BCR and TLR9 therefore led to enhanced production of RF antibodies and associated immune pathology. This example illustrates the potential danger inherent in expression of both BCRs and TLRs on B cells, and may explain why continuous signaling through the BCR, which may indicate engagement of self antigens, leads to inhibition of TLR9-triggered plasma cell differentiation [53].

6.2. Role of TLR-Induced Cytokines

As discussed earlier, cytokines secreted by DCs and macrophages in response to TLR ligands contribute significantly to induction of T cell responses. However, many of these cytokines, including IL-6, TNF, and interferons, can in some contexts contribute to autoimmunity [54]. IL-6 has been implicated in autoimmune diseases such as pristine induced lupus, collagen induced arthritis and experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) [55-58]. The fact that IL-6-deficient animals are resistant to several auto-immune diseases suggest that this may be, at least in part, due to the inability of its effector T cells to overcome suppression mediated by Tr cells. During chronic infections, persistence of pathogens and their products can lead to enhanced production of several pro-inflammatory

cytokines including IL-6, leading to a situation conducive to activation of self-reactive T cells. Indeed, several studies have shown a link between chronic infections and autoimmune diseases [59].

7. REFERENCES

1. Janeway CA, Jr.: Approaching the asymptote? Evolution and revolution in immunology. *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol* 1989, **54 Pt 1**:1-13.
2. Janeway CA, Jr., Medzhitov R: Innate immune recognition. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2002, **20**:197-216.
3. Takeda K, Kaisho T, Akira S: Toll-like receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2003, **21**:335-376.
4. Schnare M, Barton GM, Holt AC, Takeda K, Akira S, Medzhitov R: Toll-like receptors control activation of adaptive immune responses. *Nat Immunol* 2001, **2**:947-950.
5. Pasare C, Medzhitov R: Toll pathway-dependent blockade of CD4+CD25+ T cell-mediated suppression by dendritic cells. *Science* 2003, **299**:1033-1036.
6. Poltorak A, He X, Smirnova I, Liu MY, Van Huffel C, Du X, Birdwell D, Alejos E, Silva M, Galanos C, et al.: Defective LPS signaling in C3H/HeJ and C57BL/10ScCr mice: mutations in Tlr4 gene. *Science* 1998, **282**:2085-2088.
7. Qureshi ST, Lariviere L, Leveque G, Clermont S, Moore KJ, Gros P, Malo D: Endotoxin-tolerant mice have mutations in Toll-like receptor 4 (Tlr4). *J Exp Med* 1999, **189**:615-625.
8. Takeuchi O, Hoshino K, Kawai T, Sanjo H, Takada H, Ogawa T, Takeda K, Akira S: Differential roles of TLR2 and TLR4 in recognition of gram-negative and gram-positive bacterial cell wall components. *Immunity* 1999, **11**:443-451.
9. Alexopoulou L, Holt AC, Medzhitov R, Flavell RA: Recognition of double-stranded RNA and activation of NF-kappaB by Toll-like receptor 3. *Nature* 2001, **413**:732-738.
10. Heil F, Hemmi H, Hochrein H, Ampenberger F, Kirschning C, Akira S, Lipford G, Wagner H, Bauer S: Species-Specific Recognition of Single-Stranded RNA via Toll-like Receptor 7 and 8. *Science* 2004.
11. Diebold SS, Kaisho T, Hemmi H, Akira S, Reis ESC: Innate Antiviral Responses by Means of TLR7-Mediated Recognition of Single-Stranded RNA. *Science* 2004.
12. Hemmi H, Takeuchi O, Kawai T, Kaisho T, Sato S, Sanjo H, Matsumoto M, Hoshino K, Wagner H, Takeda K, et al.: A Toll-like receptor recognizes bacterial DNA. *Nature* 2000, **408**:740-745.
13. Lund J, Sato A, Akira S, Medzhitov R, Iwasaki A: Toll-like receptor 9-mediated recognition of Herpes simplex virus-2 by plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *J Exp Med* 2003, **198**:513-520.
14. Barton GM, Medzhitov R: Toll-like receptor signaling pathways. *Science* 2003, **300**:1524-1525.
15. Asea A, Rehli M, Kabingu E, Boch JA, Bare O, Auron PE, Stevenson MA, Calderwood SK: Novel signal transduction pathway utilized by extracellular HSP70: role of toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 and TLR4. *J Biol Chem* 2002, **277**:15028-15034.
16. Ohashi K, Burkart V, Flohe S, Kolb H: Cutting edge: heat shock protein 60 is a putative endogenous ligand of the toll-like receptor-4 complex. *J Immunol* 2000, **164**:558-561.
17. Vabulas RM, Ahmad-Nejad P, Ghose S, Kirschning CJ, Issels RD, Wagner H: HSP70 as endogenous stimulus of the Toll/interleukin-1 receptor signal pathway. *J Biol Chem* 2002, **277**:15107-15112.
18. Bausinger H, Lipsker D, Ziylan U, Manie S, Briand JP, Cazenave JP, Muller S, Haeuw JF, Ravanat C, de la Salle H, et al.: Endotoxin-free heat-shock protein 70 fails to induce APC activation. *Eur J Immunol* 2002, **32**:3708-3713.
19. Gao B, Tsan MF: Recombinant Human Heat Shock Protein 60 Does Not Induce the Release of Tumor Necrosis Factor {alpha} from Murine Macrophages. *J Biol Chem* 2003, **278**:22523-22529.
20. Gao B, Tsan MF: Endotoxin contamination in recombinant human heat shock protein 70 (Hsp70) preparation is responsible for the induction of tumor necrosis factor alpha release by murine macrophages. *J Biol Chem* 2003, **278**:174-179.
21. Starr TK, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA: Positive and negative selection of T cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2003, **21**:139-176.
22. Goodnow CC, Crosbie J, Adelstein S, Lavoie TB, Smith-Gill SJ, Brink RA, Pritchard-Briscoe H, Wotherspoon JS, Loblay RH, Raphael K, et al.: Altered immunoglobulin expression and functional silencing of self-reactive B lymphocytes in transgenic mice. *Nature* 1988, **334**:676-682.

23. Hartley SB, Crosbie J, Brink R, Kantor AB, Basten A, Goodnow CC: Elimination from peripheral lymphoid tissues of self-reactive B lymphocytes recognizing membrane-bound antigens. *Nature* 1991, **353**:765-769.
24. Cyster JG, Hartley SB, Goodnow CC: Competition for follicular niches excludes self-reactive cells from the recirculating B-cell repertoire. *Nature* 1994, **371**:389-395.
25. Cyster JG, Goodnow CC: Antigen-induced exclusion from follicles and anergy are separate and complementary processes that influence peripheral B cell fate. *Immunity* 1995, **3**:691-701.
26. Anderson MS, Venanzi ES, Klein L, Chen Z, Berzins SP, Turley SJ, von Boehmer H, Bronson R, Dierich A, Benoist C, et al.: Projection of an immunological self shadow within the thymus by the aire protein. *Science* 2002, **298**:1395-1401.
27. Liston A, Lesage S, Wilson J, Peltonen L, Goodnow CC: Aire regulates negative selection of organ-specific T cells. *Nat Immunol* 2003, **4**:350-354.
28. Peterson P, Nagamine K, Scott H, Heino M, Kudoh J, Shimizu N, Antonarakis SE, Krohn KJ: APECED: a monogenic autoimmune disease providing new clues to self-tolerance. *Immunol Today* 1998, **19**:384-386.
29. Punt JA, Osborne BA, Takahama Y, Sharrow SO, Singer A: Negative selection of CD4+CD8+ thymocytes by T cell receptor-induced apoptosis requires a costimulatory signal that can be provided by CD28. *J Exp Med* 1994, **179**:709-713.
30. Punt JA, Havran W, Abe R, Sarin A, Singer A: T cell receptor (TCR)-induced death of immature CD4+CD8+ thymocytes by two distinct mechanisms differing in their requirement for CD28 costimulation: implications for negative selection in the thymus. *J Exp Med* 1997, **186**:1911-1922.
31. Kishimoto H, Cai Z, Brunmark A, Jackson MR, Peterson PA, Sprent J: Differing roles for B7 and intercellular adhesion molecule-1 in negative selection of thymocytes. *J Exp Med* 1996, **184**:531-537
32. Sprent J, Kishimoto H: The thymus and negative selection. *Immunol Rev* 2002, **185**:126-135.
33. Lenschow DJ, Walunas TL, Bluestone JA: CD28/B7 system of T cell costimulation. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1996, **14**:233-258.
34. Liu Y, Janeway CA, Jr.: Cells that present both specific ligand and costimulatory activity are the most efficient inducers of clonal expansion of normal CD4 T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1992, **89**:3845-3849
35. Banchereau J, Steinman RM: Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature* 1998, **392**:245-252
36. Medzhitov R: Toll-like receptors and innate immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2001, **1**:135-145.
37. Belz GT, Behrens GM, Smith CM, Miller JF, Jones C, Lejon K, Fathman CG, Mueller SN, Shortman K, Carbone FR, et al.: The CD8alpha(+) dendritic cell is responsible for inducing peripheral self-tolerance to tissue-associated antigens. *J Exp Med* 2002, **196**:1099-1104.
38. Hawiger D, Inaba K, Dorsett Y, Guo M, Mahnke K, Rivera M, Ravetch JV, Steinman RM, Nussenzweig MC: Dendritic cells induce peripheral T cell unresponsiveness under steady state conditions in vivo. *J Exp Med* 2001, **194**:769-779.
39. Menges M, Rossner S, Voigtlander C, Schindler H, Kukutsch NA, Bogdan C, Erb K, Schuler G, Lutz MB: Repetitive injections of dendritic cells matured with tumor necrosis factor alpha induce antigen-specific protection of mice from autoimmunity. *J Exp Med* 2002, **195**:15-21.
40. Wakkach A, Fournier N, Brun V, Breittmayer JP, Cottrez F, Groux H: Characterization of dendritic cells that induce tolerance and T regulatory 1 cell differentiation in vivo. *Immunity* 2003, **18**:605-617.
41. Sakaguchi S, Sakaguchi N, Asano M, Itoh M, Toda M: Immunologic self-tolerance maintained by activated T cells expressing IL-2 receptor alpha-chains (CD25). Breakdown of a single mechanism of self-tolerance causes various autoimmune diseases. *J Immunol* 1995, **155**:1151-1164.
42. Fontenot JD, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY: Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *Nat Immunol* 2003, **4**:330-336.
43. Hori S, Nomura T, Sakaguchi S: Control of regulatory T cell development by the transcription factor Foxp3. *Science* 2003, **299**:1057-1061.
44. Asano M, Toda M, Sakaguchi N, Sakaguchi S: Autoimmune disease as a consequence of developmental abnormality of a T cell subpopulation. *J Exp Med* 1996, **184**:387-396.
45. Groux H, O'Garra A, Bigler M, Rouleau M, Antonenko S, de Vries JE, Roncarolo MG: A CD4+ T-cell subset inhibits antigen-specific T-cell responses and prevents colitis. *Nature* 1997, **389**:737-742.
46. Chen Y, Kuchroo VK, Inobe J, Hafler DA, Weiner HL: Regulatory T cell clones induced by oral tolerance: suppression of autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *Science* 1994, **265**:1237-1240.
47. Thoma-Uszynski S, Stenger S, Takeuchi O, Ochoa MT, Engele M, Sieling PA, Barnes PF, Rollinghoff M, Bolcskei PL, Wagner M, et al.: Induction of direct antimicrobial activity through mammalian toll-like receptors. *Science* 2001, **291**:1544-1547.

48. Ayabe T, Satchell DP, Wilson CL, Parks WC, Selsted ME, Ouellette AJ: Secretion of microbicidal alpha-defensins by intestinal Paneth cells in response to bacteria. *Nat Immunol* 2000, **1**:113-118.
49. Krug A, Luker GD, Barchet W, Leib DA, Akira S, Colonna M: Herpes simplex virus type 1 activates murine natural interferon-producing cells through toll-like receptor 9. *Blood* 2004, **103**:1433-1437.
50. Steinman RM, Hawiger D, Nussenzweig MC: Tolerogenic dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2003, **21**:685-711.
51. Kaisho T, Takeuchi O, Kawai T, Hoshino K, Akira S: Endotoxin-induced maturation of MyD88-deficient dendritic cells. *J Immunol* 2001, **166**:5688-5694.
52. Leadbetter EA, Rifkin IR, Hohlbaum AM, Beaudette BC, Shlomchik MJ, Marshak-Rothstein A: Chromatin-IgG complexes activate B cells by dual engagement of IgM and Toll-like receptors. *Nature* 2002, **416**:603-607.
53. Rui L, Vinuesa CG, Blasioli J, Goodnow CC: Resistance to CpG DNA-induced autoimmunity through tolerogenic B cell antigen receptor ERK signaling. *Nat Immunol* 2003, **4**:594-600.
54. Drakesmith H, Chain B, Beverley P: How can dendritic cells cause autoimmune disease? *Immunol Today* 2000, **21**:214-217.
55. Alonzi T, Fattori E, Lazzaro D, Costa P, Probert L, Kollias G, De Benedetti F, Poli V, Ciliberto G: Interleukin 6 is required for the development of collagen-induced arthritis. *J Exp Med* 1998, **187**:461-468.
56. Kobayashi H, Ohshima S, Nishioka K, Yamaguchi N, Umeshita-Sasai M, Ishii T, Mima T, Kishimoto T, Kawase I, Saeki Y: Antigen induced arthritis (AIA) can be transferred by bone marrow transplantation: evidence that interleukin 6 is essential for induction of AIA. *J Rheumatol* 2002, **29**:1176-1182.
57. Ohshima S, Saeki Y, Mima T, Sasai M, Nishioka K, Nomura S, Kopf M, Katada Y, Tanaka T, Suemura M, et al.: Interleukin 6 plays a key role in the development of antigen-induced arthritis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1998, **95**:8222-8226.
58. Richards HB, Satoh M, Shaw M, Libert C, Poli V, Reeves WH: Interleukin 6 dependence of anti-DNA antibody production: evidence for two pathways of autoantibody formation in pristane-induced lupus. *J Exp Med* 1998, **188**:985-990.
59. Rose NR: The role of infection in the pathogenesis of autoimmune disease. *Semin Immunol* 1998, **10**:5-13.

3

ACTIVATION OF INSECT AND VERTEBRATE TOLL SIGNALING: FROM ENDOGENOUS CYTOKINE LIGAND TO DIRECT RECOGNITION OF PATHOGEN PATTERNS

Nicholas J. Gay, Alexander N. R. Weber and Monique Gangloff

1. INTRODUCTION

The Toll receptor families from insects and vertebrates have structural and evolutionary relationships and it was considered likely that they fulfilled similar functions in their respective organisms. Over the last two years, however, it has become clear that the way in which these receptors recognise pathogens in *Drosophila* and mammals is quite distinct. The completion of the genome sequences of *Drosophila*, human and mouse has revealed the presence of nine Toll receptors in the insect and probably ten or 11 in mammals[1,2]. As shown in Fig. 1, with the exception of dToll9, the *Drosophila* Tolls are more closely related to each other than they are to the human Toll-like receptors (hTlrs). All Tolls are type 1 transmembrane receptors: they have blocks of a widespread structural motif, the leucine rich repeat in their ectodomains[3], a single transmembrane spanning region and a cytoplasmic signalling module, the Toll/IL1R identity region (TIR). The leucine rich repeat is found in many intracellular and extracellular proteins and has structural features that have the potential to evolve a wide range of protein binding specificities.s

The first *Drosophila* Toll receptor was identified genetically in screens for developmental mutants and it is a critical component of the dorso-ventral patterning system in the pre-cellular embryo[4]. Activation of *Drosophila* Toll causes a ventral to dorsal gradient of the NF-κB related transcription factor dorsal in the nuclei of syncitial embryos. This gradient instructs the differentiation of the dorso-ventral axis in embryogenesis and regulates the expression of approximately 350 of the 13500 *Drosophila* genes[5]. These genes are activated by different threshold levels of dorsal and there may be up to seven distinct dorsal enhancers that respond to different concentrations of the transcription factor. In innate immune responses two other dorsal-related transcription factors, Dif and Relish, are involved in gene regulation and transcriptomic analysis has identified about 550 genes with significantly altered expression levels[6].

Department of Biochemistry, University of Cambridge, Tennis Court Road, Cambridge CB2 1GA, UK.

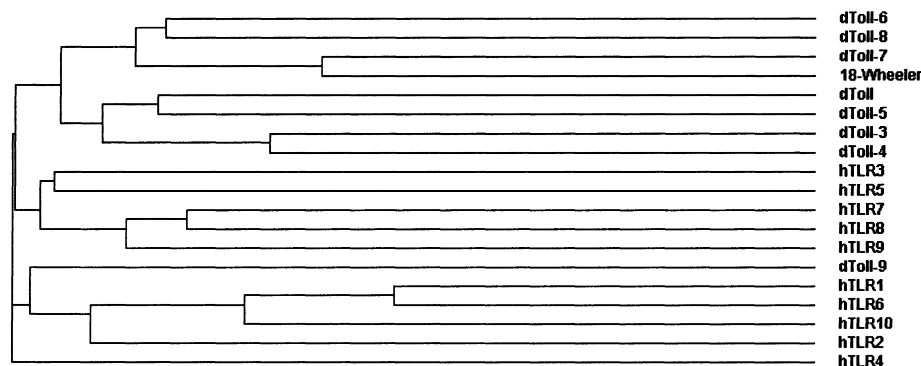


Figure 1. Phylogenetic relationships of ectodomains from *Drosophila* and human Toll receptors. Figure was generated by CLUSTALW[9].

In vertebrates, Tlrs do not function in development but do signal to NF-κB when exposed to pathogen associated molecular patterns[7]. The intracellular pathway leading to activation of NF-κB is significantly similar to that of the dorso-ventral patterning system and innate immune response of *Drosophila*. The adaptor MyD88 (dMyD88), the protein kinase IRAK4 (pelle) and IκB (cactus) are three examples of this conservation[8].

2. DROSOPHILA TOLL IS ACTIVATED BY A DIMERIC CYTOKINE LIGAND

Genetic studies implicated the product of the gene *Spätzle* as the activating ligand of the *Drosophila* Toll pathway in dorso-ventral and in innate immune responses to fungi and Gram-positive bacteria[10,11]. Spatial cues in the embryonic perivitelline membrane and pathogen patterns such as peptidoglycan from Gram-positive bacteria cause activation of a proteolytic cascade and the terminal member of this cascade cleaves an inactive pro-protein of Spätzle to produce an active C-terminal fragment, C-106. C-106 is a dimer and has a cystine knot fold similar to other signalling molecules such as nerve growth factor[12,13].

Recently, we were able to express and purify the pro-protein form of Spätzle and generate C-106, by partial proteolysis[14]. To address the binding characteristics of Spätzle and Toll, we used a derivative of the macrophage-like *Drosophila* S2 cell line carrying a reporter construct under the regulation of the *drosomycin* promoter. We first observed that addition of C-106 to these cells strongly activated the *drosomycin* promoter in a dose-dependent manner, with an EC_{50} of 0.5 nM, whereas the pro-protein was unable to establish signaling even at high concentrations (Figure 2a). Cell activation by C-106 was competed out by the addition to the assay of the ectodomains of either Toll full length or $Toll^{5B}$ (a truncated form[15]), which points to a direct interaction between C-106 and Toll. By contrast, the Spätzle pro-protein did not act as an antagonist of Toll signaling, suggesting that it does not bind to Toll (Figure 2b). Signaling by C-106 required Toll, as dsRNA knockdown of Toll suppressed cell activation by C-106 (Figure 2c). Furthermore,

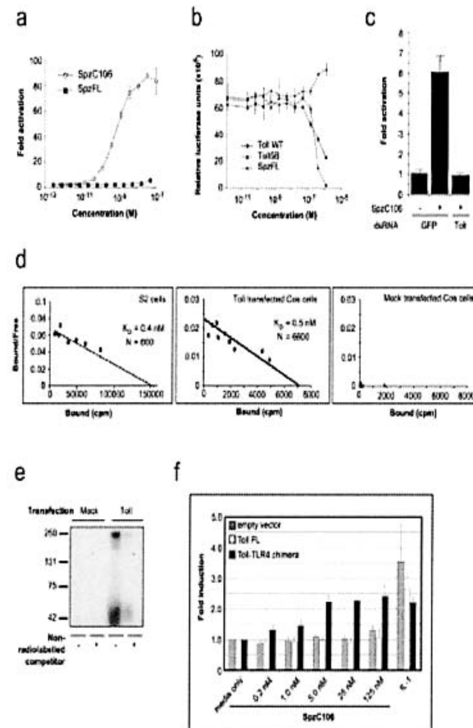


Figure 2. The processed form of Spätzle, but not the pro-protein, binds to and activates cells expressing the Toll receptor. (**a**) The cleaved form of Spätzle, but not the pro-protein, activates the *drosomycin* promoter in a dose-dependent manner in S2 cells. S2 cells expressing a *drosomycin-luciferase* reporter construct were cultured for 16 hours in tissue-culture medium supplemented with increasing concentrations of either the processed form (C-106) or the pro-protein form (FL) of Spätzle. (**b**) Recombinant soluble Toll ectodomains (wild-type (WT) or truncated (5B)), but not the Spätzle pro-protein, compete for *drosomycin* promoter activation. S2 cells expressing a *drosomycin-luciferase* reporter construct were cultured with 4 nM SpzC106 and increasing concentrations of Toll ectodomains or unprocessed Spätzle pro-protein. (**c**) Activation of the *drosomycin* promoter by SpzC106 in S2 cells is Toll dependent. S2 cells were co-transfected with a *drosomycin-luciferase* reporter construct and double-stranded RNA corresponding to GFP or Toll. 48 hours after transfection, the cells were stimulated with 1 nM SpzC106 (+) or left untreated (-) for 16 hours. (**d**) Scatchard analysis of ^{125}I-labelled SpzC106 binding to transfected Cos-7 cells and S2 cells. Binding experiments were performed by incubating Toll (middle) or mock (lower) transfected Cos-7 cells or S2 cells (upper panel) in the presence of increasing concentrations of radiolabelled SpzC106. (**e**) Cos-7 cells transfected with a Toll expression vector bind radiolabelled SpzC106. 3 x 10^6 cos-7 cells were transfected with an empty vector (mock) or a vector expressing Toll. 48 hours later, they were incubated with 5 nM radiolabelled SpzC106 alone (-) or in the presence of a 100-fold excess of cold competitor (+) for 2 hours followed by 45 minutes in the presence of 1mM EGS and BS3 cross-linking agents. (**f**) HEK293 cells were transfected with empty pCDNA3.1 vector or plasmids expressing full-length Toll or a Toll-TLR4 chimera (Toll extracellular domain and transmembrane region fused to the hTLR4 intracellular domain), respectively, as well as a luciferase reporter gene under the control of the NF-κB promoter (Promega). After transfection, cells were seeded and stimulated with media, Spätzle C106 dilutions (as indicated) or human IL-1 at 10 ng/ml 36 hours post-transfection.

inhibition of the other receptors of the Toll family in *Drosophila*, including Toll-5 and Toll-9, which have been shown to induce *drosomycin* in tissue culture, did not affect signaling by C-106. To measure the binding affinity of Spätzle to S2 cells we labeled C-

106 with ^{125}I. Scatchard analysis indicated that C-106 binds to S2 cells with a K_D of 0.4 nM and approximately 600 binding sites per cell (Figure 2d). These data show that signaling by C-106 involves binding to a specific membrane receptor. To confirm that this interaction is mediated by Toll, we examined binding of radiolabelled C-106 to Cos-7 cells transfected with a Toll expression vector. Cos-7 cells expressing Toll bound C-106 with an affinity similar to that of S2 cells, whereas no specific binding was detected on mock-transfected cells (Figure 2d). In addition, a large protein complex was detected after cross-linking iodinated C-106 to Cos-7 cells transfected with a Toll expression vector only (Figure 2e). To test whether binding of C-106 to Toll is sufficient to induce signaling, we constructed a mammalian expression vector expressing a chimeric receptor composed of the Toll ectodomain and transmembrane domain fused to the cytoplasmic domain of hTLR4 (see Methods). This plasmid was then tranfected into HEK293 cells and activation of NF-κB was assayed using a luciferase reporter gene. As shown in Figure 2f, C-106 induces activation of NF-κB in a dose dependent manner with maximum induction achieved at a C-106 concentration approximately ten times the K_d value determined for Spätzle binding to S2 cells. By contrast C-106 was unable to induce signaling in cells transfected with the full-length *Drosophila* Toll receptor or with empty vector. We therefore conclude that binding of C-106 to Toll is sufficient to directly establish signaling.

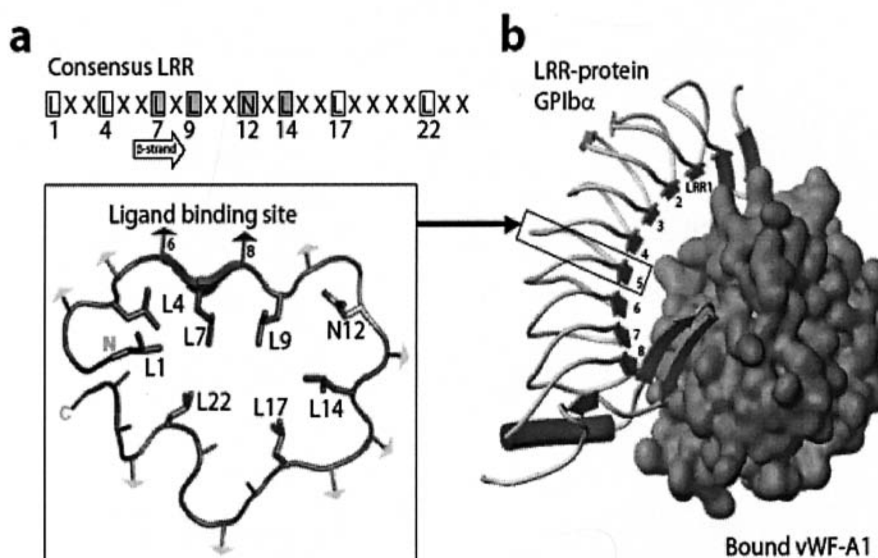


Figure 3. The leucine rich repeat (LRR) (a) the basic structural unit of the LRR. The conserved hydrophobic residues form the core and variable sidechains (mainly 6 and 8) make ligand specific interactions; (b) The LRRs assemble into an extended superhelix illustrated by the crystal structure of glycoprotein Ib α (GPIbα). The bound ligand, domain A1 of von Willebrand factor (vWF-A1) interacts with the concave β-sheet.

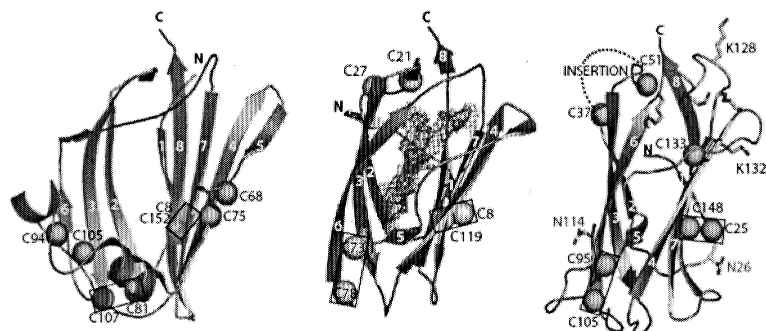


Figure 4. Structures of GM-2 activator protein, mite dust allergen and MD-2 (model) (from left to right). The positions of cysteine residues in the sequences and basic residues in the flexible loop at the entrance to the binding pocket are shown. Conserved cystine residues involved in disulphide bridges are boxed.

3. TOLL-LIKE RECEPTOR 4, MD-2 AND LPS SIGNALLING

The domain swap experiment described above and other experimental evidence[14,16] implies that receptor dimerization is required for signalling through the Tlr4 pathway. However it appears that although the two pathways use evolutionarily related signalling receptors, a different, more direct detection mechanism has evolved in mammals[17]. Consistent with this view, the human and mouse genome sequences do not appear to encode Spätzle related proteins whereas that of *Drosophila* contains at least five homologues.[18]

The ability of Toll ectodomains to evolve such diverse specificities is probably due to the structural properties of the leucine rich repeat[3]. Each unit is about 24 amino acids long and has a pattern of conserved hydrophobic residues, often leucines. The repeats have a short β-sheet, a turn and a region of variable secondary structure with the conserved residues forming a hydrophobic core (Figure 3a). Arrays of repeats form an extended, right-handed superhelix with a characteristic curvature (Figure 3b). The limited structural data available suggests that variable residues on the concave surface make ligand-specific interactions[19,20]. Taken together, these findings raise an important question: how does association of LPS with MD-2 induce a conformational rearrangement that results in dimerization or oligomerisation of the Tlr4 receptor and signal transduction?

4. MD-2 IS A MEMBER OF THE LIPID RECOGNITION FAMILY

A step towards answering this question has come from the discovery that MD-2 belongs to a small family of proteins, the MD-2 related lipid binding proteins (ML) all of which bind to lipids[21]. Members of this family are characterized by single domain architecture of about 150 residues preceeded by an amino-terminal signal peptide for secretion. Three-dimensional structures of four members of the ML family, Der f 2[22], Der p 2[23-25], Niemann-Pick disease type C2 protein (NPC2)[26] and ganglioside GM2 activator

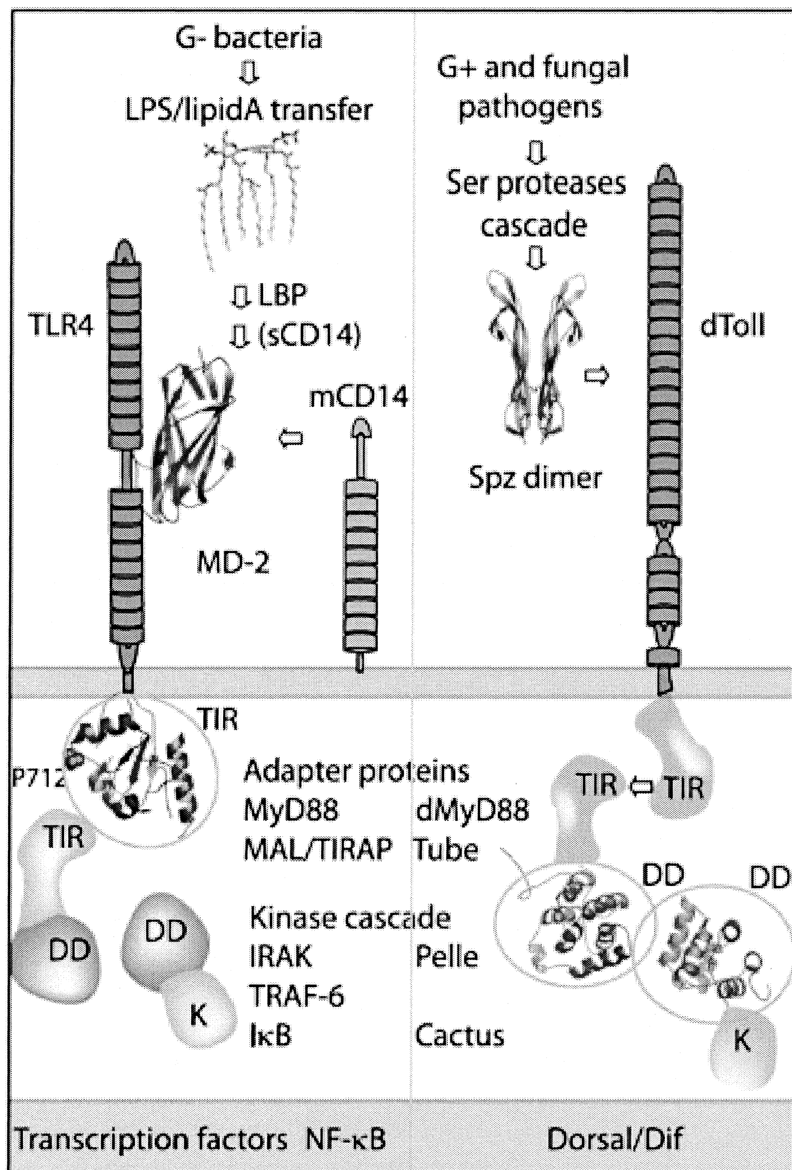


Figure 5. Comparison of receptor activation by *Drosophila* Toll and Tlr4.

precursor GM2-AP[27,28] (Figure 4b) have been solved and these structures allow us to build a homology model of MD-2 (Figure 4c). The ML family form a β-sandwich of at least 7 strands grouped in 2 β-sheets, displaying a greek key motif. A mechanism for ligand binding can be extrapolated from the information provided by the three-dimensional

structures of these proteins. Indeed a putative lipid-binding cavity is found in the crystal structure of the mite allergen protein Der p 2, the closest structural homolog of MD-2, according to the homology recognition software Fugue (Z-score of 5.7)[29]. The recent crystal structure of GM2-AP with bound lipids shows that the acyl chains are buried in the hydrophobic environment of the protein core, packed against the β-sheets, with a solvent-exposed polar head group[27]. Together these results suggest that one molecule of MD-2 can bind LPS by burying at least one of its diacyl moieties within its core and that this binding event is stabilised by ionic interactions between the conserved basic amino acids at the mouth of the cavity (Figure 4c) and the phosphate headgroups. The active lipid A component of LPS consists of three diacyl chains linked to a glucosamine phosphate headgroup, and the proposed mechanism of binding of LPS to MD-2 suggests two possible ways in which Tlr4 receptor dimerization might be achieved. Firstly, binding of LPS to the Tlr4/MD-2 heterodimer could induce a conformational change that allows a second heterodimer to be recruited. This process resembles that observed with the related cytokine receptor interleukin 1 receptor (IL-1R). Here binding of IL-1 and IL-1R to form a heterodimer enables the recruitment of an accessory transmembrane protein which by itself is unable to bind the cytokine[30]. Alternatively, different diacyl groups of lipid A might bind to separate molecules of MD-2 thereby bringing two Tlr4 receptor molecules into proximity in the membrane. A summary of Toll receptor activation by Spätzle on the one hand and LPS on the other is given in Figure 5.

5. DOES NF-κB REGULATE HIERARCHIES OF TARGET GENES?

Tlr4 is reported to support signalling by at least 15 distinct stimuli in addition to LPS, ranging from viral proteins to small molecules [31]. For example, a soluble secreted protein from the filarial nematode protein ES62 generates a low-level cytokine response and this response is absent in Tlr4 and MyD88 knockout mice (H. Goodridge, personal communication)[32]. This observation suggests that complexity in the innate immune response is generated by the induction of different threshold levels of NF-κB, in response to a large number of stimuli, acting not only through Tlr4 but other Tlrs and IL-1 family receptors as well. This is analogous to the situation described above in the *Drosophila* embryo during dorso-ventral pattern formation. Here a diffused gradient of the ligand Spätzle establishes a nuclear gradient of dorsal and different threshold levels of act on subsets of genes controlled by enhancers with variable affinities for the dorsal. The fate of cells located at different positions on the dorso-ventral axis is then determined by the combination of dorsal regulated genes that are expressed. Thus, it seems possible that there may be many distinct levels of NF-κB activation that depend on the initial stimulus detected by the Tlrs and that these initial events powerfully influence the subsequent development of the immune response.

6. CONCLUSIONS

In this article we have compared and contrasted the insect and vertebrate Toll receptor signalling pathways. While there are significant similarities in the intracellular arms of the pathways, the mechanism by which pathogen patterns are recognized appears to be radically different. The challenges for the future are to understand the activation

mechanisms at a structural level and to characterize the responses in cells of the immune system to different threshold levels of NF-κB.

7. REFERENCES

1. S. Tauszig, E. Jouanguy, J.A. Hoffmann and J.L. Imler, Toll-related receptors and the control of antimicrobial peptide expression in Drosophila, *P Natl Acad Sci USA* **97**(19), 10520-10525 (2000).
2. F.L. Rock, G. Hardiman, J.C. Timans, R.A. Kastelein and J.F. Bazan, A family of human receptors structurally related to Drosophila Toll, *P Natl Acad Sci USA* **95**(2), 588-593 (1998).
3. S.G.S. Buchanan and N.J. Gay, Structural and functional diversity in the leucine rich repeat family of proteins, *Prog Biophys Mol Bio* **65**(1-2), 1-44 (1996).
4. M.P. Belvin and K.V. Anderson, A conserved signaling pathway: The Drosophila Toll-Dorsal pathway, *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* **12**:393-416 (1996).
5. A. Stathopoulos, M. Van Drenth, A. Erives, M. Markstein and M. Levine, Whole-genome analysis of dorso-ventral patterning in the Drosophila embryo., *Cell* **111**:687-701 (2002).
6. J.L. Imler and J.A. Hoffmann, Toll receptors in innate immunity, *Trends Cell Biol* **11**(7), 304-311 (2001).
7. S. Akira and H. Hemmi, Recognition of pathogen-associated molecular patterns by TLR family, *Immunol Lett* **85**(2), 85-95 (2003).
8. S.A. Wasserman, A Conserved Signal-Transduction Pathway Regulating the Activity of the Rel-Like Proteins Dorsal and Nf-Kb, *Mol Biol Cell* **4**(8), 767-771 (1993).
9. J.D. Thompson, D.G. Higgins and T.J. Gibson, Clustal-W: Improving the Sensitivity of Progressive Multiple Sequence Alignment through Sequence Weighting, Position-Specific Gap Penalties and Weight Matrix Choice, *Nucleic Acids Res* **22**(22), 4673-4680 (1994).
10. D. Morisato and K.V. Anderson, The Spatzle Gene Encodes a Component of the Extracellular Signaling Pathway Establishing the Dorsal-Ventral Pattern of the Drosophila Embryo, *Cell* **76**(4), 677-688 (1994).
11. B. Lemaitre, E. Nicolas, L. Michaut, J.M. Reichhart and J.A. Hoffmann, The dorsoventral regulatory gene cassette spatzle/Toll/cactus controls the potent antifungal response in Drosophila adults, *Cell* **86**(6), 973-983 (1996).
12. K. Mizuguchi, J.S. Parker, T.L. Blundell and N.J. Gay, Getting knotted: a model for the structure and activation of Spatzle, *Trends Biochem Sci* **23**(7), 239-242 (1998).
13. Y. DeLotto and R. DeLotto, Proteolytic processing of the Drosophila Spatzle protein by Easter generates a dimeric NGF-like molecule with ventralising activity, *Mech Develop* **72**(1-2), 141-148 (1998).
14. A. Weber, S. Tauszig-Delamasure, J. Hoffmann, E. Lelièvre, H. Gascan, K. Ray, M. Morse, J. Imler and N. Gay Binding of the Drosophila cytokine Spätzle to Toll is direct and establishes signaling, *Nat Immunol* **4**:794-800 (2003).
15. D.S. Schneider, K.L. Hudson, T.Y. Lin and K.V. Anderson, Dominant and Recessive Mutations Define Functional Domains of Toll, a Transmembrane Protein Required for Dorsal Ventral Polarity in the Drosophila Embryo, *Gene Dev* **5**(5), 797-807 (1991).
16. R. Medzhitov, P. PrestonHurlburt and C.A. Janeway, A human homologue of the Drosophila Toll protein signals activation of adaptive immunity, *Nature* **388**(6640), 394-397 (1997).
17. M. Gangloff, A.N.R. Weber, R.J. Gibbard and N.J. Gay, Evolutionary relationships, but functional differences, between the Drosophila and human Toll-like receptor families, *Biochem Soc T* **31**:659-663 (2003).
18. J.S. Parker, K. Mizuguchi and N.J. Gay, A family of proteins related to Spatzle, the toll receptor ligand, are encoded in the Drosophila genome, *Proteins* **45**(1), 71-80 (2001).
19. X.L.L. He, J.F. Bazan, G. McDermott, J.B. Park, K. Wang, M. Tessier-Lavigne, Z.G. He and K.C. Garcia, Structure of the Nogo receptor ectodomain: A recognition module implicated in myelin inhibition, *Neuron* **38**(2), 177-185 (2003).
20. E.G. Huizinga, S. Tsuji, R.A.P. Romijn, M.E. Schiphorst, P.G. de Groot, J.J. Sixma and P. Gros, Structures of glycoprotein Ib alpha and its complex with von Willebrand factor A1 domain, *Science* **297**(5584), 1176-1179 (2002).
21. N. Inohara and G. Nunez, ML - a conserved domain involved in innate immunity and lipid metabolism, *Trends Biochem Sci* **27**(5), 219-221 (2002).
22. S. Ichikawa, H. Hatanaka, T. Yuuki, N. Iwamoto, S. Kojima, C. Nishiyama, K. Ogura, Y. Okumura and F. Inagaki, Solution structure of Der f 2, the major mite allergen for atopic diseases, *J Biol Chem* **273**(1), 356-60 (1998).

23. U. Derewenda, J. Li, Z. Derewenda, Z. Dauter, G.A. Mueller, G.S. Rule and D.C. Benjamin, The crystal structure of a major dust mite allergen Der p 2, and its biological implications, *J Mol Biol* **318**(1), 189-97 (2002).
24. G.A. Mueller, D.C. Benjamin and G.S. Rule, Tertiary structure of the major house dust mite allergen Der p 2: sequential and structural homologies, *Biochemistry-Us* **37**(37), 12707-14 (1998).
25. G.A. Mueller, A.M. Smith, D.C. Williams, Jr., G.A. Hakkaart, R.C. Aalberse, M.D. Chapman, G.S. Rule and D.C. Benjamin, Expression and secondary structure determination by NMR methods of the major house dust mite allergen Der p 2, *J Biol Chem* **272**(43), 26893-8 (1997).
26. N. Friedland, H.L. Liou, P. Lobel and A.M. Stock, Structure of a cholesterol-binding protein deficient in Niemann-Pick type C2 disease, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **100**(5), 2512-7 (2003).
27. C.S. Wright, S.C. Li and F. Rastinejad, Crystal structure of human GM2-activator protein with a novel beta-cup topology, *J Mol Biol* **304**(3), 411-422 (2000).
28. C.S. Wright, Q. Zhao and F. Rastinejad, Structural analysis of lipid complexes of GM2-activator protein, *J Mol Biol* **331**(4), 951-64 (2003).
29. J.Y. Shi, T.L. Blundell and K. Mizuguchi, FUGUE: Sequence-structure homology recognition using environment-specific substitution tables and structure-dependent gap penalties, *J Mol Biol* **310**(1), 243-257 (2001).
30. J.E. Sims, IL-1 and IL-18 receptors, and their extended family, *Curr Opin Immunol* **14**(1), 117-22 (2002).
31. M. Gangloff, P. Ludidi and N. Gay Structures and motifs involved in Toll signalling. in *Toll Receptors* (ed. Rich, T.) (Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, New York, 2004).
32. H.S. Goodridge, E.H. Wilson, W. Harnett, C.C. Campbell, M.M. Harnett and F.Y. Liew, Modulation of macrophage cytokine production by ES-62, a secreted product of the filarial nematode *Acanthocheilonema viteae*, *J Immunol* **167**(2), 940-945 (2001).

4

GENETIC ANALYSIS OF INNATE IMMUNITY: IDENTIFICATION AND FUNCTION OF THE TIR ADAPTER PROTEINS

Bruce Beutler, Kasper Hoebe, Philippe Georgel,
Koichi Tabeta, and Xin Du

1. SUMMARY

The innate immune system senses pathogens largely through signals initiated by a collection of phylogenetically related proteins known as "Toll-like receptors" (TLRs), of which ten representatives are encoded in the human genome. The sensing role of the TLRs first came to light when one member of this family, TLR4, was shown to serve the detection of endotoxin (lipopolysaccharide; LPS) in mice. This discovery was based upon positional cloning of a spontaneous mutation affecting a locus known as *Lps*. The recognition specificities of other TLRs have since been established by reverse genetic methods. The understanding of the biochemical circuitry that maintains the innate capacity for immune recognition and response has loomed as the next hurdle in the field. A total of five adapter proteins with cytoplasmic domain homology to the TLRs are known to exist in mammals. These proteins are not entirely promiscuous in their interaction with TLRs, but rather, show preferential association with individual family members, giving a particular character to the signals that distinct micro-organisms initiate. The adaptive immune response is dependent upon upregulation of costimulatory molecules (UCM) such as CD80 and CD86. Very recently, it has been shown that this upregulation is dependent upon an adapter encoded by a locus known as *Lps2*, known as Trif or Ticam-1, and upon type I interferon receptor signaling. LPS and dsRNA both signal via Trif, but dsRNA has an accessory pathway for UCM, that is independent of both Trif/Ticam-1 and the known dsRNA receptor, TLR3. Other key innate immunity genes have also been disclosed by germline mutagenesis, and are discussed in the present review.

Scripps Research Institute, Department of Immunology, IMM-31, 10550 N. Torrey Pines Road, La Jolla, California 92037; Tel: 858-784-8610; Fax: 858-784-8444; Email: bruce@scripps.edu.

Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation X
Edited by Gupta *et al.*, Springer, 2005

2. BACKGROUND

Although the receptors that are responsible for innate immune recognition were difficult to find, there is nothing fundamentally unusual about them. They detect neither "patterns," nor "danger." Rather, they detect molecules. The molecules that are detected have known structures, and represent components of microbes that cannot easily be eliminated by mutation. Direct interaction between the target molecules and the innate immune sensors occurs in order to elicit a signal.

The first inroad into the identification of innate immune receptors was made in 1965, with the fortuitous observation that mice of the C3H/HeJ strain were highly resistant to the lethal effect of LPS[1]. This observation was extended through the following decades, wherein it was realized that all cellular responses to LPS, including the adjuvant effect of LPS on adaptive immune responses[2-6], were impaired by a single mutation affecting a locus that was called *Lps*[7]. Further, the lethal effect of LPS was seen to depend upon mononuclear phagocytic cells of the host[8]. Moreover, a failure to sense LPS was associated with markedly enhanced susceptibility to infection by Gram-negative bacteria [9-12].

The *Lps* locus was resolved by positional cloning in 1998[13,14]. At that time, it became clear that all LPS sensing was dependent upon a single receptor protein known as TLR4. TLR4 was one of five paralogous proteins known to exist at that time, each with homology to the *Drosophila* Toll protein—a molecule known to fulfill a dual role in development and in immunity. Flies with mutations in Toll had been shown to be hypersusceptible to infection by fungal pathothens[15], and in the course of time, were also shown to be hypersusceptible to infection by Gram-positive bacteria[16]. The mammalian TLRs, first identified on the basis of homology searches as early as 1994, were initially thought to have developmental functions[17,18]. However, the identity of *Lps* and *Tlr4* proved that like Toll, at least one of the mammalian TLRs had a highly specific immune sensing function.

The discovery that *Lps* encoded TLR4 was a dramatic advance, for it suggested that each mammalian TLR might recognize a distinct microbial molecule, or at most, a small collection of such molecules. In the course of time, this hypothesis was proven correct. TLR2 (by itself or in conjunction with TLRs 1 or 6) serves as a sensor of bacterial lipopeptides[19], and glycans[20]; TLR3 recognizes double-stranded RNA[21]; TLR5 recognizes flagellin[22]; TLR9 recognizes unmethylated DNA[23]. The TLRs, collectively, respond to molecules produced by most microbes, and alert the host to the presence of infection. In some instances, specificity remains elusive. The natural ligand of TLR7 is still unknown, though this TLR senses small nucleotide-based drugs (imidazoquinolones)[24]. Human TLR10, which has no mouse counterpart but is closely related in structure to TLRs 1 and 6, also remains in search of a ligand. And three mouse TLRs (11, 12, and 13[25]) have no known ligands as yet.

3. THE BIOCHEMISTRY OF SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION: THE FUNCTIONS OF Myd88 AND MAL/Tirap

The mammalian TLRs comprise a major branch of a protein superfamily (Figure 1). Each TLR is a single-spanning type I transmembrane protein characterized by numerous leucine-rich repeat motifs in the ectodomain, and each is endowed with a single "Toll/IL-

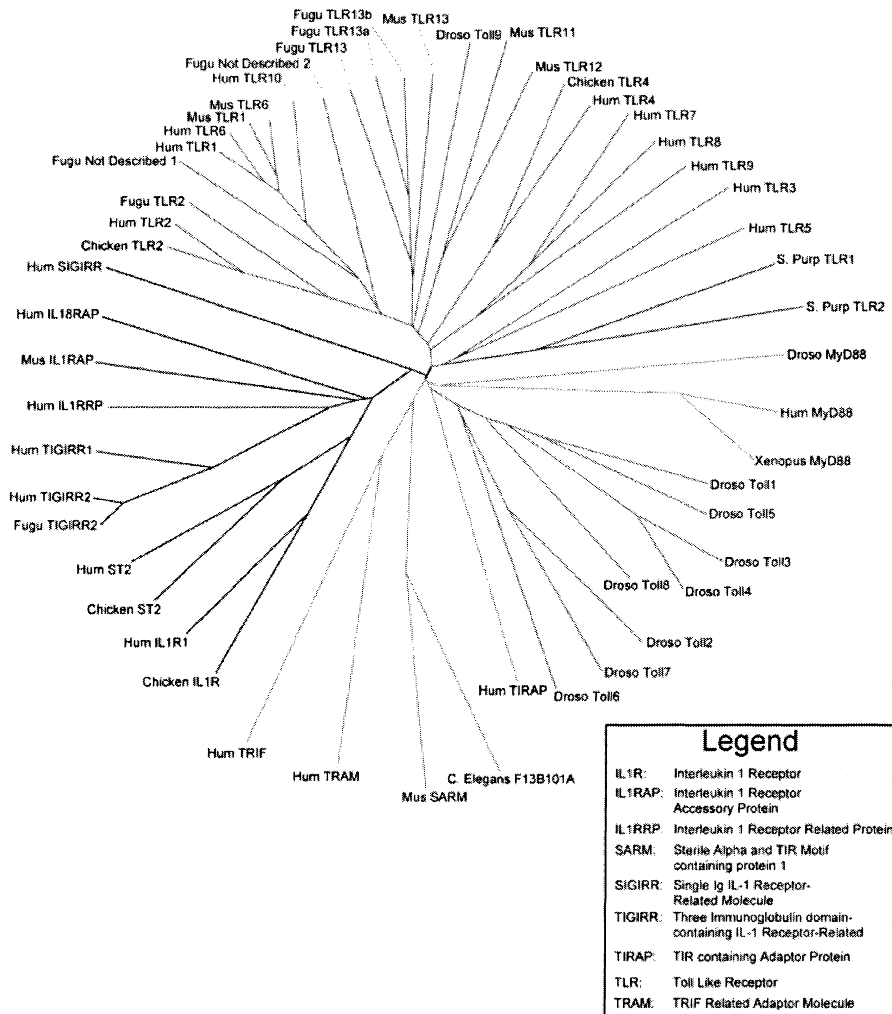


Figure 1. An unrooted tree of animal TIR domains shows the ancestry of the TLRs, IL-1R/IL-18R family members, and adapter proteins that serve them. Tree was generated using ClustalW. Where very sequences from close phylogenetic relatives were available (e.g., humans and mice), only a single sequence is represented in the tree in order to save space. Branch lengths are proportionate to times since divergence.

1R/Resistance" (TIR) motif that comprises the bulk of the cytoplasmic domain. The TIR motif is not represented only in TLRs, however. An ancient protein fold, the TIR motif is usually associated with an innate immune defensive function (even in plants, where it is an essential part of host resistance proteins). In mammals, TIR motifs are also present in proteins of the IL-1R/IL-18R family, which have immunoglobulin repeats in the ectodomain. Moreover, five cytoplasmic adapter proteins (MyD88, MAL, Trif, Tram, and Sarm) are known to have TIR motifs.

MyD88 was first identified as an intermediate in IL-1 receptor signaling. The IL-1 receptor had been identified as a homolog of Toll in 1990[26], and MyD88[27] as a related homolog in 1994[28]. It was logical to assume that heterotypic interaction between IL-1R and MyD88 might be required for effective signaling. The case was proved in with the observation that mice with targeted deletions of the MyD88 gene could not sense IL-1; neither could they sense IL-18[29]. The role of MyD88 in LPS signaling was established subsequently[30]. At present, it appears that all TLRs except TLR3 depend upon MyD88 for signaling, at least in part.

MyD88 displays an N-terminally placed death domain that serves to recruit the interleukin receptor associated kinase (IRAK)-4, a serine kinase, which in turn phosporylates IRAK-1 and IRAK-2. IRAK-1 and IRAK-2 may serve a scaffold function, and help to recruit TRAF-6, another scaffold protein that activates numerous downstream kinases, including members of the MAP kinase superfamily and components of the signalosome complex (IKKα, β, and γ) that is responsible for phosphorylation of IκB, and consequent activation of NF-κB.

In MyD88-deficient mice, it was noted that LPS signal transduction is only partially impaired[30]. There is tardive phosphorylation of MAP kinases, and there is tardive activation of NF-κB. Moreover, some events occur without any impediment at all: for example, the phosphorylation of IRF-3, a transcription factor required for interferon-β gene expression.

The fact that residual LPS signaling activity was observed in MyD88-deficient mice prompted speculation that TLR4 must engage more than one adapter protein in order to signal. Moreover, the fact that TLR3 did not require MyD88 suggested that still other adapters might exist. A second adapter (MAL, the "MyD88 Adapter Like" protein, also known as Tirap), was identified by blast searches of EST and genomic databases[31,32]. It was proposed that MAL/Tirap was responsible for MyD88-independent signaling[33]. However, this assertion proved to be incorrect, based as it was upon transfection rather than germline mutations. In 2002, the phenotype of the MAL/Tirap knockout was shown to be identical the that of the MyD88 knockout, where TLRs 2 and 4 were concerned[34]. For TLR2, all signaling potential was lost; for TLR4, only moderate impairment of signaling was observed.

4. FORWARD GENETIC ANALYSIS IDENTIFIES A THIRD ADAPTER REQUIRED FOR TLR3 AND TLR4 SIGNALING: THE *Lps2* LOCUS AND Trif/Ticam-1

The success of phenotype-driven gene discovery in the identification of the mammalian TLRs as primary sensors of infection led to the use of a germline mutagen, N-ethyl-N-nitrosourea (ENU) as a tool for the production of still other innate immunodeficiency phenotypes. Hoebe and colleagues produced mice with a defect in TLR3 and TLR4 signaling caused by a single point mutation[35], mapped to mouse chromosome 17. On 1567 meioses, this mutation (in the *Lps2* locus) was confined to a 216 kb interval and positionally cloned[36]. It was found to reside in the distal coding region of a third adapter protein, recently identified by homology searching and by use of the two-hybrid system, and respectively, called Trif[37], or Ticam-1[33].

While the Trif/Ticam-1 protein was believed to be capable of inducing interferon-β gene expression through interaction with IRF-3, there was disagreement as to which

TLRs it served. As has commonly been the case in the TLR field, the primacy of germline mutations over *in vitro* methods was demonstrated, as it was revealed that TLRs 3 and 4 (rather than most TLRs or TLR3 alone) depended upon Trif/Ticam-1 for effective signal transduction. Hoebe and colleagues showed that the *Lps2* mutation was required for effective antiviral responses, and for much of LPS toxicity *in vivo* (19129}. They also demonstrated that the protein was an integral component of the TLR3/4 → IRF-3 → interferon-β signaling axis[36]. Trif/Ticam-1 was also shown to mediate all of MyD88-independent signaling in that mice with mutations in both the Trif/Ticam-1 gene and the MyD88 gene showed no residual LPS responses at all[36].

The phenotype of homozygosity for the codominant *Lps2* allele was subsequently shown to be similar or identical to that of homozygosity for a Trif/Ticam-1 knockout allele [38]. However, an additional observation was made using *Lps2* homozygous mice that pointed to the existence of still another adapter, required for LPS signaling.

5. Trif/Ticam-1 INDEPENDENT CELLS: THE ROLE OF Tram

FACS analysis of TNF production in cells from wild type mice showed that virtually all peritoneal macrophages respond to LPS by producing TNF protein. On the other hand, no cells from MyD88-deficient mice produce TNF protein in any great quantity. Remarkably, cells from *Lps2* mutant homozygotes are of two types: some produce TNF in response to LPS and others do not[36]. The cells that show residual responsiveness are termed "Trif-independent." Trif independence cannot be attributable to MyD88 signaling, since MyD88 is represented in all cells, and if it were responsible for the "rescue" that is observed, rescue should be uniform (and not bimodal). Hence, the existence of an "adapter X" was posited, and further, it was suggested that adapter X was most likely identical to Tram, the TIR adapter protein that is the closest phylogenetic relative of Trif[36]. Evidence from the knockout of Tram suggests that this hypothesis is correct[39]. Tram functions as a component of the MyD88-dependent pathway downstream from TLR4, and in certain cells, can partly replace the function of Trif. However it does not transduce signals from TLR3.

6. Sarm

The fifth known TIR adapter protein is also endowed with Sterile Alpha Motif (SAM) domains, and at present, its function is entirely unknown. This is the most distant of the TIR adapters, displaced from the other members of the family by a great evolutionary distance. The Sarm TIR motif is most similar to a TIR motif observed in *C. elegans*.

7. WHICH TIR ADAPTERS SERVE THE ADAPTIVE IMMUNE RESPONSE?

The adjuvant effect of microbes has been known for more than eighty years, since Lewis and Loomis demonstrated the phenomenon of "allergic irritability"[40]. Later, it was found that heat-killed microbes were endowed with adjuvant activity: a fact that suggested that individual microbial molecules must function as adjuvants. By 1955, LPS was shown to be an adjuvant for adaptive immune responses[41], and as already noted, the

Lps locus was shown in 1975 to be required for this biological endpoint of LPS action[3]. Hence adjuvanticity depends upon TLR4[14], and a biochemical pathway for this effect would seem definable.

Adjuvanticity is dependent in large part upon the upregulation of costimulatory proteins (e.g., CD80, CD86, and CD40) that engage receptors on T cells and coordinate the mitogenic response to a specific antigen. LPS upregulates these costimulatory proteins on antigen presenting cells, and does so by engagement of TLR4. However, the initial suggestion that TLR-induced NF-κB activation was responsible for upregulation[42] proved to be incorrect. In MyD88-deficient cells, upregulation proceeds unimpeded[43,44]. On the contrary, in Trif-mutant cells, despite persistent activation of NF-κB, upregulation by of costimulatory proteins by LPS is abolished[45].

Recently, Hoebe et al. have demonstrated that LPS-induced upregulation of costimulatory proteins proceeds directly through the TLR4 → Trif → TBK1 → IRF-3 → IFNb axis, and depends upon activation of the type I interferon receptor[45]. On the other hand, upregulation of costimulatory proteins may be achieved through two alternative pathways when the inducer is dsRNA. One pathway is dependent upon TLR3, Trif and its downstream signaling partners. The other pathway is obscure, but is TLR3- and Trif-independent (Figure 2). A quantitative trait locus on chromosome 7 (designated *dsRNA1*) defines the alternative pathway, and is presently being mapped.

Jiang and colleagues[46] have shown that TLR3 signaling (now known to occur via Trif) entails activation of Traf-6, which in turn leads to IκB degradation, bypassing the MyD88-dependent activation pathway. However, MyD88-dependent signaling is not required for the upregulation of costimulatory proteins.

The second MyD88-independent adapter, Tram, appears to cooperate with Trif in all of Trif's LPS responses, including the upregulation of costimulatory proteins. But plays no part in the upregulation of costimulatory proteins initiated at the level of TLR3[39]. A plausible model of TIR adapter function would hold that all of the adapters function as homodimers or heterodimers, much as all of the TIR-domain receptors are believed to function (Figure 3a and 3b).

8. ADDITIONAL MUTATIONS AND WHAT THEY IMPLY

Recently, the ENU-induced phenotype *CpG1* was positionally cloned in our laboratory, and proved to be caused by a point mutation in the TLR9 ectodomain[25]. The molecular domain affected by the mutation is shared with TLRs 7 and 8, but not other TLRs. This mutation was identified in two phenotypic screens. First, macrophages from *CpG1* homozygotes do not respond to unmethylated DNA oligonucleotides bearing CpG motifs. Second, mice homozygous for the *CpG1* mutation are strikingly susceptible to infection by mouse cytomegalovirus (MCMV). So, too, are mice lacking MyD88. As mentioned already, $Trif^{Lps2}$ homozygotes are susceptible to MCMV. To an almost identical degree, so are mice lacking TLR3. In all four kinds of homozygous mutant, both type I interferon production and NK cell activation are defective *in vivo*. This suggests that the NK cell depends upon type I interferon stimulation as well as activation via the m157 → Ly49H pathway[47,48]. Both the TLR9 → MyD88 axis and the TLR3 → Trif axis are required for antiviral defense: the former more than the latter[25]. Moreover, it appears that defense against both viral and bacterial pathogens depends upon TLR sensing, which occurs via shared adapter proteins.

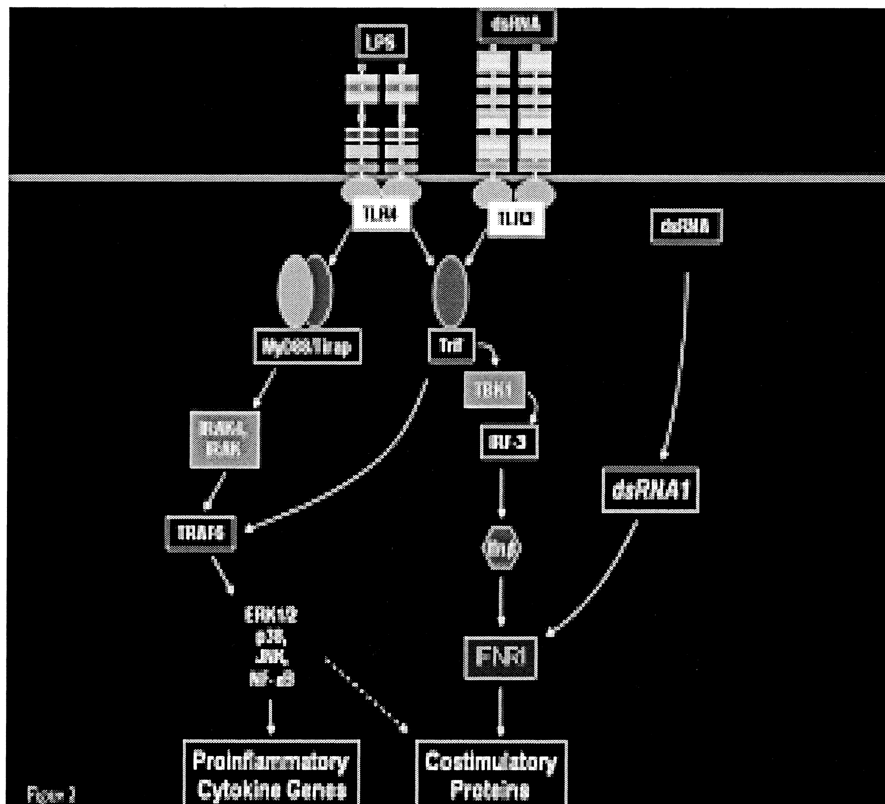
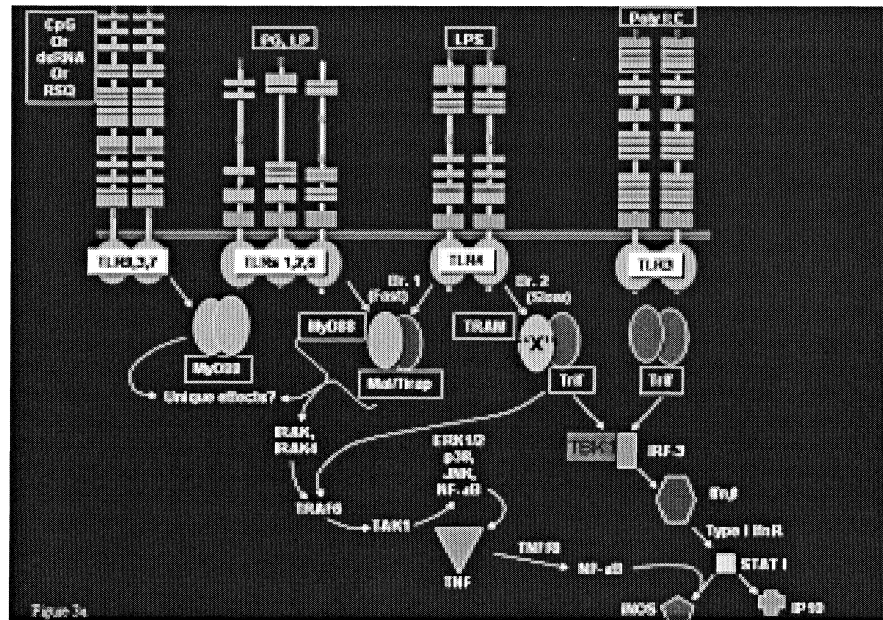


Figure 2. Two pathways for detection of dsRNA. The TLR3 6 Trif pathway offers one mode of detection. However, even in mice that lack TLR3 or Trif, dsRNA sensing and transduction of signals that lead to upregulation of costimulatory molecules can still occur. The alternative sensing pathway is dependent upon a locus called dsRNA1, which has been mapped to mouse chromosome 7.

PanR1, a dominant phenotype in which TNF production in response to all microbial inducers is markedly diminished, has been traced to a mutation affecting a surface residue of the TNF trimer (Hoebe, et al., unpublished data).

Oblivious, a phenotype in which mice show marked susceptibility to *Staphylococcal* infections and fail to adequately sense microbial diacylglycerides including MALP-2 and lipoteichoic acid, has also been positionally cloned. The gene in question seemingly encodes a coreceptor for microbial sensing that permits activation of TLR2/6 heteromers (Hoebe, et al., unpublished data). *3D*, a phenotype in which there is defective sensing of dsRNA, resiquimod, and CpG oligonucleotides, has been tightly mapped but not yet identified (Tabeta, et al., unpublished data). Other immune defects (*Achtung* and *Achtung2*, respectively), have been ascribed to *Edar* and *Edaradd* loci. The *Ugly* mutation has been tracked to a gene encoding an enzyme previously known for its role in lipid metabolism, but now recognized to be required for immunity to Gram-positive skin infections (Georgel, et al., unpublished data). Still another mutation (sootie) appears to be a novel allele of the *Lyst* gene, defective in Chediak-Higashi syndrome.



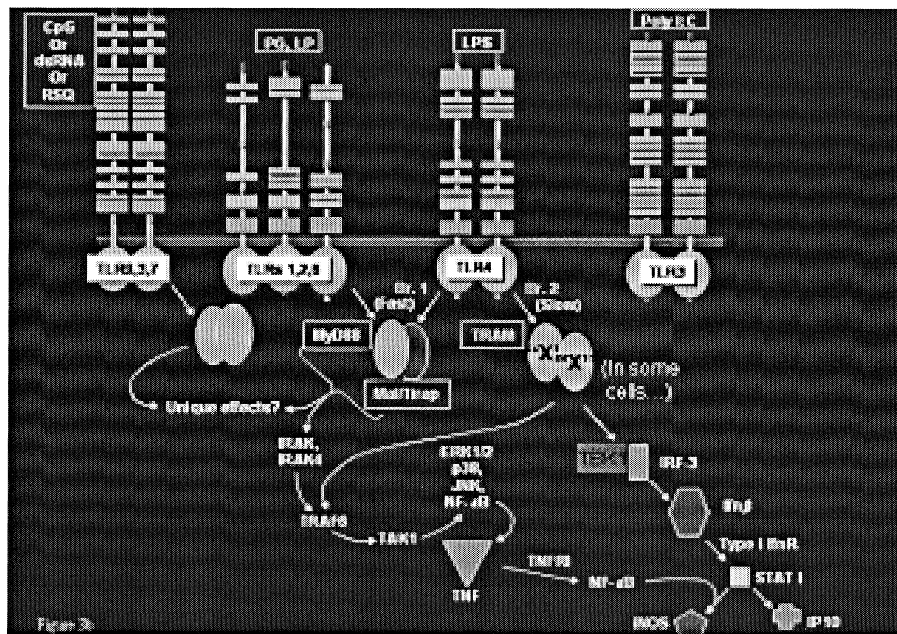


Figure 3. **A**. Key signaling pathways used by the human TLRs. TIR adapters are shown as ovals. A total of four TIR adapters serve the LPS receptor, TLR4. Homodimers of Trif alone serve TLR3. Heterodimers of MyD88 and MAL/Tirap serve TLRs 1, 2, and 6. And MyD88 alone serves TLRs 7, 8, and 9. **B**. The basis of Trif-independent LPS signaling to elicit TNF synthesis. Adapter X (Tram) homodimers are able to substitute for Trif-Tram heteromers in some (but not all) macrophages.

9. CONCLUSIONS: EVALUATION OF THE FORWARD GENETIC APPROACH

Forward genetic analysis may at times break open a field, revealing pathways that were once unknown, or disclosing novel functions of known proteins in a dramatic fashion. This was the case when the function of TLR4, and its transducer Trif, were discovered. In both cases, understanding based on point mutations anticipated understanding based on reverse genetic analysis (i.e., gene knockout). On the other hand, a focused approach, in which every paralog in a family of proteins is deliberately deleted, may yield a comprehensive picture of function that would take many years to develop by random mutagenesis.

A total of 33 ENU-induced immunodeficiency mutations have been identified by screening, and are in various stages of mapping or cloning. On the basis of present experience, it is believed that about half of them will prove to be functionally "new;" that is, they will disclose the function of proteins, rather than representing novel ENU induced alleles of known immune competence genes. In this sense, ENU mutagenesis may be viewed as a cutting-edge method, and one that is very much complementary to gene targeting.

10. ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This work was supported by funding from National Institutes of Health grants R01GM067759, R01GM60031, U54A154523.

11. REFERENCES

1. G. Heppner and D. W. Weiss, High susceptibility of strain A mice to endotoxin and endotoxin-red blood cell mixtures, *J. Bacteriol.* **90**:696-703 (1965).
2. J. M. Chiller, B. J. Skidmore, D. C. Morrison, and W. O. Weigle, Relationship of the structure of bacterial lipopolysaccharides to its function in mitogenesis and adjuvanticity, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A* **70**(7), 2129-2133 (1973).
3. B. J. Skidmore, J. M. Chiller, D. C. Morrison, and W. O. Weigle, Immunologic properties of bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS): correlation between the mitogenic, adjuvant, and immunogenic activities, *J. Immunol.* **114**(2 pt 2), 770-775 (1975).
4. B. J. Skidmore, D. C. Morrison, J. M. Chiller, and W. O. Weigle, Immunologic properties of bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS). II. The unresponsiveness of C3H/HeJ Mouse spleen cells to LPS-induced mitogenesis is dependent on the method used to extract LPS, *J. Exp. Med.* **142**(6), 1488-1508 (1975).
5. B. J. Skidmore, J. M. Chiller, W. O. Weigle, R. Riblet, and J. Watson, Immunologic properties of bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS). III. Genetic linkage between the in vitro mitogenic and in vivo adjuvant properties of LPS, *J. Exp. Med.* **143**(1), 143-150 (1976).
6. B. J. Skidmore, J. M. Chiller, and W. O. Weigle, Immunologic properties of bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS). IV. Cellular basis of the unresponsiveness of C3H/HeJ mouse spleen cells to LPS-induced mitogenesis, *J. Immunol.* **118**(1), 274-281 (1977).
7. J. Watson and R. Riblet, Genetic control of responses to bacterial lipopolysaccharides in mice. I. Evidence for a single gene that influences mitogenic and immunogenic respones to lipopolysaccharides, *J. Exp. Med.* **140**(5), 1147-1161 (1974).
8. S. M. Michalek, R. N. Moore, J. R. McGhee, D. L. Rosenstreich, and S. E. Mergenhagen, The primary role of lymphoreticular cells in the mediation of host responses to bacterial endotoxin, *J. Infec. Dis.* **141**:55-63 (1980).
9. A. D. O'Brien, D. L. Rosenstreich, and B. A. Taylor, Control of natural resistance to Salmonella typhimurium and Leishmania donovani in mice by closely linked but distinct genetic loci, *Nature* **287**(5781), 440-442 (1980).

10. A. D. O'Brien, D. L. Rosenstreich, I. Scher, G. H. Campbell, R. P. MacDermott, and S. B. Formal, Genetic control of susceptibility to Salmonella typhimurium in mice: role of the LPS gene, *J. Immunol.* **124**:20-24 (1980).
11. D. L. Rosenstreich, A. C. Weinblatt, and A. D. O'Brien, Genetic control of resistance to infection in mice, *CRC Crit. Rev. Immunol.* **3**:263-330 (1982).
12. L. Hagberg, R. Hull, S. Hull, J. R. McGhee, S. M. Michalek, and C. Svanborg Eden, Difference in susceptibility to gram-negative urinary tract infection between C3H/HeJ and C3H/HeN mice, *Infect. Immun.* **46**(3), 839-844 (1984).
13. A. Poltorak, I. Smirnova, X. L. He, M. Y. Liu, C. Van Huffel, O. McNally, D. Birdwell, E. Alejos, M. Silva, X. Du, P. Thompson, E. K. L. Chan, J. Ledesma, B. Roe, S. Clifton, S. N. Vogel, and B. Beutler, Genetic and physical mapping of the *Lps* locus- identification of the toll-4 receptor as a candidate gene in the critical region, *Blood Cells Molecules & Diseases* **24**(17), 340-355 (1998).
14. A. Poltorak, X. He, I. Smirnova, M.-Y. Liu, C. Van Huffel, X. Du, D. Birdwell, E. Alejos, M. Silva, C. Galanos, M. A. Freudenberg, P. Ricciardi-Castagnoli, B. Layton, and B. Beutler, Defective LPS signaling in C3H/HeJ and C57BL/10ScCr mice: mutations in *Tlr4* gene, *Science* **282**(5396), 2085-2088 (1998).
15. B. Lemaitre, E. Nicolas, L. Michaut, J. M. Reichhart, and J. A. Hoffmann, The dorsoventral regulatory gene cassette spatzle/Toll/cactus controls the potent antifungal response in Drosophila adults, *Cell* **86**(6), 973-983 (1996).
16. S. Rutschmann, A. Kilinc, and D. Ferrandon, Cutting edge: the toll pathway is required for resistance to gram- positive bacterial infections in Drosophila, *J. Immunol.* **168**(4), 1542-1546 (2002).
17. N. Nomura, N. Miyajima, T. Sazuka, A. Tanaka, Y. Kawarabayasi, S. Sato, T. Nagase, N. Seki, K. Ishikawa, and S. Tabata, Prediction of the coding sequences of unidentified human genes. I. The coding sequences of 40 new genes (KIAA0001-KIAA0040) deduced by analysis of randomly sampled cDNA clones from human immature myeloid cell line KG-1, *DNA Res.* **1**(1), 27-35 (1994).
18. T. Taguchi, J. L. Mitcham, S. K. Dower, J. E. Sims, and J. R. Testa, Chromosomal localization of TIL, a gene encoding a protein related to the Drosophila transmembrane receptor Toll, to human chromosome 4p14, *Genom.* **32**(3), 486-488 (1996).
19. O. Takeuchi, K. Hoshino, T. Kawai, H. Sanjo, H. Takada, T. Ogawa, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, Differential roles of TLR2 and TLR4 in recognition of gram-negative and gram-positive bacterial cell wall components, *Immunity* **11**(4), 443-451 (1999).
20. B. N. Gantner, R. M. Simmons, S. J. Canavera, S. Akira, and D. M. Underhill, Collaborative induction of inflammatory responses by dectin-1 and Toll-like receptor 2, *J. Exp. Med.* **197**(9), 1107-1117 (2003).
21. L. Alexopoulou, A. C. Holt, R. Medzhitov, and R. A. Flavell, Recognition of double-stranded RNA and activation of NF-kappaB by Toll- like receptor 3, *Nature* **413**(6857), 732-738 (2001).
22. F. Hayashi, K. D. Smith, A. Ozinsky, T. R. Hawn, E. C. Yi, D. R. Goodlett, J. K. Eng, S. Akira, D. M. Underhill, and A. Aderem, The innate immune response to bacterial flagellin is mediated by Toll- like receptor 5, *Nature* **410**(6832), 1099-1103 (2001).
23. H. Hemmi, O. Takeuchi, T. Kawai, T. Kaisho, S. Sato, H. Sanjo, M. Matsumoto, K. Hoshino, H. Wagner, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, A Toll-like receptor recognizes bacterial DNA, *Nature* **408**(6813), 740-745 (2000).
24. H. Hemmi, T. Kaisho, O. Takeuchi, S. Sato, H. Sanjo, K. Hoshino, T. Horiuchi, H. Tomizawa, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, Small anti-viral compounds activate immune cells via the TLR7 MyD88- dependent signaling pathway, *Nat. Immunol.* **3**(2), 196-200 (2002).
25. K. Tabeta et al., TLR9 and TLR3 as essential components of innate immune defense against mouse cytomegalovirus, *Proc.Natl.Acad.Sci U.S.A.* In Press. 2004.
26. N. J. Gay and F. J. Keith, Drosophila Toll and IL-1 receptor, *Nature* **351**(6325), 355-356 (1991).
27. K. A. Lord, B. Hoffman-Liebermann, and D. A. Liebermann, Nucleotide sequence and expression of a cDNA encoding MyD88, a novel myeloid differentiation primary response gene induced by IL6, *Oncogene* **5**(7), 1095-1097 (1990).
28. D. Hultmark, Macrophage differentiation marker MyD88 is a member of the Toll/IL-1 receptor family, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **199**(1), 144-146 (1994).
29. O. Adachi, T. Kawai, K. Takeda, M. Matsumoto, H. Tsutsui, M. Sakagami, K. Nakanishi, and S. Akira, Targeted disruption of the MyD88 gene results in loss of IL-1- and IL-18-mediated function, *Immunity* **9**(1), 143-150 (1998).
30. T. Kawai, O. Adachi, T. Ogawa, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, Unresponsiveness of MyD88-deficient mice to endotoxin, *Immunity* **11**(1), 115-122 (1999).
31. K. A. Fitzgerald, E. M. Palsson-McDermott, A. G. Bowie, C. A. Jefferies, A. S. Mansell, G. Brady, E. Brint, A. Dunne, P. Gray, M. T. Harte, D. McMurray, D. E. Smith, J. E. Sims, T. A. Bird, and L. A. O'Neill, Mal (MyD88-adapter-like) is required for Toll-like receptor-4 signal transduction, *Nature* **413**(6851), 78-83 (2001).

32. T. Horng, G. M. Barton, and R. Medzhitov, TIRAP: an adapter molecule in the Toll signaling pathway, *Nat. Immunol.* **2**(9), 835-841 (2001).
33. H. Oshiumi, M. Matsumoto, K. Funami, T. Akazawa, and T. Seya, TICAM-1, an adaptor molecule that participates in Toll-like receptor 3-mediated interferon-beta induction, *Nat. Immunol.* **4**:161-171 (2003).
34. M. Yamamoto, S. Sato, H. Hemmi, H. Sanjo, S. Uematsu, T. Kaisho, K. Hoshino, O. Takeuchi, M. Kobayashi, T. Fujita, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, Essential role for TIRAP in activation of the signalling cascade shared by TLR2 and TLR4, *Nature* **420**(6913), 324-329 (2002).
35. K. Hoebe, X. Du, J. Goode, N. Mann, and B. Beutler, *Lps2*: a new locus required for responses to lipopolysaccharide, revealed by germline mutagenesis and phenotypic screening, *J. Endotoxin Res.* **9**(4), 250-255 (2003).
36. K. Hoebe, X. Du, P. Georgel, E. Janssen, K. Tabeta, S. O. Kim, J. Goode, P. Lin, N. Mann, S. Mudd, K. Crozat, S. Sovath, J. Han, and B. Beutler, Identification of Lps2 as a key transducer of MyD88-independent TIR signaling, *Nature* **424**(6950), 743-748 (2003).
37. M. Yamamoto, S. Sato, K. Mori, K. Hoshino, O. Takeuchi, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, Cutting edge: a novel Toll/IL-1 receptor domain-containing adapter that preferentially activates the IFN-beta promoter in the Toll-like receptor signaling, *J. Immunol.* **169**(12), 6668-6672 (2002).
38. M. Yamamoto, S. Sato, H. Hemmi, K. Hoshino, T. Kaisho, H. Sanjo, O. Takeuchi, M. Sugiyama, M. Okabe, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, Role of adapter TRIF in the MyD88-independent Toll-like receptor signaling pathway, *Science* **301**(5633), 640-643 (2003).
39. M. Yamamoto, S. Sato, H. Hemmi, S. Uematsu, K. Hoshino, T. Kaisho, O. Takeuchi, K. Takeda, and S. Akira, TRAM is specifically involved in the Toll-like receptor 4-mediated MyD88-independent signaling pathway, *Nat. Immunol.* **4**(11), 1144-1150 (2003).
40. P. A. Lewis and D. Loomis, The formation of anti-sheep hemolytic amboceptor in the normal and tuberculous guinea pig, *J. Exp. Med.* **40**:503 (1924).
41. R. M. Condie, S. J. Zak, and R. A. Good, Effect of Meningococcal Endotoxin on the Immune Response, *Proceedings of the Society for Experimental Biology and Medicine* **90**(2), 355-360 (1955).
42. R. Medzhitov, P. Preston-Hurlburt, and C. A. Janeway, Jr., A human homologue of the Drosophila Toll protein signals activation of adaptive immunity, *Nature* **388**(6640), 394-397 (1997).
43. T. Kaisho, O. Takeuchi, T. Kawai, K. Hoshino, and S. Akira, Endotoxin-induced maturation of myd88-deficient dendritic cells, *J. Immunol.* **166**(9), 5688-5694 (2001).
44. T. Kaisho and S. Akira, Dendritic-cell function in Toll-like receptor- and MyD88-knockout mice, *Trends Immunol.* **22**(2), 78-83 (2001).
45. K. Hoebe, E. M. Jannsen, S. O. Kim, L. Alexopoulou, R. A. Flavell, J. Han, and B. Beutler, Upregulation of costimulatory molecules induced by lipopolysaccharide and double-stranded RNA occurs by Trif-dependent and Trif-independent pathways, *Nature Immunology* **4**(12), 1223-1229 (2003).
46. Z. Jiang, M. Zamanian-Daryoush, H. Nie, A. M. Silva, B. R. Williams, and X. Li, Poly(dI.dC)-induced Toll-like receptor 3 (TLR3)-mediated activation of NFkappa B and MAP kinase is through an interleukin-1 receptor-associated kinase (IRAK)-independent pathway employing the signaling components TLR3-TRAF6-TAK1-TAB2-PKR, *J. Biol. Chem.* **278**(19), 16713-16719 (2003).
47. M. G. Brown, A. O. Dokun, J. W. Heusel, H. R. Smith, D. L. Beckman, E. A. Blattenberger, C. E. Dubbelde, L. R. Stone, A. A. Scalzo, and W. M. Yokoyama, Vital involvement of a natural killer cell activation receptor in resistance to viral infection, *Science* **292**(5518), 934-937 (2001).
48. H. R. Smith, J. W. Heusel, I. K. Mehta, S. Kim, B. G. Dorner, O. V. Naidenko, K. Iizuka, H. Furukawa, D. L. Beckman, J. T. Pingel, A. A. Scalzo, D. H. Fremont, and W. M. Yokoyama, Recognition of a virus-encoded ligand by a natural killer cell activation receptor, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **99**(13), 8826-8831 (2002).

5

NF-κB, AN EVOLUTIONARILY CONSERVED MEDIATOR OF IMMUNE AND INFLAMMATORY RESPONSES

Changchun Xiao and Sankar Ghosh

NF-κB is a family of structurally related and evolutionarily conserved transcription factors[1]. There are five NF-κB proteins in mammals: RelA/p65, RelB, c-Rel, NF-κB1 (p50 and its precursor p105), and NF-κB2 (p52 and its precursor p100); and three in flies: Dorsal, Dif, and Relish. All NFκB proteins contain a N-terminal 300 amino acid rel homology domain, which is responsible for DNA binding, dimerization, and interaction with the inhibitors of NF-κB, the IκB family proteins. RelA, RelB, c-Rel, Dorsal, and Dif have a transcription activation domain at their C-termini, where p100, p105, and Relish contain ankyrin repeats, signature structures of IκB proteins. NF-κB proteins form hetero- or homodimers and are retained in the cytoplasm by IκBs. There are five IκB proteins in mammals: IκBα, IκBβ, IκBγ, IκBε, and Bcl-3; and one IκB protein in fly: Cactus. IκBα and IκBβ share a tripartite organization: an N-terminal domain that is phosphorylated in response to signals, a central ankyrin repeat domain, and a C-terminal PEST domain that is involved in the basal turnover of the protein. All other IκB proteins have central ankyrin repeat domain, but differ from IκBα and IκBβ at their N- and C-

Section of Immunobiology, Department of Molecular Biophysics and Biochemistry, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, Connecticut 06520.

Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation X
Edited by Gupta *et al.*, Springer, 2005

terminal domains. IκB proteins form complexes with NF-κB dimers, with ankyrin repeats in direct contact with rel homology domains. This interaction is essential to keep NF-κB dimers in the cytoplasm, thus physically sequestrating them from their transcriptional targets[1,2].

NF-κB proteins are ubiquitously expressed in adult tissues and coordinate the body's response to infection, stress, and injury. The key feature of the NF-κB transcription system is its inducibility. Many inducers lead to its activation and each of them signals to the cells that damage or infection has occurred. Some inducers are actually products of the body's response to damage or infection, such as inflammatory cytokines TNFα and IL-1[1].

A major group of NF-κB inducers are microbial components, the so-called pathogen associated molecular patterns (PAMPs). They are recognized by germline-coded receptors, the pattern recognition receptors (PRRs). Toll-like receptors (TLRs) are a very important group of PRRs[3]. The Toll pathway was originally identified in Drosophila through genetic screens for mutants with embryo patterning deficiency. A key component of the pathway is the Toll receptor, whose engagement leads to the activation of transcription factors of the NF-κB family. Subsequent studies showed that the Toll pathway was also essential for host defense in the adult fly. At least eight Toll-related genes have been reported in Drosophila and most of them are implicated in host defense[4]. The homologous family of Toll-like receptors (TLRs) in mammals contains at least ten members[5], though evidence suggests more are encoded in the mouse and human genomes. Genetic evidence has demonstrated that TLRs recognize conserved pathogen-associated molecular patterns, e.g. lipopolysaccharide, double strand RNA, and CpG DNA, thus playing essential roles in innate immunity. The basic signal transduction pathway induced by the Toll receptors is homologous in Drosphila and mammals. Upon activation, TLRs recruit an adapter protein called MyD88, which subsequently recruits a serine-threonine kinase IRAK. IRAK binds to TRAF6, an adaptor protein of the tumor necrosis factor receptor associated factor (TRAF) family. The assembly of this receptor complex activates IRAK, which undergoes auto-phosphorylation. Phosphorylated IRAK, together with TRAF6, detaches from the receptor complex and transduces the signal downstream, ultimately leading to activation of the IκB kinase (IKK) complex. The IKK complex phosphorylates IκB, causing its ubiquitination and degradation. This process frees NF-κB and allows it to translocate into the nucleus, where it helps coordinate immune responses[3].

Two pathways have been proposed to bridge the signal from TRAF6 to the IKK complex. One pathway is through TAK1 and its associated adaptor proteins TAB1 and TAB2, while the other one goes through Ecsit and MEKK1 or other MAP3K kinases[6-8]. Recent gene targeting results show that TAB2 is not required for NF-κB activation in response to signaling through the TLRs[9]. TAB1 knockout leads to embryonic lethality between embryonic day (E) 15.5-18.5, and mutant embryos exhibit extensive edema and hemorrhage, probably due to deficiency in activating the kinase activity of TAK1 and thus defective TGFβ signaling[10]. However, activation of NF-κB by TLRs in the absence of TAB1 has not been analyzed yet. We have generated TAK1 mutant mice by inserting promoter less βgeo, a chimera of β-galactosidase and the neomycin-resistant gene, into the first intron of the *Tak1* gene. Homozygous mutants are embryonic lethal around E9.5, exhibiting an open neural tube and significantly reduced embryo size (Xiao C.,

Steckel M., and Ghosh S., unpublished result). This early lethality has prevented us as yet from establishing *Tak1-/-* cells to analyze the TLR-induced NFκB activation.

Ecsit is a TRAF6-interacting protein that was discovered in a yeast two-hybrid screen using TRAF6 as bait [6]. The interaction between TRAF6 and Ecsit is conserved in Drosophila. Ecsit also interacts with MEKK1, a MAP3K kinase that can phosphorylate and activate the IKK complex. Expression of a dominant negative mutant of Ecsit specifically blocks signaling from TLRs, but not from the TNF receptor. Therefore Ecsit may transduce the signal from Toll receptors by bridging TRAF6 to the IKK complex [6]. To determine whether the TAK1/TAB1/TAB2 proteins can substitute for Ecsit in Toll signaling, and to further elucidate the physiological function of Ecsit, we deleted the *Ecsit* gene in embryonic stem cells and generated null mutant mice. *Ecsit-/-* mice died around E7.5 and analysis of the mutant embryos revealed a striking similarity to the phenotype of mice lacking *Bmpr1a* [11]. Further characterization showed that Ecsit is an obligatory intermediate in Bmp signaling that functions as a cofactor for Smad1/Smad4-dependent activation of specific Bmp target genes[12],[19]. In addition, ablation of Ecsit using shRNA results in the block of NF-κB activation by LPS, but not TNFα, demonstrating the specific involvement of Ecsit in Toll receptor signaling[19]. Therefore these studies show that Ecsit is an essential component in both Bmp and Toll signaling pathways and is required for early embryogenesis (Figure 1).

Cross talk between Toll pathway and TGFβ/Bmp pathways has been well documented in prior studies. At the syncytial stage of Drosophila embryo development, the expression of *decapentaplegic* (*Dpp*), a close homolog of mammalian *Bmp4* and a morphogen that specifies the dorsal fate of the Drosophila embryo, is under tight regulation by the Toll pathway. Dorsal, activated by Toll, binds directly to multiple sites in the *Dpp* gene and represses its expression in the ventral domain of the embryo [13]. The interaction between the Toll and Dpp pathways establishes the dorsoventral axis of Drosophila embryo [14].

There is also considerable evidence that the Toll and TGFβ pathways antagonize each other in the mammalian immune response. While Toll-like-receptors (TLRs), which recognize signature structures of various pathogens, induce inflammation and subsequently activate the adaptive immune responses, TGFβ generally plays an anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive role [3,15]. Many important target genes of pro-inflammatory stimuli contain binding sites for both NF-κB and Smads in their promoters, which can be activated or repressed by the Toll pathway and the TGFβ pathway, respectively [16] [17]. An additional means through which antagonism between these pathways is mediated is through inhibitory Smads. Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) up-regulates Smad7 expression through TLR4-NF-κB pathway. Smad7 then suppresses TGFβ by its direct interaction with TGFβ type I receptor and blocking TGFβ–induced Smad phosphorylation [18].

Our current study adds a potential new mechanism for cross-regulating the TLR and Bmp pathways. By functioning as an essential component in both pathways, Ecsit might help determine which pathway functions at any one time. Our earlier studies had indicated that Ecsit is potentially modified during Toll signaling [6]. It is possible that modified Ecsit might not function in the Bmp pathway and would therefore inhibit Bmp/TGFβ signaling. Alternatively, Bmp/TGFβ signaling might suppress TRL signaling by sequestering Ecsit in nuclear Smad complexes. Determining the exact mechanism by which Ecsit mediates cross-talk between these pathways will require detailed biochemical

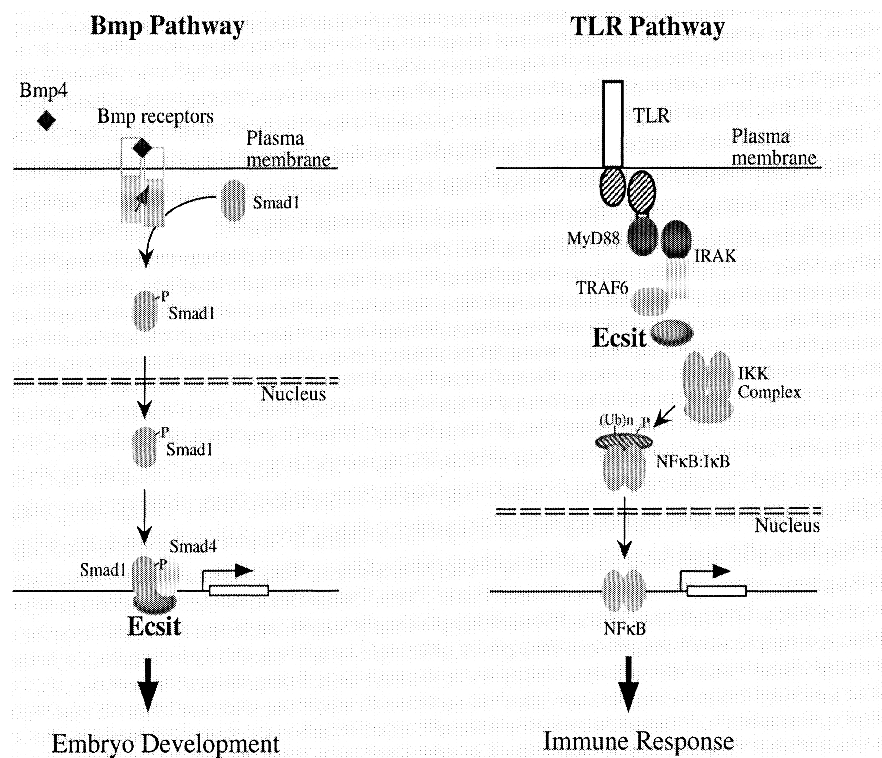


Figure 1. Proposed function of Ecsit in Bmp and TLR signaling pathways. Ecsit is localized to both cytoplasm and nucleus of unstimulated cells. In the nucleus, Ecsit and Smad4 bind to the promoters of Bmp target genes, but are not able to drive transcription. Upon Bmp stimulation, Smad1 is phosphorylated, translocates to the nucleus, and forms a complex with Smad4 and Ecsit on the target gene promoters, which is then able to drive transcription. Upon TLR activation, cytoplasmic Ecsit interacts with TRAF6 and transduces signals to the IKK complex, probably through activation of MAP3K kinases. The IKK complex then phosphorylates IκB, leading to its ubiquitination and degradation. Subsequently, NFκB is freed and translocated to the nucleus, where it regulates target gene expression. Red arrow indicates phosphorylation of the type I receptor by the type II receptor. P, phosphate group; (Ub)n, polyubiquitin chain.

analysis of Ecsit function in response to signaling through both pathways, and these studies will be significantly facilitated by the future availability of conditional knock-outs of *Ecsit*.

REFERENCES

1. Ghosh, S., May, M. J. & Kopp, E. B. NF-kappa B and Rel proteins: evolutionarily conserved mediators of immune responses. *Annu Rev Immunol* **16**, 225-60 (1998).
2. Ghosh, S. & Karin, M. Missing pieces in the NFkB puzzle. *Cell* **109**, S81-S96 (2002).

3. Aderem, A. & Ulevitch, R. J. Toll-like receptors in the induction of the innate immune response. *Nature* **406**, 782-7. (2000).
4. Hoffmann, J. A. & Reichhart, J. M. Drosophila innate immunity: an evolutionary perspective. *Nat Immunol* **3**, 121-6. (2002).
5. Akira, S., Takeda, K. & Kaisho, T. Toll-like receptors: critical proteins linking innate and acquired immunity. *Nat Immunol* **2**, 675-80. (2001).
6. Kopp, E. et al. ECSIT is an evolutionarily conserved intermediate in the Toll/IL-1 signal transduction pathway. *Genes Dev* **13**, 2059-71. (1999).
7. Deng, L. et al. *Activation of the IkappaB kinase complex by TRAF6 requires a dimeric ubiquitin-conjugating enzyme complex and a unique polyubiquitin chain* (2000).
8. Wang, C. et al. TAK1 is a ubiquitin-dependent kinase of MKK and IKK. *Nature* **412**, 346-51. (2001).
9. Sanjo, H. et al. TAB2 is essential for prevention of apoptosis in fetal liver but not for interleukin-1 signaling. *Mol Cell Biol* **23**, 1231-8. (2003).
10. Komatsu, Y. et al. Targeted disruption of the Tab1 gene causes embryonic lethality and defects in cardiovascular and lung morphogenesis. *Mech Dev* **119**, 239-249 (2002).
11. Mishina, Y., Suzuki, A., Ueno, N. & Behringer, R. R. Bmpr encodes a type I bone morphogenetic protein receptor that is essential for gastrulation during mouse embryogenesis. *Genes Dev* **9**, 3027-37. (1995).
12. Shi, Y. & Massague, J. Mechanisms of TGF-beta signaling from cell membrane to the nucleus. *Cell* **113**, 685-700. (2003).
13. Huang, J. D., Schwyter, D. H., Shirokawa, J. M. & Courey, A. J. The interplay between multiple enhancer and silencer elements defines the pattern of decapentaplegic expression. *Genes Dev* **7**, 694-704. (1993).
14. Wharton, K. A., Ray, R. P. & Gelbart, W. M. An activity gradient of decapentaplegic is necessary for the specification of dorsal pattern elements in the Drosophila embryo. *Development* **117**, 807-22. (1993).
15. Letterio, J. J. & Roberts, A. B. TGF-beta: a critical modulator of immune cell function. *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* **84**, 244-50. (1997).
16. Geiser, A. G. et al. Transforming growth factor beta 1 (TGF-beta 1) controls expression of major histocompatibility genes in the postnatal mouse: aberrant histocompatibility antigen expression in the pathogenesis of the TGF-beta 1 null mouse phenotype. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **90**, 9944-8. (1993).
17. Vodovotz, Y. et al. Spontaneously increased production of nitric oxide and aberrant expression of the inducible nitric oxide synthase in vivo in the transforming growth factor beta 1 null mouse. *J Exp Med* **183**, 2337-42. (1996).
18. Bitzer, M. et al. A mechanism of suppression of TGF-beta/SMAD signaling by NF-kappa B/RelA. *Genes Dev* **14**, 187-97. (2000).
19. Xiao, C., Shim, J-H., Kluppel, M., Zhang, S-M., Dong, C., Flavell, R. A., Fu, X-Y., Wrana, J. L., Hogan, B. L. M., and Ghosh, S. Ecsit is required for Bmp signaling and mesoderm formation during mouse embryogenesis. *Genes Dev* **17** 2933-2949 (2003).

6

INFLUENCE OF KIR DIVERSITY ON HUMAN IMMUNITY

Peter Parham

1. INTRODUCTION

Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIR) are expressed on natural killer (NK) cells and on subpopulations of T cells, mostly CD8 cells, that have memory phenotype. KIR thus have the potential to contribute to both the innate immune response, through the action of NK cells, and the adaptive immune response, through the action of memory T cells. KIR were first defined functionally in the context of alloreactive human NK cells that showed specificity for polymorphic HLA class I determinants. Identified in this manner were inhibitory KIR with specificity for HLA-A, B and C determinants. Cloning of cDNA for these KIR led to the identification of additional KIR, some of which are activating receptors with HLA class I specificity and others — including both inhibitory and activating KIR — for which ligands have yet be defined (reviewed in [1]).

2. DIVERSITY OF KIR EXPRESSION WITHIN THE INDIVIDUAL

The human genes encoding KIR comprise a compact family which are part of the leukocyte receptor complex (LRC) on human chromosome 19 (reviewed in [2]). A consequence of the program of human NK-cell development is that individual NK cells express different numbers of KIR genes and in different combination [3]. Such patterns of expression appear stable over time and determined by the methylation status of the genes [4,5]. This differential expression of KIR genes creates heterogeneity of receptor expression within a person's NK-cell population: a repertoire that has the potential to impart clonal specificity to the NK-cell response to pathogens.

Department of Structural Biology, Stanford University, Stanford, California, CA 994305.

3. DIVERSITY OF KIR GENOTYPE WITHIN THE HUMAN POPULATION

Human KIR haplotypes differ in gene content [6]. The genes that define the center of the locus (KIR2DL4) and the two ends (KIR3DL3 and KIR3DL2) are almost always present but that is not so for the other KIR genes. The number of KIR haplotypes defined by differences in gene content is approaching one hundred (reviewed in [7]. These haplotypes are further diversified by the allelic polymorphism that is a feature of most of the KIR genes [8]. The combined effect of diversity due to gene content and allelic polymorphism ensures that unrelated individuals rarely (<1%) have identical genotype. KIR genotype diversity thus individualizes NK-cell repertoires. The KIR haplotypes form two groups: the group A haplotypes are shorter having relatively few genes encoding activating receptors (0 or 1), whereas the group B haplotypes are longer because of the presence of more genes encoding activating receptors. Consequently, within the population there is considerable variation in the extent to which activating KIR are present, less so for the inhibitory KIR.

4. POPULATION DIFFERENCES IN KIR DIVERSITY

Populations differ in the relative frequency of group A and B KIR haplotypes: Caucasoid populations have even frequencies, while group A haplotypes predominate in the Japanese and group B haplotypes in Aboriginal Australians. In general there appears to be considerable population specificity in KIR genotype with relatively few KIR genotypes being common to populations and a majority being population-specific. Thus the KIR locus has undergone considerable evolution during the history of the human species (reviewed in [7]).

5. SPECIES-SPECIFICITY OF KIR

The picture of human KIR as a rapidly evolving system of immunoreceptors is fully endorsed by the analyses of KIR in other primate species. Comparison of human KIR with their counterparts in chimpanzee, bonobo, gorilla, orangutan and rhesus macaque shows that every species has a distinct set of KIR genes, with only a minority of them being common to any other species (see [9] and references therein). A major distinction can be made between the hominoids (humans and apes) and the Old World monkeys, represented by the rhesus macaque. Only KIR2DL4, the gene present in the middle of the human KIR locus, is shared by these species; the other rhesus macaque KIR representing a distinct lineage from those found in the hominoids. Given the extent of KIR diversification over relatively short periods of evolutionary time it now comes as little surprise that cattle and mouse KIR genes represent totally different lineages, which in the case of the mouse are known to be present on the X chromosome, not in the LRC [10]. Neither do they account for the dominant alloreactivities of mouse NK cells, a role that is played by the diverse and rapidly evolving lectin-like receptors encoded by the Ly49 genes of the natural killer complex (NKC) (reviewed in [11]).

6. KIR GENES EVOLVE RAPIDLY THROUGH RECOMBINATION

New KIR genes and haplotypes appear to be the work of asymmetric recombination, a mechanism that is likely facilitated by the high sequence similarity between KIR genes and the short intergenic regions that separate them. The only unique intergenic region is that separating the KIR2DL4 gene from the KIR3DP1 pseudogene, and which is of ~14kb. This regions appears a favored site for homologous recombination; it divides the locus roughly into two halves, within each of which there is high linkage disequilibrium (reviewed in [7]).

7. DIFFERENCES IN KIR REPERTOIRES OF EXPRESSION ARE DETERMINED PRINCIPALLY BY THE KIR GENES BUT WITH SOME INFLUENCE OF HLA GENES

When two siblings are genotyped for KIR and HLA they form four groups: KIR and HLA matched; KIR and HLA mismatched; KIR matched, HLA mismatched; and KIR mismatched, HLA matched. The patterns of KIR expression by the NK cells of siblings matched for KIR and HLA are very similar, whereas they range widely for siblings who are KIR and HLA mismatched. Most of the difference is due to the KIR genes, as evidenced by the similarity between KIR matched, HLA mismatched siblings, but there is a lesser effect due to HLA [12]. The latter contribution correlates with the observation that NK cell populations develop to be tolerant of all autologous, but not all allogeneic, HLA class I allotypes [3].

8. A MAJORITY OF ALLOGENEIC BONE MARROW TRANSPLANTS INVOLVE KIR MISMATCH

In matching donors and recipients for clinical allogeneic bone-marrow transplantation the 'gold standard' is for the donor to be a healthy, HLA-identical sibling (reviewed in [13]). Because the HLA and KIR loci are situated on different chromosomes, only one quarter of such gold-standard donors will also be matched for KIR. (For unrelated HLA-matched donors those that are KIR-matched number less than 1%.) When the bone marrow donor is HLA-identical and KIR mismatched the recipient reconstitutes an NK-cell repertoire like that of the donor and different from that of the patient prior to transplantation [14]. The kinetics of the reconstitution differ: some patients are fully reconstituted within one year while others take much longer. The results point to KIR mismatch being beneficial for both quicker recovery of KIR expression and good clinical outcome.

9. CONCLUSION

The extent of human KIR diversity and its rapid evolution point to these genes being subject to natural selection by pathogens. One likely contributor is balancing selection, which provides responsiveness to pathogens through activating receptors, while maintaining tolerance to self through inhibitory receptors. Consistent with this model are the studies correlating activating KIR both with better response to infection [15] and with

susceptibility to autoimmunity [16,17]. Another likely contributor is directional selection, which causes the system to continuously change. This can be conceived in terms of successive pathogen-specific selections. Variant activating receptors could be selected for their capacity to direct pathogen-specific NK-cell responses; variant inhibitory receptors could be selected for their capacity to engage variant HLA class I molecules that have themselves been selected for their capacity to direct pathogen-specific T-cell responses. Anothre and quite distinct biological function of NK cells also has a strong potential to select for improvements in NK-cell function. This is the function that NK cells in the decidua serve in implantation at the beginning of pregnancy (reviewed in [18]).

10. REFERENCES

1. Vilches, C., and Parham, P., 2002, KIR:diverse,rapidly-evolving receptors of innate and adaptive immunity, *Ann. Rev. Immunol.* **20**:217.
2. Trowsdale J., 2001, Genetic and functional relationships between MHC and NK cell receptor genes *Immunity* **15**:363.
3. Valiante, N.M., Uhrberg, M., Shilling. H.G., Lienert-Weidenbach, K., Arnett, K.L., D'Andrea, A, Phillips, J.H., Lanier, L.L., and Parham, P., 1997, Functionally and structually distinct NK cell receptor repertoires in the peripheral blood of two human donors, *Immunity* **7**:739.
4. Santourlidis, S., Trompeter., H.I., Weinhold, S., Eisermann, B., Meyer. K.L., Wernet, P., and Uhrberg, M., 2002, Crucial role of DNA methylation in determination of clonally distributed killer cell Ig-like receptor expression patterns in NK cells, *J. Immunol.* **169**:4253.
5. Chan, H.W., Kurago, Z.B., Stewart, C.A., Wilson, M.J., Martin, M.P., Mace, B.E., Carrington, M., Trowsdale, J., and Lutz, C.T., 2002, DNA methylation maintains allele-specific KIR gene expression in human natural killer cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **19**:245.
6. Uhrberg., M., Valiante, N.M., Shum, B.P., Shilling, H.G., Lienert-Weidenbach, K., Corliss, B., Tyan, D., Lanier, L.L., and Parham, P., 1997, Human diversity in killer cell inhibitory receptor genes *Immunity* **7**:753.
7. Yawata, M., Yawata, N., Abi-Rached, L., and Parham., P., 2002, Variation within the human killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor (*KIR*) gene family *Crit. Rev. in Immunol.* **22**: 463.
8. Shilling. H.G., Guethlein, L.A., Cheng, N.W., Gardiner, C., Rodriguez, R., Tyan, D., and Parham, P., 2002a, Allelic polymorphism synergizes with variable gene content to individualize human KIR genotype, *J. Immunol.* **168**:2307.
9. Rajalingam, R., Parham, P., and Abi-Rached, L., 2004, Domain shufflig has been the main mechanism forming new hominoid KIR, *J. Immunol.* **172**:356.
10. Welch, A.Y., Kasahara, M., and Spain, L.M., 2003, Identification of the mouse killer immunoglobulin-like receptor (Kir1) gene family mapping to chromosome X, *Immunogen.* **54**:782.
11. Veinotte, L.L., Wilhelm, B.T., Mager. D.L., and Takei, F., 2003, Acquisition of MHC-specific receptors on murine natural killer cells, *Crit. Rev. Immunol* **23**:251.
12. Shilling, H.G., Young, N., Guethlein, L.A., Cheng, N.W., Gardiner, C.M., Tyan, D., and Parham, P., 2002b, Genetic control of human NK cell repertoire, *J. Immunol.* **169**:239.
13. Parham, P., and McQueen K.L., 2003, Alloreactive killer cells: hindrance and help for hematopoietic transplants, *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* **3**: 108.
14. Shilling, H.G., McQueen, K.L., Cheng, N.W., Shizuru, J.A., Negrin, R.S., and Parham, P., 2003, Reconstitution of NK cell receptor repertoire following HLA-matched hematopoietic cell transplantation, *Blood* **101**:3730.
15. Martin, M.P., Gao, X., Lee, J.H., Nelson, G.W., Detels, R., Goedert. J.J., Buchbinder, S., Hoots, K., Vlahov, D., Trowsdale, J., Wilson, M., O'Brien, S.J., and Carrington, M., 2002a, Epistatic interaction between KIR3DS1 and HLA-B delays the progression to AIDS, *Nat. Genet.* **4**:429.
16. Yeh, J.H., Moore, B.E., Nakajima, T., Scholl, D., Schaid, D.J., Weyand, C.M., and Goronzy, J.J., 2001, Major histocompatibility complex class I-recognizing receptors are disease risk genes in rheumatoid arthritis, *J. Exp. Med.* **193**: 1159.
17. Martin, M.P., Nelson, G., Lee, J.H., Pellett, F., Gao, X., Wade, J., Wilson, M.J., Trowsdale, J., and Carrington, M., 2002b, Cutting edge: susceptibility to psoriatic arthritis: influence of activating killer Ig-like receptor genes in the absence of specific HLA-C alleles, *J. Immunol.* **169**: 2818.
18. Moffett-King, A., 2002, Natural killer cells and pregnancy, *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* **2**:656.

7

NKG2D IN INNATE AND ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

Lewis L. Lanier

1. INTRODUCTION

The term "NK receptors" has been applied to a growing number of cell surface receptors that were initially identified by their expression on NK cells. However, it is becoming increasingly obvious that few or none of the known "NK receptors" are completely restricted in expression to NK cells. For example, many of the inhibitory mouse Ly49 receptors were in fact originally cloned from T cell lines [1,2], the NKR-P1 [3,4] and CD94/NKG2A receptors are found on subsets of both human and mouse T cells [5-7], and KIR have been identified on human T cells [8,9]. Typically, these "NK receptors" are present on effector or memory T cells, most frequently on γδ-TcR+ T cells or CD8+ T cells, and are rarely observed on naive resting T cells. Thus, the expression of "NK receptors" on T cells implies a role in adaptive, as well as innate, immunity.

CD94, *NKR-P1* (CD161), *NKG2A* (CD159a), *NKG2C*, *NKG2D* and *NKG2E* are localized within the cluster of genes in the "NK complex" on human chromosome 12p13 and the syntenic region of mouse chromosome 6. The CD94, NKR-P1 and NKG2D receptors are expressed as disulfide-bonded homodimers, whereas CD94 may also form disulfide-bonded heterodimers with NKG2A or NKG2C (as yet whether human NKG2E pairs with CD94 has not been established conclusively). CD94/NKG2A and CD94/NKG2C (associated with DAP12) are inhibitory and activating receptors, respectively, recognizing HLA-E in humans and $Qa1^b$ in mice. In mice, different genes within the NKR-P1 family encode either inhibitory or activating receptors (reviewed in [10]). The function of the receptor encoded by the single human NKR-P1A (*KLRB1*) gene is not established in that there are neither known signaling motifs in the cytoplasmic region of this protein nor any associated adapter proteins identified [4]. Ligands have been identified for two of the mouse NKR-P1 receptors [11], but not for human NKR-P1A. While the physiological role of NKR-P1 has not been determined, the

University of California San Francisco, Department of Microbiology and Immunology and the Cancer Research Institute, 513 Parnassus Ave., Box 0414, HSE 1001G, San Francisco, California, 94143-0414; phone 415-514-0829; e-mail lanier@itsa.ucsf.edu.

Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation X
Edited by Gupta *et al.*, Springer, 2005

CD94/NKG2A and CD94/NKG2C receptors have been implicated in both innate and adaptive immunity against pathogens.

NKG2D differs fundamentally from the other "NK receptors" in that it is encoded by a single, essentially non-polymorphic gene that provides for immune activation, with no evidence for a related receptor with inhibitory function. Signaling occurs by the association of NKG2D with the DAP10 transmembrane adapter protein, which contains a YINM motif able to activate the PI3-kinase pathway [12,13]. In mice, a splice variant of NKG2D, designated NKG2D-S [14], can also associate with the DAP12 ITAM-bearing adapter protein, although this does not occur in humans. NKG2D is expressed constitutively on essentially all human and mouse NK cells, all human CD8+ T cells and most mouse and human γδ-TcR+ T cells [15,16]. It is not present on resting mouse CD8+ T cells or macrophages, but can be induced by activation [16].

NKG2D binds with high (nM) affinity to a family of MHC class I-like proteins. In humans, NKG2D was first shown to bind the MICA and MICB glycoproteins [15], encoded by genes within the human MHC and linked to HLA-B [17]. In addition, human NKG2D also recognizes another family of MHC class I-related molecules, which includes ULBP-1, -2, -3 and -4 [18,19] (also known as RAET1) (reviewed in [20]). While *MIC* genes do not exist in mice, mouse orthologs of the *RAET1* genes include mouse *RAE-1α,β,γ,δ,ε* and the related *H60* and *MULT-1* genes, all of which are linked on mouse chromosome 10 in a region syntenic to human chromosome 6q24.3 (location of the *RAET1* genes) (reviewed in [21]). All of the NKG2D ligand proteins share in common a general MHC class I-like structure with an α1 and α2 domain involved in NKG2D receptor binding, but unlike conventional MHC class I all lack the ability to present peptides or bind β2-microglobulin (reviewed in [22]). In general, the NKG2D ligand proteins are absent or expressed at only low levels on normal, healthy cells, but are induced or elevated on transformed or pathogen-infected cells (reviewed in [21]).

2. NKG2D IN INNATE IMMUNITY

NKG2D is constitutively expressed on human and mouse NK cells and has been implicated in NK cell-mediated responses against tumors and viral infection. In particular, it has been shown that ectopic expression of NKG2D ligands (including H60, RAE-1β, RAE-1δ, or RAE-1ε) can result in the rejection of the MHC class I-bearing lymphoma RMA [23,24]. This is noteworthy because the expression of H-2 on RMA tumor cells previously has been shown to prevent NK cell responses, as revealed by the ability of NK cells to reject the H-2-deficient variant of RMA, called RMA-S, but not the parental RMA cells [25]. Thus, in this situation signaling through NKG2D provides sufficiently strong activation to functionally override the inhibitory MHC receptor operational in the responding NK cells. Rejection of the RAE-1-bearing RMA tumors requires perforin, but not interferon-γ production by the NK cells [26]. Ectopic expression of NKG2D ligands in the B16 melanoma and EL4 thymoma has also been shown to induce NK cell-mediated protection against these transplanted tumors [24]. RAE-1 and H60 transcripts have been detected in the skin of mice exposed to chemical carcinogens and it has been suggested that this might play a role in the ability of γδ-TcR+ T cells to provide immune surveillance against nascent tumors [27]. Human tumors expressing NKG2D ligands are also susceptible to NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity *in vitro* [15,18]. The relative contribution of NKG2D to the NK cell response varies between

different tumors, likely due to the presence or absence of ligands for other activating NK cell receptors that are expressed on the individual tumor [28].

NKG2D has also been implicated in innate immunity against viruses, in particular cytomegalovirus (CMV). CMV induces transcription of genes encoding NKG2D ligands in cells infected with the virus [29]. Furthermore, treatment of mice infected with CMV with a neutralizing anti-NKG2D mAb increased viral titers early during infection, indicating a role for NKG2D in NK cell-mediated anti-viral responses [29]. Interestingly, the gp40 viral glycoprotein encoded by the *m152* gene in mouse CMV prevents cell surface expression of certain NKG2D ligands in the infected cells [29,30], due to the ability of gp40 to retain RAE-1 proteins in the cytoplasm [29]. Similarly, in human CMV the UL16 glycoprotein causes intracellular degradation of certain NKG2D ligands (MICB, ULBP1 and ULBP2). This partially protects CMV-infected cells from attack by human NK cells [31-34]. Recent studies have also suggested that expression of MICA and MICB on dendritic cells is impaired in patients with chronic hepatitis C infection, suggesting a potential role for NKG2D in this disease [35].

A link between NKG2D and bacterial infection is provided by the observation that interactions between AfaE on *Escherichia coli* and CD55 on human endothelial cells induces the expression of MICA, triggering the production of INF-g by NK cells [36]. Similarly, infection of dendritic cells and epithelial cells by *Mycobacteria tuberculosis* induces MICA, resulting in the activation of gd-TcR+ T cells [37]. A mechanism to account for bacterial or viral induction of NKG2D ligands is provided by our recent studies showing that signaling through Toll-like receptors (TLR) can induce transcription of the *RAE-1* family of genes in mouse macrophages, resulting in the activation and modulation of NKG2D on NK cells *in vivo* and *in vitro* [38]. In mice, macrophages, which constitutively express DAP10 and DAP12, have been shown to transcribe NKG2D after activation [14,39]. Since activated macrophages also express NKG2D ligands, it is possible that this provides an autocrine stimulation pathway for myeloid cells and contributes to their function in innate defense.

3. NKG2D IN ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

Expression of NKG2D on CD8+ T cells implies a role in adaptive immunity. While expressed constitutively on all human CD8+ T cells [15], it only appears after TcR-dependent stimulation on mouse CD8+ T cells [16]. In contrast to the role of NKG2D in NK cells or activated macrophages, in T cells engagement of NKG2D alone is usually insufficient to trigger cytolytic function or cytokine production. Rather in T cells NKG2D may predominantly serve as a "costimulatory" receptor, functioning in conjunction with the TcR, although this may depend upon the activation state of the T cells. Groh and colleagues have reported that NKG2D functions to augment the response of CMV-specific human CTL, particularly when amounts of viral peptide antigen are limiting [40]. Exposure of human CD8+ T cells to IL-15 upregulates expression of NKG2D and co-crosslinking with anti-CD3 + anti-NKG2D mAb augments proliferation and cytokine production, even in CD8+ T cells lacking CD28 [41]. Similar results have been observed with mouse CD8+ T cells, although the costimulatory activity of NKG2D appears rather modest [16] compared with costimulation mediated by CD28. Based on these findings, it has been proposed that NKG2D may provide an alternative to CD28 for the costimulation of CD8+ T cells, particularly in human CD8+ T cells that lack CD28 and in situations where antigen-presenting cells or target cells bear NKG2D ligands.

A role for NKG2D costimulation in tumor immunity mediated by mouse CD8+ T cells is suggested by the finding that mice which rejected RAE-1-transfected RMA cells generated tumor-specific CTL [24]; however, this was not observed in other studies using RAE-1-transfected RMA tumors [23]. In human cancer patients expressing tumors bearing MICA, the levels of NKG2D on the CD8+ T cells in peripheral blood and within the tumor are lower than in healthy subjects and their NKG2D-dependent functions are impaired [42]. Interestingly, these tumors secreted MICA, which could be found in the sera of these patients and the soluble MICA was able to down-modulate NKG2D receptors on the lymphocytes [42]. NKG2D is also down-regulated by TGF-β [43], which is frequently over produced by certain tumors. These findings suggest mechanisms by which tumors, like viruses, may evade NKG2D-dependent immune surveillance.

While NKG2D may provide a beneficial role in anti-viral and anti-tumor immunity, this pathway may contribute to autoimmunity if NKG2D ligands are expressed by cells in the absence of infection or transformation. Although usually absent from CD4+ T cells, recent studies have documented NKG2D on CD4+ T cells in the synovial fluid of patients with rheumatoid arthritis [44]. IL-15 and TNFα, cytokines induced by inflammation, apparently were responsible for induction of NKG2D on the CD4+ T cells [44]. Recently, our lab has observed that *RAE-1* genes are inappropriately over-expressed in the pancreas of NOD mice, a strain of mouse that spontaneously develops autoimmune type I diabetes. Furthermore, blockade of NKG2D has a therapeutic benefit and prevents diabetes in these animals (Ogasawara and Lanier, unpublished). Therefore, there is emerging evidence that NKG2D may participate in both immunity and autoimmunity.

4. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

LLL is an American Cancer Society Research Professor and is supported by NIH grants CA89189, CA89294 and CA095137 and a Pilot & Feasibility grant from the UCSF DERC # P60 DK63720.

5. REFERENCES

1. Yokoyama, W.M., L.B. Jacobs, O. Kanagawa, E.M. Shevach, and D.I. Cohen. 1989. A murine T lymphocyte antigen belongs to a supergene family of type II integral membrane proteins. *J. Immunol.* 143:1379-1386.
2. Chan, P.-Y., and F. Takei. 1989. Molecular cloning and characterization of a novel murine T cell surface antigen, YE1/48. *J. Immunol.* 142:1727-1736.
3. Ballas, Z.K., and W. Rasmussen. 1990. NK1.1+ thymocytes: Adult murine CD4-,CD8-thymocytes contain an NK1.1+, CD3+, $CD5^{hi}$, $CD44^{hi}$, TCR-Vβ8+ subset. *J. Immunol.* 145:1039-1045.
4. Lanier, L.L., C. Chang, and J.H. Phillips. 1994. Human NKR-P1A: A disulfide linked homodimer of the C-type lectin superfamily expressed by a subset of NK and T lymphocytes. *J. Immunol.* 153:2417-2428.
5. Aramburu, J., M.A. Balboa, A. Ramirez, A. Silva, A. Acevedo, F. Sanchez-Madrid, M.O. DeLandazuri, and M. Lopez-Botet. 1990. A novel functional cell surface dimer (Kp43) expressed by natural killer cells and T cell receptor-γ/δ+ T lymphocytes. I. Inhibition of the IL-2 dependent proliferation by anti-Kp43 monoclonal antibody. *J. Immunol.* 144:3238-3247.
6. Mingari, M.C., M. Ponte, S. Bertone, F. Schiavetti, C. Vitale, R. Bellomo, A. Moretta, and L. Moretta. 1998. HLA class I-specific inhibitory receptors in human T lymphocytes: interleukin-15-induced expression of CD94/NKG2A in superantigen- or alloantigen-activated CD8+ T cells. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 95:1172-1177.
7. McMahon, C.W., and D.H. Raulet. 2001. Expression and function of NK cell receptors in CD8(+) T cells. *Curr Opin Immunol* 13:465-470.

8. Ferrini, S., A. Cambiaggi, R. Meazza, S. Sforzini, S. Marciano, M.C. Mingari, and L. Moretta. 1994. T cell clones expressing the natural killer cell-related p58 receptor molecule display heterogeneity in phenotypic properties and p58 function. *Eur J Immunol* 24:2294-2298.
9. Phillips, J.H., J.E. Gumperz, P. Parham, and L.L. Lanier. 1995. Superantigen-dependent, cell-mediated cytotoxicity inhibited by MHC class I receptors on T lymphocytes. *Science* 268:403-405.
10. Yokoyama, W.M., and B.F. Plougastel. 2003. Immune functions encoded by the natural killer gene complex. *Nat Rev Immunol* 3:304-316.
11. Iizuka, K., O.V. Naidenko, B.F. Plougastel, D.H. Fremont, and W.M. Yokoyama. 2003. Genetically linked C-type lectin-related ligands for the NKRP1 family of natural killer cell receptors. *Nat Immunol.*
12. Wu, J., Y. Song, A.B.H. Bakker, S. Bauer, V. Groh, T. Spies, L.L. Lanier, and J.H. Phillips. 1999. An activating receptor complex on natural killer and T cells formed by NKG2D and DAP10. *Science* 285:730-732.
13. Billadeau, D.D., J.L. Upshaw, R.A. Schoon, C.J. Dick, and P.J. Leibson. 2003. NKG2D-DAP10 triggers human NK cell-mediated killing via a Syk-independent regulatory pathway. *Nat Immunol* 4:557-564.
14. Diefenbach, A., E. Tomasello, M. Lucas, A.M. Jamieson, J.K. Hsia, E. Vivier, and D.H. Raulet. 2002. Selective associations with signaling proteins determine stimulatory versus costimulatory activity of NKG2D. *Nat Immunol* 3:1142-1149.
15. Bauer, S., V. Groh, J. Wu, A. Steinle, J.H. Phillips, L.L. Lanier, and T. Spies. 1999. Activation of natural killer cells and T cells by NKG2D, a receptor for stress-inducible MICA. *Science* 285:727-730.
16. Jamieson, A.M., A. Diefenbach, C.W. McMahon, N. Xiong, J.R. Carlyle, and D.H. Raulet. 2002. The role of the NKG2D immunoreceptor in immune cell activation and natural killing. *Immunity* 17:19-29.
17. Bahram, S., M. Bresnahan, D.E. Geraghty, and T. Spies. 1994. A second lineage of mammalian major histocompatibility complex class I genes. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:6259-6263.
18. Cosman, D., J. Mullberg, C.L. Sutherland, W. Chin, R. Armitage, W. Fanslow, M. Kubin, and N.J. Chalupny. 2001. ULBPs, novel MHC class I-related molecules, bind to CMV glycoprotein UL16 and stimulate NK cytotoxicity through the NKG2D receptor. *Immunity* 14:123-133.
19. Jan Chalupny, N., C.L. Sutherland, W.A. Lawrence, A. Rein-Weston, and D. Cosman. 2003. ULBP4 is a novel ligand for human NKG2D. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 305:129-135.
20. Radosavljevic, M., and S. Bahram. 2003. In vivo immunogenetics: from MIC to RAET1 loci. *Immunogenetics* 55:1-9.
21. Cerwenka, A., and L.L. Lanier. 2003. NKG2D ligands: unconventional MHC class I-like molecules exploited by viruses and cancer. *Tissue Antigens* 61:335-343.
22. Radaev, S., and P.D. Sun. 2003. Structure and function of natural killer cell surface receptors. *Annu Rev Biophys Biomol Struct* 32:93-114.
23. Cerwenka, A., J.L. Baron, and L.L. Lanier. 2001. Ectopic expression of retinoic acid early inducible-1 gene (RAE-1) permits natural killer cell-mediated rejection of a MHC class I-bearing tumor in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 98:11521-11526.
24. Diefenbach, A., E.R. Jensen, A.M. Jamieson, and D.H. Raulet. 2001. Rae1 and H60 ligands of the NKG2D receptor stimulate tumour immunity. *Nature* 413:165-171.
25. Karre, K., H.G. Ljunggren, G. Piontek, and R. Kiessling. 1986. Selective rejection of H-2-deficient lymphoma variants suggests alternative immune defense strategy. *Nature* 319:675-678.
26. Hayakawa, Y., J.M. Kelly, J.A. Westwood, P.K. Darcy, A. Diefenbach, D. Raulet, and M.J. Smyth. 2002. Cutting Edge: Tumor Rejection Mediated by NKG2D Receptor-Ligand Interaction Is Dependent upon Perforin. *J Immunol* 169:5377-5381.
27. Girardi, M., D.E. Oppenheim, C.R. Steele, J.M. Lewis, E. Glusac, R. Filler, P. Hobby, B. Sutton, R.E. Tigelaar, and A.C. Hayday. 2001. Regulation of Cutaneous Malignancy by {gamma}{delta} T Cells. *Science.*
28. Pende, D., P. Rivera, S. Marcenaro, C.C. Chang, R. Biassoni, R. Conte, M. Kubin, D. Cosman, S. Ferrone, L. Moretta, and A. Moretta. 2002. Major histocompatibility complex class I-related chain A and UL16-binding protein expression on tumor cell lines of different histotypes: analysis of tumor susceptibility to NKG2D-dependent natural killer cell cytotoxicity. *Cancer Res* 62:6178-6186.
29. Lodoen, M., K. Ogasawara, J.A. Hamerman, H. Arase, J.P. Houchins, E.S. Mocarski, and L.L. Lanier. 2003. NKG2D-mediated Natural Killer Cell Protection Against Cytomegalovirus Is Impaired by Viral gp40 Modulation of Retinoic Acid Early Inducible 1 Gene Molecules. *J Exp Med* 197:1245-1253.
30. Krmpotic, A., D.H. Busch, I. Bubic, F. Gebhardt, H. Hengel, M. Hasan, A.A. Scalzo, U.H. Koszinowski, and S. Jonjic. 2002. MCMV glycoprotein gp40 confers virus resistance to CD8+ T cells and NK cells in vivo. *Nat Immunol* 3:529-535.
31. Vales-Gomez, M., H. Browne, and H.T. Reyburn. 2003. Expression of the UL16 glycoprotein of Human Cytomegalovirus protects the virus-infected cell from attack by natural killer cells. *BMC Immunol* 4:4.

32. Wu, J., N.J. Chalupny, T.J. Manley, S.R. Riddell, D. Cosman, and T. Spies. 2003. Intracellular Retention of the MHC Class I-Related Chain B Ligand of NKG2D by the Human Cytomegalovirus UL16 Glycoprotein. *J Immunol* 170:4196-4200.
33. Rolle, A., M. Mousavi-Jazi, M. Eriksson, J. Odeberg, C. Soderberg-Naucler, D. Cosman, K. Karre, and C. Cerboni. 2003. Effects of human cytomegalovirus infection on ligands for the activating NKG2D receptor of NK cells: up-regulation of UL16-binding protein (ULBP)1 and ULBP2 is counteracted by the viral UL16 protein. *J Immunol* 171:902-908.
34. Dunn, C., N.J. Chalupny, C.L. Sutherland, S. Dosch, P.V. Sivakumar, D.C. Johnson, and D. Cosman. 2003. Human cytomegalovirus glycoprotein UL16 causes intracellular sequestration of NKG2D ligands, protecting against natural killer cell cytotoxicity. *J Exp Med* 197:1427-1439.
35. Jinushi, M., T. Takehara, T. Kanto, T. Tatsumi, V. Groh, T. Spies, T. Miyagi, T. Suzuki, Y. Sasaki, and N. Hayashi. 2003. Critical Role of MHC Class I-Related Chain A and B Expression on IFN-alpha-Stimulated Dendritic Cells in NK Cell Activation: Impairment in Chronic Hepatitis C Virus Infection. *J Immunol* 170:1249-1256.
36. Tieng, V., C. Le Bouguenec, L. du Merle, P. Bertheau, P. Desreumaux, A. Janin, D. Charron, and A. Toubert. 2002. Binding of Escherichia coli adhesin AfaE to CD55 triggers cell-surface expression of the MHC class I-related molecule MICA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 99:2977-2982.
37. Das, H., V. Groh, C. Kuijl, M. Sugita, C.T. Morita, T. Spies, and J.F. Bukowski. 2001. MICA engagement by human Vgamma2Vdelta2 T cells enhances their antigen-dependent effector function. *Immunity* 15:83-93.
38. Hamerman, J.A., K. Ogasawara, and L.L. Lanier. 2004. Cutting Edge: Toll-Like Receptor Signaling in Macrophages Induces Ligands for the NKG2D Receptor. *J Immunol* 172.
39. Diefenbach, A., A.M. Jamieson, S.D. Liu, N. Shastri, and D.H. Raulet. 2000. Ligands for the murine NKG2D receptor: expression by tumor cells and activation of NK cells and macrophages. *Nature Immunology* 1:119-126.
40. Groh, V., R. Rhinehart, J. Randolph-Habecker, M.S. Topp, S.R. Riddell, and T. Spies. 2001. Costimulation of CD8alphabeta T cells by NKG2D via engagement by MIC induced on virus-infected cells. *Nat Immunol* 2:255-260.
41. Roberts, A.I., L. Lee, E. Schwarz, V. Groh, T. Spies, E.C. Ebert, and B. Jabri. 2001. Cutting edge: NKG2D receptors induced by IL-15 costimulate CD28-negative effector CTL in the tissue microenvironment. *J Immunol* 167:5527-5530.
42. Groh, V., J. Wu, C. Yee, and T. Spies. 2002. Tumour-derived soluble MIC ligands impair expression of NKG2D and T-cell activation. *Nature* 419:734-738.
43. Castriconi, R., C. Cantoni, M. Della Chiesa, M. Vitale, E. Marcenaro, R. Conte, R. Biassoni, C. Bottino, L. Moretta, and A. Moretta. 2003. Transforming growth factor beta 1 inhibits expression of NKp30 and NKG2D receptors: consequences for the NK-mediated killing of dendritic cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100:4120-4125.
44. Groh, V., A. Bruhl, H. El-Gabalawy, J.L. Nelson, and T. Spies. 2003. Stimulation of T cell autoreactivity by anomalous expression of NKG2D and its MIC ligands in rheumatoid arthritis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*.

8

SPECIFIC AND NON-SPECIFIC NATURAL KILLER CELL RESPONSES TO VIRAL INFECTION

Wayne M. Yokoyama

1. INTRODUCTION

Initially identified by their ability to kill tumor cells without prior sensitization of the host, natural killer (NK) cells are now known to provide a crucial initial defense against pathological organisms. In particular, they play a critical role during the early phases of infection (days 0 to 5) while specific immunity develops (reviewed in [1]). Recent advances, however, indicate that NK cells specifically recognize virus-infected cells in a manner akin to their recognition of tumor cells, and also respond non-specifically to viral infections.

2. NK CELL RECOGNITION OF TUMOR TARGETS

Targets expressing major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules are generally more resistant to NK cell mediated killing than targets lacking MHC class I, an observation that led to the "missing-self" hypothesis [2]. This phenomenon is now explained by NK cell inhibitory receptors, specific for MHC class I, that belong to two structural categories, killer immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIRs), and lectin-like receptors such as CD94/NKG2 heterodimers, and Ly49. The inhibitory receptors recognize major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules on the target and contain immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs (ITIMs). Upon ligand binding the ITIMs are tyrosine phosphorylated leading to recruitment and activation of phosphatases that affect signaling through activation receptors. Less is known about NK cell activation receptors and their ligands [3-5] but many are highly related to the inhibitory receptors. However, the putative activation receptors lack ITIMs and instead contain charged residues in their transmembrane domains allowing interactions with signaling molecules (FcϵRγ, CD3ζ, DAP12) containing cytoplasmic immunoreceptor

Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Rheumatology Division, Department of Medicine, Box 8045, Washington University School of Medicine and Barnes-Jewish Hospital, St. Louis, Missouri 63110.

Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation X
Edited by Gupta *et al.*, Springer, 2005

tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs). As yet, many inhibitory and activation receptors have been tentatively identified by sequence similarity and motif analysis, though most are orphan receptors because their ligands and physiologic functions are unknown. Nevertheless, NK cell-mediated killing of tumor targets is regulated by the interplay of specific inhibitory and activation receptors and their ligands.

3. NK CELL RECOGNITION OF VIRUS-INFECTED CELLS

That NK cells must use similar recognition systems to detect virus infected cells is demonstrated by the complex viral mechanisms that appear to specifically thwart NK cell activation receptors; these studies also highlight the importance of NK cells in anti-viral defense [6,7]. Several viruses have evolved multiple mechanisms to evade MHC class I-restricted cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) by specifically downregulating MHC class I expression [7]. However, according to the missing-self hypothesis, this strategy should render infected cells more sensitive to NK cell lysis. To counter this, viruses have evolved mechanisms that appear to selectively inhibit NK cells. For example, human cytomegalovirus (CMV) contains an open reading frame (ORF)(UL40) that upregulates HLA-E surface expression, a ligand for the CD94/NKG2A, a lectin-like inhibitory receptor [8,9]. Furthermore, human CMV encodes UL18, an MHC class I mimic that is not affected by HCMV mechanisms that downregulate MHC class I molecules [10], and binds LIR-1 (ILT-2), an Ig-like inhibitory receptor [11]. Binding of either the lectin-like or Ig-like receptors results in inhibition of NK cell cytotoxic activities. Thus, these viral strategies appear to block the action of NK cell activation receptors that may be specifically involved in NK cell activity against viruses.

Recent advances support the concept that NK cell activation receptors are involved in anti-viral defense. In the mouse, the NK cell activation receptor, Ly49H, is the first NK cell activation receptor to be required for resistance to a specific viral infection *in vivo* [12-14]. This is bolstered by genetic and immunological data. The selective deletion of *Ly49h* resulted in susceptibility to murine CMV (MCMV) [12,14], and accounted for the *Cmv1* genetic locus within the NK gene complex that encodes lectin-like NK cell receptors [15,16]. Gene transfer of bacterial artificial chromosomes containing Ly49h rendered resistance to otherwise susceptible mice [17]. In genetically resistant mice, such as C57BL/6, the administration of monoclonal antibodies specific for Ly49H caused susceptibility to MCMV [12,13]. Signaling through Ly49H is mediated through a physically associated ITAM-containing molecule, DAP12 (also known as KARAP) [18,19]. The activation receptor role of Ly49H in MCMV resistance was confirmed with mice expressing Ly49H with mutant DAP12 molecules containing a nonfunctional ITAM [20]. Thus, the NK cell activation receptor Ly49H is responsible for genetic resistance to MCMV infections.

The ligand for Ly49H during MCMV infection was identified to be m157 by two independent groups [21,22]. Using reporter cells expressing transfected Ly49H, both groups determined that Ly49H specifically recognized m157, a molecule encoded in the MCMV genome, and that appears to have an MHC class I-like fold. A soluble m157 protein also bound Ly49H transfectants, indicating direct binding [21]. In 129 mice, m157 appears also to be recognized by an inhibitory receptor, Ly49I [21]. Furthermore, m157 belongs to the m145 family of related molecules, one of which (m152), has immune evasion properties because it prevents host cell MHC class I expression, suggesting that m157 may possess still other potential immune evasion functions.

The identification of the Ly49H and its ligand, m157, facilitated studies of specific NK cell responses to MCMV infection. Transfection of m157 into targets resulted in Ly49H-dependent killing [21,22]. Furthermore, intracellular staining for IFNγ and lymphotactin/ATAC revealed that Ly49H+ NK cells can be selectively activated early when co-incubated *in vitro* with the m157 transfectants or with MCMV-infected macrophages [22]. In addition, triggering of Ly49H+ NK cells by m157 transfectants led to coordinate expression of other chemokines, including MIP-1α, MIP-1β, and to a lesser extent, RANTES by individual activated NK cells, suggesting that NK cells direct early host inflammatory responses [23]. Thus, the NK cell activation receptor, Ly49H, directly recognizes an MCMV encoded MHC class I-like molecule.

4. SPECIFIC AND NON-SPECIFIC NK CELL RESPONSES *IN VIVO*

Interestingly, other pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-2, IL-12, IL-15, and IL-18, also triggered the coordinate expression of the NK cell produced factors *in vitro* [23]. However, when NK cells were stimulated with cytokines, chemokine and cytokine production was not restricted to the Ly49H+ NK cell subset, indicating relatively "non-specific" (with respect to Ly49H) production. These latter findings likely reflect the non-specific stimulation of NK cells found during MCMV infection *in vivo* where IFNγ production also was not confined to the Ly49H+ NK cell subset [24]. In addition, FACS analysis of *in vivo* BrdU (bromo-deoxyuridine) incorporation [24] demonstrated that MCMV infection stimulated early (day 1 to 2 pos-infection), non-specific NK cell proliferation [25,26]. Thus, NK cells can be stimulated specifically (through Ly49H) and non-specifically (by cytokines).

These studies also demonstrated two phases of *in vivo* NK cell proliferation during MCMV infection [24]. Whereas initial NK cell proliferation was nonselective with respect to Ly49H and resembled the cytokine-driven "bystander proliferation" observed in T-cells in response to viral infections or stimulation with type I interferons [27], there followed a period of preferential proliferation of Ly49H+ NK cells peaking at days 4 to 6 of MCMV infection [24]. This phase of specific proliferation was blocked when anti-Ly49H antibody was administered suggesting that Ly49H recognition of MCMV-infected cells stimulates selective proliferation of Ly49H+ NK cells. Furthermore, the specific proliferation of Ly49H+ NK cells was virus-specific whereas the early non-specific phase was not virus-specific. Thus, there are two phases of NK cell responses to viral infection, early non-specific followed by a specific phase, and the initial specific NK cell responses may be masked by generic cytokine responses.

5. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I thank all members of my laboratory who have contributed to our understanding of NK cell responses to viral infection. Work in the Yokoyama laboratory is supported by grants from the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases and by the Barnes-Jewish Hospital Foundation and the Howard Hughes Medical Institute.

6. REFERENCES

1. Yokoyama, W. M. 2002, The role of natural killer cells in innate immunity to infection. In *Innate Immunity*, Ezekowitz, R. A. B., and J. A. Hoffman, eds. (Totowa, NJ: Humana Press), pp. 321-339.
2. Ljunggren, H. G., and K. Karre, 1990, In search of the 'missing self': MHC molecules and NK cell recognition, *Immunol. Today* **11**:237-244.
3. Lanier, L. L., 2001, On guard—activating NK cell receptors, *Nat Immunol* **2**:23-27.
4. Moretta, A., C. Bottino, M. Vitale, D. Pende, C. Cantoni, M. C. Mingari, R. Biassoni, and L. Moretta, 2001, Activating receptors and coreceptors involved in human natural killer cell-mediated cytolysis, *Annu Rev Immunol* **19**:197-223.
5. Smith, H. R., A. H. Idris, and W. M. Yokoyama, 2001, Murine natural killer cell activation receptors, *Immunol Rev* **181**:115-125.
6. Farrell, H., M. Degli-Esposti, E. Densley, E. Cretney, M. Smyth, and N. Davis-Poynter, 2000, Cytomegalovirus MHC class I homologues and natural killer cells: an overview, *Microbes & Infection* **2**:521-532.
7. Tortorella, D., B. E. Gewurz, M. H. Furman, D. J. Schust, and H. L. Ploegh, 2000, Viral subversion of the immune system, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **18**:861-926.
8. Tomasec, P., V. M. Braud, C. Rickards, M. B. Powell, B. P. McSharry, S. Gadola, V. Cerundolo, L. K. Borysiewicz, A. J. McMichael, and G. W. Wilkinson, 2000, Surface expression of HLA-E, an inhibitor of natural killer cells, enhanced by human cytomegalovirus gpUL40, *Science* **287**:1031.
9. Wang, E. C., B. McSharry, C. Retiere, P. Tomasec, S. Williams, L. K. Borysiewicz, V. M. Braud, and G. W. Wilkinson, 2002, UL40-mediated NK evasion during productive infection with human cytomegalovirus, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **99**:7570-7575.
10. Park, B., H. Oh, S. Lee, Y. Song, J. Shin, Y. C. Sung, S. Y. Hwang, and K. Ahn, 2002, The MHC class I homolog of human cytomegalovirus is resistant to down-regulation mediated by the unique short region protein (US)2, US3, US6, and US11 gene products, *J Immunol* **168**:3464-3469.
11. Cosman, D., N. Fanger, L. Borges, M. Kubin, W. Chin, L. Peterson, and M.-L. Hsu, 1997, A novel immunoglobulin superfamily receptor for cellular and viral MHC class I molecules, *Immunity* **7**:273-282.
12. Brown, M. G., A. O. Dokun, J. W. Heusel, H. R. Smith, D. L. Beckman, E. A. Blattenberger, C. E. Dubbelde, L. R. Stone, A. A. Scalzo, and W. M. Yokoyama, 2001, Vital involvement of a natural killer cell activation receptor in resistance to viral infection, *Science* **292**:934-937.
13. Daniels, K. A., G. Devora, W. C. Lai, C. L. O'Donnell, M. Bennett, and R. M. Welsh, 2001, Murine cytomegalovirus is regulated by a discrete subset of natural killer cells reactive with monoclonal antibody to ly49h, *J. Exp. Med.* **194**:29-44.
14. Lee, S. H., S. Girard, D. Macina, M. Busa, A. Zafer, A. Belouchi, P. Gros, and S. M. Vidal, 2001, Susceptibility to mouse cytomegalovirus is associated with deletion of an activating natural killer cell receptor of the C-type lectin superfamily, *Nat. Genet.* **28**:42-45.
15. Scalzo, A. A., N. A. Fitzgerald, A. Simmons, A. B. La Vista, and G. R. Shellam, 1990, Cmv-1, a genetic locus that controls murine cytomegalovirus replication in the spleen, *J. Exp. Med.* **171**:1469-1483.
16. Yokoyama, W. M., and B. F. Plougastel, 2003, Immune functions encoded by the natural killer gene complex, *Nat Rev Immunol* **3**:304-316.
17. Lee, S. H., A. Zafer, Y. de Repentigny, R. Kothary, M. L. Tremblay, P. Gros, P. Duplay, J. R. Webb, and S. M. Vidal, 2003, Transgenic expression of the activating natural killer receptor Ly49H confers resistance to cytomegalovirus in genetically susceptible mice, *J Exp Med* **197**:515-526.
18. Bakker, A. B., R. M. Hoek, A. Cerwenka, B. Blom, L. Lucian, T. McNeil, R. Murray, L. H. Phillips, J. D. Sedgwick, and L. L. Lanier, 2000, DAP12-deficient mice fail to develop autoimmunity due to impaired antigen priming, *Immunity* **13**:345-353.
19. Smith, K. M., J. Wu, A. B. Bakker, J. H. Phillips, and L. L. Lanier, 1998, Cutting edge: Ly-49D and Ly-49H associate with mouse DAP12 and form activating receptors, *J. Immunol.* **161**:7-10.
20. Sjolin, H., E. Tomasello, M. Mousavi-Jazi, A. Bartolazzi, K. Karre, E. Vivier, and C. Cerboni, 2002, Pivotal role of KARAP/DAP12 adaptor molecule in the natural killer cell-mediated resistance to murine cytomegalovirus infection, *J Exp Med* **195**:825-834.
21. Arase, H., E. S. Mocarski, A. E. Campbell, A. B. Hill, and L. L. Lanier, 2002, Direct recognition of cytomegalovirus by activating and inhibitory NK cell receptors, *Science* **296**:1323-1326.
22. Smith, H. R., J. W. Heusel, I. K. Mehta, S. Kim, B. G. Dorner, O. V. Naidenko, K. Iizuka, H. Furukawa, D. L. Beckman, J. T. Pingel, et al., 2002, Recognition of a virus-encoded ligand by a natural killer cell activation receptor, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **99**:8826-8831.
23. Dorner, B. G., H. R. C. Smith, A. R. French, S. Kim, J. Poursine-Laurent, D. L. Beckman, J. T. Pingel, R. A. Kroczek, and W. M. Yokoyama, 2004, Coordinate expression of cytokines and chemokines by natural killer cells during murine cytomegalovirus infection, *J. Immunol.* **in press**.

24. Dokun, A. O., S. Kim, H. R. Smith, H. S. Kang, D. T. Chu, and W. M. Yokoyama, 2001, Specific and nonspecific NK cell activation during virus infection, *Nature Immunol* **2**:951-956.
25. Biron, C. A., G. Sonnenfeld, and R. M. Welsh, 1984, Interferon induces natural killer cell blastogenesis in vivo, *J. Leukoc. Biol.* **35**:31-37.
26. Orange, J. S., and C. A. Biron, 1996, Characterization of early IL-12, IFN-alphabeta, and TNF effects on antiviral state and NK cell responses during murine cytomegalovirus infection, *J. Immunol.* **156**:4746-4756.
27. Tough, D. F., P. Borrow, and J. Sprent, 1996, Induction of bystander T cell proliferation by viruses and type I interferon in vivo, *Science* **272**:1947-1950.

9

ANTIGEN PROCESSING AND PRESENTATION BY DENDRITIC CELLS: CELL BIOLOGICAL MECHANISMS

Ira Mellman

1. INTRODUCTION

Dendritic cells (Dcs) are now widely understood to be perhaps the most efficient and critical of all antigen presenting cells. They are primarily responsible for acting as sentinels that detect and internalize foreign antigen in peripheral tissues and then conveying the antigen to lymphoid organs for presentation to T cells. Although B cells also exhibit an exquisite capacity for antigen presentation, they efficiently present only the single antigen recognized by the B cell receptor. DCs, on the other hand, can present a seemingly limitless array of complex protein, carbohydrate, and lipid antigens, and do so even if provided with only minute quantities. Moreover, DCs have a marked capacity to stimulate even immunologically naive T cells, and as such are increasingly thought to play a unique role in the initiation of all antigen-specific immune responses [1].

Interestingly, the role of DCs in initiating immunity appears to be balanced by their ability to maintain peripheral tolerance to self antigens [2]. Being that they are endowed with such a marked capacity for T cell stimulation, this is probably a good thing as DCs can, indeed, present self antigens quite effectively. In fact, DCs help control the quality of the immune response. In addition to being able to drive T cells toward tolerance or immunity, they can also determine whether immunostimulatory T cells differentiate into the various known subsets (eg Th1, Th2, or regulatory T cells) at the time of initial stimulation.

How DCs accomplish this wide array of activities is obviously a critical problem for immunologists. However, it is also emerging as a problem of equivalent interest to cell biologists since in the end, each of the specializations exhibited by these cells must reflect an underlying cell biological specialization. That has indeed proved to be the case,

Departments of Cell Biology and Immunobiology, Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research, Yale University School of Medicine, 333 Cedar Street, PO Box 208002, New Haven, Connecticut 06520-8002; phone 203-785-4303; telefax 203-785-4301; e-mail: ira.mellman@yale.edu.

with the past several years having witnessed great progress in understanding the cell biological basis for DC function. To a large extent, this progress has reflected a fundamental and fascinating feature of DC biology, namely that nearly all of the cell's most important activities are controlled by a process of terminal differentiation called "maturation" [3]. Much in the same way that conditional mutants of yeast have aided the study of basic cell biological mechanisms, the ability to control the function and organization of DCs by controlling maturation has enabled us to identify and dissect a number important insights into how the DC accomplishes its various activities. Several new or unanticipated principles of cell biology have been uncovered by studying activities which, in other cells, would not have been expected to occur. Most pleasingly, uncovering this information has also allowed us to place fundamental cell biology in single cells in the context of a larger biological problem, namely the immune response. One can argue that this "bottom-up" approach, in which the classical strategies of reductionist cell biology are used to collect information that systematically builds a new understanding of the immune system, is "systems biology" in its purest or at least most immediately useful form.

2. FEATURES OF DC MATURATION

DC maturation must be viewed simultaneously in two ways: changes in phenotype and changes in function. Functionally, the transition from immature to mature DCs denotes a number of fundamental alterations. Immature DCs, generally the form found in peripheral tissues, are actively endocytic and thus well suited for antigen accumulation. They are less well suited, however, to antigen processing and presentation. That is the major functional attribute of mature DCs, often the DC type found in lymphoid organs. Mature DCs cannot internalize macromolecules or particles efficiently but do express high levels of MHC molecules, peptide-MHC, and costimulatory molecules. They are also highly motile and can track down and grab T cells in the hope of finding ones they can stimulate. This functional mature state, however, is far more complex than this simple description would suggest. Since DCs control the quality of the immune response, inducing naive T cells to Th1, Th2, T_{reg} etc. phenotypes, there must be important differences in the features among different "mature" DCs. Even more striking is the fact that DCs also appear to induce or maintain peripheral T cell tolerance, meaning that yet another functionally distinct phenotype is likely to exist.

The key is probably held by the factors that induce maturation. A wide array of such maturational stimuli are now known, perhaps the most popular of which are the ligands for Toll-like receptors (TLRs). However, these represent only a small fraction of the total number of possible inducers, with various inflammatory and non-inflammatory stimuli also clearly being potent maturation signals. Little is know yet regarding how these different stimuli transduce functionally different states of maturity is not known and represents one of the major challenges facing DC biology.

To a first approximation, however, the phenotypic or organizational features of immature vs. mature DCs are the same, regardless of functional attribute. Since cell biologists always attempt to take complex problems and seek simple solutions, it is this aspect of the problem to which our laboratory has devoted most of its effort. Hopefully, our attempts will not emerge, to paraphrase H.L. Mencken, as an attempt to provide simple solutions to complex problems, almost all of them wrong. Our interim studies, indeed, do appear to have generated some interesting information.

3. PHENOTYPIC MATURATION OF DCs

Immature DCs, whether differentiated in culture or taken from peripheral tissues, have a distinctive organization. The express high levels of MHC class II molecules, but they are largely concentrated intracellularly in lysosomal compartments reflecting the targeting of newly synthesized molecules to lysosomes rather than the plasma membrane [4]. Internalized antigen is also delivered to these compartments, yet it is used at best inefficiently for the formation of peptide-MHC class II complexes [5,6]. Upon receiving a maturation signal, endocytosis in these cells is rapidly down regulated (in <30 min) [7] and newly synthesized MHC class II is now transported from the Golgi complex to the cell surface [4,9]. Most importantly, even previously internalized antigen can now be mobilized for the formation of peptide-MHC class II complexes [5,6,9]. With time (~15 hr), the cells now translocate their intracellular MHC class II to the surface, which also extends numerous processes creating the canonical mature DC phenotype [4]. Transport from lysosomes to the plasma membrane has been imaged by live cell microscopy (using GFP-tagged MHC class II molecules) and involves the activation of a novel "retrograde" pathway from late endocytic structures to the surface. This involves the formation of tubular carriers (0.5-3 μm in length) that emanate from lysosomes and ultimately fuse with the plasma membrane, as detected by total internal reflectance microscopy [10].

In the end, the surface of the mature DC is exceedingly rich in MHC class II molecules and important co-stimulatory molecules (upregulated largely at the transcriptional level) that are needed for efficient T cell priming. The changes together comprise one of the most dramatic and beautiful re-organizations in all of cell biology.

4. MECHANISMS OF DC MATURATION

In seeking to understand these alterations, we have concentrated on changes that occur within endocytic compartments. While many details remain uncertain, a coherent picture is beginning to emerge.

To summarize our current concepts briefly, it would appear that maturation is linked to an overall activation of endosomal-lysosomal proteolytic capacity. We first found that lysosomes in immature DCs were rich in the anti-protease peptide cystatin C. A potent inhibitor of the cysteine protease cathepsin S (cat S), we obtained evidence that cystatin C attenuated the rate and efficiency of invariant chain processing, leading to the lysosomal targeting of $\alpha\beta$ dimers, much in the same way that pharmacologic anti-proteases such as leupeptin have been known to do for years if added to various MHC class II-positive cells [8]. Upon maturation, intracellular levels of cystatin C decrease, cat S is activating, invariant chain is more efficiently processed, and $\alpha\beta$ dimers are freed at the level of endosomes for delivery to the cell surface as opposed to transport to lysosomes (via the lysosomal targeting signal found in the invariant chain cytoplasmic tail).

More impressively, however, is the overall regulation of proteolytic activity. Antigen internalized by immature DCs is poorly degraded unless the cells receive a maturation stimulus [9]. The explanation for this phenomenon, however, does not lie with the obvious. Immature and mature DCs possess the same quantities of lysosomal enzymes and, moreover, these hydrolases are equivalently localized to MHC class II/antigen-containing lysosomal elements in both cases. *In vitro*, lysosomal extracts of immature and mature DCs degrade protein substrates with comparable abilities. What has changed? The

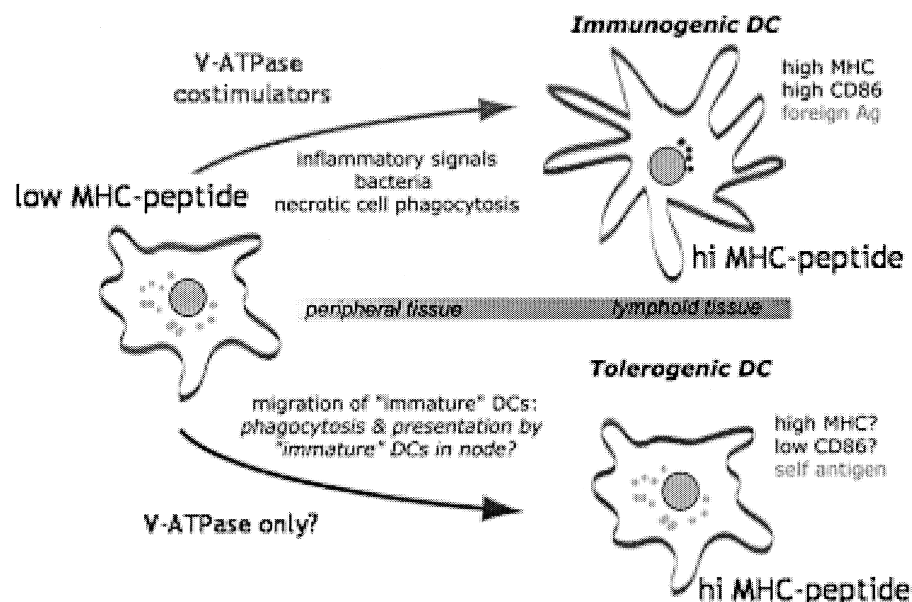


Figure 1. Immature DCs as vehicles for self antigen: induction of tolerance.

answer came from assays of lysosomal pH. Normally, lysosomes achieve an internal pH of ~4.5, conditions which are optimal for the activity of most lysosomal hydrolases. Although this pH value is found in mature DCs, immature DCs have an internal pH of about 1 unit higher: an alteration found (based on *in vitro* assays) to greatly slow the degradation of authentic protein substrates [9].

We have also explored how lysosomal pH is regulated in maturing DCs. Like other cells, lysosomes in DCs acidify due to the activity of an ATP-driven protein pump, the "vacuolar ATPase" (V-ATPase). An F1-F0-like enzyme, the V-ATPase consists of two subcomplexes: V1, which is a multiprotein complex consisting of soluble cytosolic proteins including the ATPase's catalytic subunit; and V0, a multiprotein complex consisting of integral membrane proteins, including the proton pore or proteolipid. In immature DCs, the V1 sector is largely cytosolic; in mature DCs, it is almost entirely membrane-bound, indicative of assembled and active V-ATPase. Consequently, it would appear then that DC maturation regulates lysosomal acidification by controlling the post-translational assembly of the V-ATPase. This, in turn, would be expected to regulate proteolytic activity, antigen processing, and thus peptide loading onto MHC class II molecules. Since our results also indicate that DCs are likely to have levels of lysosomal enzymes that are limiting in concentration, this would provide an effective means to regulate the function of these essential organelles.

How V-ATPase assembly is regulated is currently under intense investigation since the solution to this problem may itself provide some important clues as to the role of DCs in controlling immunity vs. tolerance. For example, if a given maturation signal exists that is able to activate the V-ATPase selectively — ie, without activating the transcription of costimulatory molecules — one would generate a mature DC that can efficiently generate peptide-MHC class II complexes in the absence of associated signals required to generate immunogenic T cells. Such DCs might well be "toleragenic" (Figure 1). As attractive an idea as this appears, one must also realize that the problem of tolerance is perhaps among the most complex in all of immunology. Whether that means it will or will not have a simple solution, even just at the level of DC biology, is a prediction best left to the likes of H.L. Mencken, as suggested above.

5. REFERENCES

1. Banchereau, J. and R. M. Steinman (1998). "Dendritic cells and the control of immunity." *Nature* **392**(6673): 245-52.
2. Steinman, R. M., S. Turley, et al. (2000). "The induction of tolerance by dendritic cells that have captured apoptotic cells." *J Exp Med* **191**: 411-416.
3. Mellman, I. and R. M. Steinman (2001). "Dendritic cells: specialized and regulated antigen processing machines." *Cell* **106**(3): 255-8.
4. Pierre, P., S. J. Turley, et al. (1997). "Developmental regulation of MHC class II transport in mouse dendritic cells." *Nature* **388**(6644): 787-92.
5. Inaba, K., S. Turley, et al. (2000). "The formation of immunogenic major histocompatibility complex class II-peptide ligands in lysosomal compartments of dendritic cells is regulated by inflammatory stimuli." *J. Exp. Med.* **191**: 927-36.
6. Turley, S. J., K. Inaba, et al. (2000). "Transport of peptide-MHC class II complexes in developing dendritic cells." *Science* **288**: 522-7.
7. Garrett, W. S., L. M. Chen, et al. (2000). "Developmental control of endocytosis in dendritic cells by Cdc42." *Cell* **102**: 325-34.
8. Pierre, P. and I. Mellman (1998). "Developmental regulation of invariant chain proteolysis controls MHC class II trafficking in mouse dendritic cells." *Cell* **93**(7): 1135-45.
9. Trombetta, S., M. Ebersold, et al. (2003). "Activation of lysosomal function during dendritic cell maturation." *Science* **299**: 1400-03.
10. Chow, A., D. Toomre, et al. (2002). "Dendritic cell maturation triggers retrograde MHC class II transport from lysosomes to the plasma membrane." *Nature* **418**(6901): 988-94.

10

HUMAN THYMIC STROMAL LYMPHOPOIETIN TRIGGERS DENDRITIC CELL-MEDIATED ALLERGIC INFLAMMATION AND CD4+ T CELL HOMEOSTATIC EXPANSION

Norihiko Watanabe, Vassili Soumelis, and Yong-Jun Liu*

1. INTRODUCTION

Thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) is a novel interleukin (IL)-7-like cytokine [1]. The functional receptor for TSLP is a heterodimer consisting of the IL-7Rα chain and a common γ chain-like receptor called TSLP receptor (TSLPR) [1,2]. In humans, IL-7Rα chain and TSLPR mRNA are coexpressed on CD11c+ immature myeloid dendritic cells (DCs), but not in other cell types [2]. Because human TSLP activates peripheral blood CD11c+ immature DCs, we investigated how TSLP-activated DCs (TSLP-DCs) regulate human naive CD4+ T cell activation and differentiation [3,4].

2. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

2.1. Human TSLP Triggers DC-Mediated Allergic Inflammation

To examine how TSLP-DCs regulate CD4+ T cell activation, we cultured adult peripheral blood CD11c+ immature DCs isolated by cell sorting, for 24 h with various stimuli, and cocultured these DCs for 6 days with allogeneic naive CD4+ T cells. We found that TSLP-DCs induced much greater naive, CD4+ T cell proliferation in an allogeneic mixed-lymphocyte reaction than did CD40 ligand-activated DCs (CD40L-DCs), lipopolysaccharide-activated DCs (LPS-DCs), or IL-7-activated DCs (IL-7-DCs) (Fig. 1A). At a ratio of 1 DC per 150 T cells, the naive CD4+ T cell proliferation induced

*Department of Immunology, M.D. Anderson Cancer Center, University of Texas, Houston, Texas, 77030. Present address: Department of Hematology and Bone Marrow Transplantation, Necker Hospital, Paris, France 75015 (V.S.).

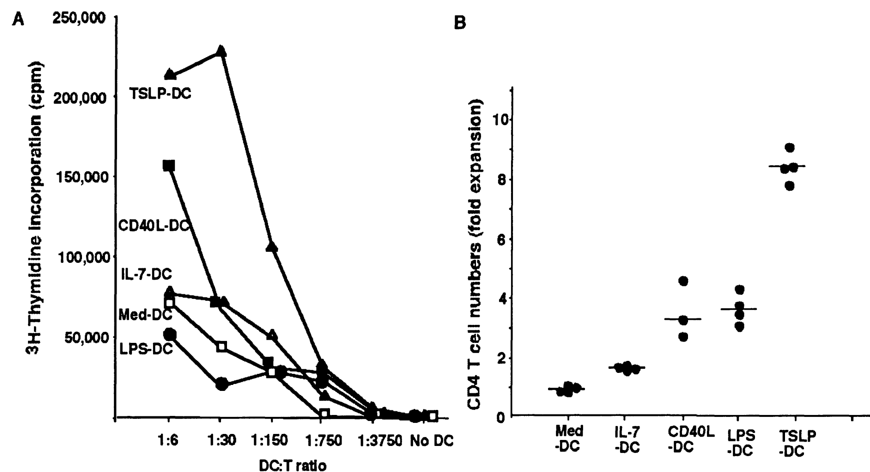


Figure 1. Human TSLP-activated DCs induce pronounced proliferation and expansion of allogeneic naive CD4+ T cells. (A) TSLP-DCs induced the greatest CD4+ T cell proliferation after 5 days of coculture, as assessed by [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation, both at high (1:6) and low (1:150) DC:T-cell ratios. (B) TSLP-DCs induced the highest CD4+ T cell expansion after 6 days of coculture. Results are expressed as the fold expansion compared with the initial T cell number. Results shown are from five independent experiments. Horizontal bars indicate the median.

by TSLP-DCs was about three times greater than that induced by CD40L-DCs (Fig. 1A). After 6 days of culture, TSLP-DCs induced a 7.5- to 9-fold increase in the total T cell numbers, which was more than that induced by CD40L-DCs, LPS-DCs, or IL-7-DCs (Fig. 1B).

Next, we compared the capacity of TSLP-DCs to polarize naive CD4+ T cells to that of DCs cultured with medium, IL-7, CD40L or LPS. Naive CD4+ T cells were cultured with DCs at a 1:5 ratio for 6 days; they were then washed to remove all cytokines, restimulated for 24 h with anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 and then cytokine production was measured in the culture supernatant by ELISA. TSLP-DCs induced naive CD4+ T cells to produce large amounts of IL-13, IL-5 and TNF and a moderate amount of IL-4 (Fig. 2). Compared to DCs cultured with medium alone or other activators, TSLP-DCs induced naive CD4+ T cells to produce the lowest amounts of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 and the TH1 cytokine interferon (IFN)-γ. Therefore, TSLP-DCs induced naive CD4+ T cells to produce a unique set of cytokines that was distinct from a TH1 profile (IFN-γ) or a classical TH2 profile (IL-4, IL-5 and IL-10). TSLP-DCs may induce robust TH2 allergic inflammation by inducing naive CD4 T cells to produce large amounts of IL-13 and IL-5 and a moderate amount of IL-4 in the presence of TNF and in the absence of two physiologic inhibitors of TH2 inflammation, IL-10 and IFN-γ.

To investigate whether TSLP expression is associated with TH2-type allergic inflammation *in vivo*, TSLP protein expression in skin lesion of atopic dermatitis patients was analyzed by TSLP specific mAb 12F3. Although TSLP was undetectable in normal skin [3], high expression of TSLP was found in the keratinocytes of skin lesion of atopic dermatitis patients (Fig. 3A). In addition, strong TSLP expression in atopic dermatitis

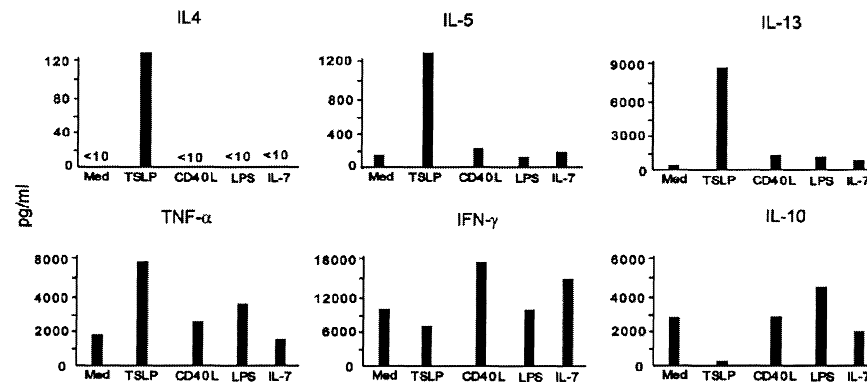


Figure 2. TSLP-DCs induce TH2 responses. TSLP-DCs prime CD4+ T cells to produce the highest amounts of IL-4, IL-5, IL-13, and TNF but lower amounts of IFN-γ and IL-10, compared with medium-activated DCs, CD40L-DCs, LPS-DCs, or IL-7-DCs. Data represent one of six independent experiments.

was associated with the concurrent appearance of many DC–lysosome-associated membrane protein (DC-LAMP, DC-associated activation marker)+ activated DCs within the dermis (Fig. 3A).

We also found that hTSLP was expressed by epithelial cells of the thymus and tonsils under normal physiological conditions. TSLP was found to be expressed by crypt epithelial cells of all human tonsils tested, regardless of age, degree of inflammation, or allergic history (Fig. 3B). In addition, TSLP was found to be expressed by epithelial cells of Hassal's corpuscules in the medulla of fetal and newborn thymus (Fig. 3C). TSLP expression was associated with the presence of many DC-LAMP+ DCs in the T cell-rich areas of human tonsils, and in the thymic medullar (Fig. 3B and 3C). These results suggest that hTSLP has normal regulatory roles on a process unrelated to allergic inflammation.

2.2. Human TSLP Promotes DC-Mediated CD4 T Cell Homeostatic Expansion

T cell homeostasis is a self-regulating process for maintaining the size of the peripheral T cell pool, which is critical for the adaptive immune system to respond to a variety of new pathogens and for maintaining immunological memory to previously encountered pathogens [5]. T cell homeostasis also contributes to the recovery of the peripheral T cell pool after T cell depletion caused by irradiation or viral infection. T cell homeostasis is maintained by T cell survival and homeostatic proliferation, triggered by self peptide-MHC ligands and cytokines, such as IL-7 and IL-15 [5]. Although DCs appear to play an important role in T cell homeostasis, the molecular regulation of DC-mediated T cell homeostasis is unknown.

To investigate whether TSLP promotes DC-mediated CD4+ T cell homeostatic proliferation, we used an autologous DC and CD4+ T cell coculture system. CD11c+ DCs purified from adult peripheral blood were cultured with various stimuli and then co-

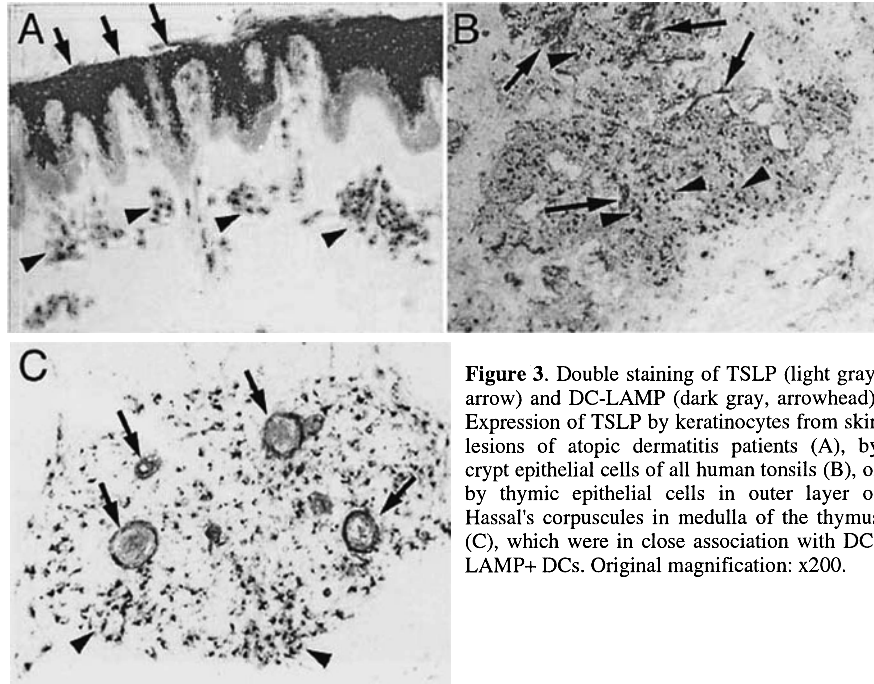


Figure 3. Double staining of TSLP (light gray, arrow) and DC-LAMP (dark gray, arrowhead). Expression of TSLP by keratinocytes from skin lesions of atopic dermatitis patients (A), by crypt epithelial cells of all human tonsils (B), or by thymic epithelial cells in outer layer of Hassal's corpuscules in medulla of the thymus (C), which were in close association with DC-LAMP+ DCs. Original magnification: x200.

cultured with autologous naive CD4+ T cells without any additional cytokines or fetal bovine serum. After 7 days of culture, TSLP-DCs induced strong proliferation of autologous naive CD4+ T cells, whereas IL-7–DCs, LPS-DCs, poly(I:C)-activated DCs, CD40L-DCs or DCs cultured with medium (Med-DCs) had only marginal effects on the proliferation of autologous naive CD4+ T cells (Fig. 4A). In addition, neither TSLP-DCs alone nor naive CD4+ T cells with TSLP alone proliferated. TSLP-DCs can induce strong allogeneic naive CD4+ T cell proliferation even at a very low DC:T cell ratios (Fig. 1A). However, TSLP-DCs induced a marked proliferation of autologous naive CD4+ T cells only at a high DC: T cell ratio (e.g. 1 DC per 2 T cells), but not at DC:T cell ratio below 1:3 (Fig. 4A). This is consistent with a previous report that T cell homeostatic proliferation in mice requires a high DC: T cell ratio [6].

After 7 days of culture, TSLP-DCs induced more than a 5-fold increase in total autologous CD4+ T cell numbers, which was greater than that induced by DCs activated by other stimuli (Fig. 4B). In addition, CD4+ T cell expansion induced by TSLP-DCs was sustained for at least 15 days after the onset of the coculture and resulted in more than a 10-fold increase in the total T cell numbers (Fig. 4B). In contrast, CD40L-DCs induced a marginal CD4+ T cell expansion at day 7, which was not sustained thereafter. Thus, TSLP-DCs induced a robust and long-lasting expansion of autologous naive CD4+ T cells at a high DC: T cell ratio.

Homeostatic proliferation of naive T cells results in polyclonal expansion, relevant to the positive selection of early immature T cells by self peptide-MHC complexes within the thymus [5]. If the proliferation of autologous naive CD4+ T cells induced by TSLP-DCs was homeostatic, the expanded T cells should exhibit polyclonal TCR V_β usage

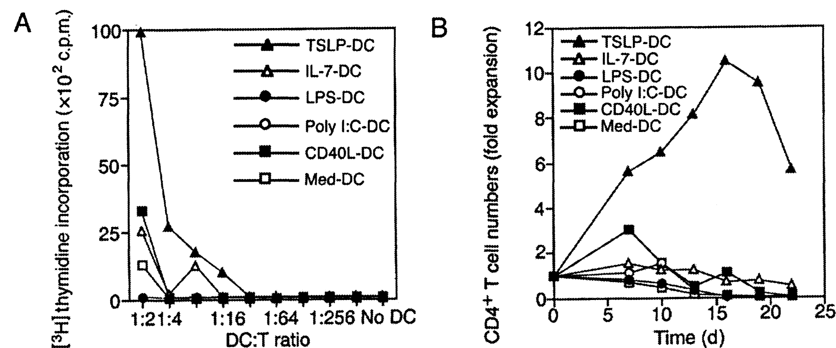


Figure 4. TSLP-DCs induce autologous naive CD4+ T cell proliferation and long-lasting expansion. (**A**) Naive CD4+ T cell proliferation after 7 days of culture with autologous DCs activated by indicated activators at various DC:T cell ratios. Proliferations were assessed by [3H]thymidine incorporation. (**B**) Naive CD4+ T cell expansion during the 22 days of culture with indicated autologous DCs at a 1:2 DC:T ratio. Data represent one of five independent experiments.

equivalent to naive CD4+ T cells before culture. Thus, we used flow cytometry to examine the TCR V_β usage of naive CD4+ T cells before and after 7 days of culture. Following culture, TSLP-DCs expanded autologous naive CD4+ T cells 5 times and these CD4+ T cells showed broad TCR V_β usage, similar to that of naive CD4+ T cells before culture, or following culture with IL-7 (Fig. 5). Stimulation of naive CD4+ T cells with autologous TSLP-DCs pulsed with the bacterial superantigen, staphylococcal enterotoxin B (SEB), greatly increased the frequency of $V_\beta3$+ cells and $V_\beta11$+ cells, as expected [7]. Taken together, these results suggest that autologous naive CD4+ T cell proliferation by TSLP-DCs represents homeostatic polyclonal proliferation and most likely requires the engagement of TCR with self peptide-MHC complexes.

When naive T cells are transferred into T cell-depleted rodents, peripheral T cells acquire a memory phenotype during homeostatic proliferation[5]. To determine the cell-surface surface markers characteristic of CD4+ T cells expanded by autologous TSLP-DCs, we used flow cytometry to analyze naive CD4+ T cells before culture and after culture for 10 days under several conditions. After the isolation, naive CD4+ T cells decreased their CD62L expression possibly due to the effect of cell isolation processes (Fig. 6A). Naive CD4+ T cells cultured with IL-7 for 10 days exhibited high CD62L expression, maintaining CD45RA+CD45RO+CD25-CD62L+CCR7+ naive CD4+ T cell phenotype [8]. Autologous TSLP-DC-expanded CD4 T cells downregulated CD45RA and upregulated CD45RO, acquiring a CD45RA-CD45RO+CD25lowCD62L+CCR7+, central memory T cell phenotype [8]. In contrast, stimulation of naive CD4+ T cells with autologous TSLP-DCs pulsed with the superantigen SEB markedly enhanced CD25 and a tissue-specific homing receptor, cutaneous lymphocyte antigen (CLA), but exhibited a slight reduction on expression of the homing receptor to secondary lymphoid organs, CD62L. In addition, the stimulation of naive CD4+ T cells with allogeneic Med-DCs plus IL-12 and anti-IL-4 (T_H1 polarizing condition) enhanced CD62L downregulation even more and decreased CCR7 expression. Thus, autologous TSLP-DCs without foreign antigens induce a central memory phenotype of expanded CD4+ T cells, whereas interactions with foreign antigens may change the central memory T cell phenotype to that of effector cells.

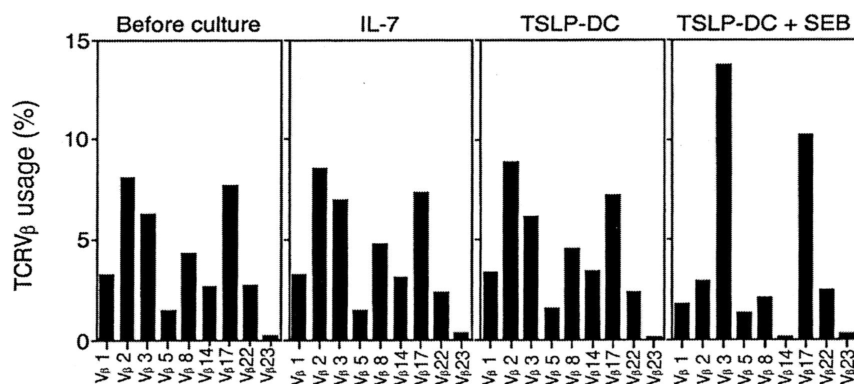


Figure 5. TSLP-DCs induced polyclonal expansion of autologous naive CD4+ T cells. TCR V_β usage of naive CD4+ T cells before and after culture with IL-7 or autologous TSLP-DCs pulsed with or without SEB for 7 days was assessed by flow cytometry. Closed bars represent the percentage of cells with indicated TCR V_β within the CD4+ T cell population.

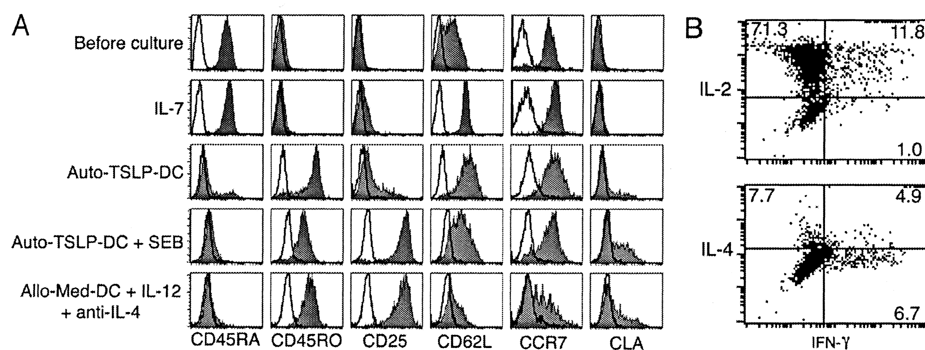


Figure 6. (A) Cell-surface markers characteristic of CD4+ T cells expanded by autologous TSLP-DCs. Naive CD4+ T cells cultured for 10 days with IL-7, autologous TSLP-DCs with or without SEB, or allogeneic medium-DCs with IL-12 and anti-IL-4, TH1 polarizing condition. Cell-surface marker phenotypes were determined by flow cytometry. Data shown are phenotypes of CD4+ T cells. (B) Cytokine-producing capacity of CD4+ T cells expanded by autologous TSLP-DCs. Naive CD4+ T cells cultured for 7 days with autologous TSLP-DCs were restimulated with phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate + ionomycin for analysis by intracelluar cytokine staining.

Because central memory CD4+ T cells lack immediate effector functions, such as the ability to produce TH1 or TH2 cytokines [8], we examined the cytokine-producing capacity of CD4+ T cells expanded by autologous TSLP-DCs. Naive CD4+ T cells were cultured with DCs for 7 days; they were then washed to remove all cytokines and restimulated with phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate and ionomycin. Naive CD4+ T cells cultured with autologous TSLP-DCs produced a large amount of IL-2, but not IL-4, or IFN-γ, indicating that expanded CD4+ T cells by autologous TSLP-DCs have the cytokine production profile of central memory T cells.

In conclusion, we demonstrated biological and pathophysiological functions of human TSLP-activated DCs. Human TSLP-DCs strongly induce allogeneic naive CD4+ T cell proliferation and expansion. Primed allogeneic CD4+ T cells produce pro-allergic cytokines such as IL-4, IL-5, IL-13 and proinflammatory cytokine, TNF. This, together with the finding of high TSLP expression by keratinocytes from skin lesions of atopic dermatitis patients, suggest that human TSLP plays a critical role in initiation of allergic inflammations. In addition, TSLP-DCs also induced a robust expansion of autologous naive CD4+ T cells. The proliferating T cells adopted and maintained a central memorypolyclonal phenotype. These, together with findings of TSLP expression in epithelial cells of mucosal lymphoid tissues and thymus, suggest that TSLP plays a role in DC-mediated CD4+ T cell homeostasis.

3. REFERENCES

1. W. J. Leonard, TSLP: finally in the limelight. *Nature Immunol.* **3** (7), 605-607 (2002).
2. P. A. Reche, V. Soumelis, D. M. Gorman, T. Clifford, M. Liu, M. Travis, S. M. Zurawski, J. Johnston, Y.-J. Liu, H. Spits, R. de Waal Malefyt, R. A. Kastelein, and J. F. Bazan, Human thymic stromal lymphopoietin preferentially stimulates myeloid cells. *J. Immunol.* **167**(1), 336-343 (2001).
3. V. Soumelis, P. A. Reche, H. Kanzler, W.Yuan, G. Edward, B. Homey, M. Gilliet, S. Ho, S. Antonenko, A. Lauerma, K. Smith, D. Gorman, S. Zurawski, J. Abrams, S. Menon, T. McClanahan, R. de Waal Malefyt, R. A. Kastelein, J. F. Bazan and Y.-J. Liu, Human epithelial cells trigger dendritic cell-mediated allergic inflammation by producing TSLP. *Nature Immunol.* **3** (7), 673-680 (2002).
4. N. Watanabe, S. Hanabuchi, V. Soumelis, W. Yuan, S. Ho, R. de Waal Malefyt and Y.-J. Liu, Human thymic stromal lymphopoietin promotes dendritic cell-mediated CD4+ T cell homeostatic expansion. *Nature Immunol.* Advance online publication, 29 Feb. 2004 (doi:10.1038/ni1048).
5. S. C. Jameson, Maintaining the norm: T-cell homeostasis. *Nature Rev. Immunol.* **2** (8), 547-556 (2002).
6. Q. Ge, D. Palliser, H. N. Eisen, and J. Chen, Homeostatic T cell proliferation in a T cell-dendritic cell coculture system. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **99** (5), 2983–2988 (2002).
7. P. Marrack, and J. kappler, The staphylococcal enterotoxins and their relatives. *Science* **248** (4961), 705–711 (1990).
8. F. Sallusto, D. Lenig, R. Forster, M. Lipp, and A. lanzavecchia, Two subsets of memory T lymphocytes with distinct homing potentials and effector functions. *Nature* **401**, 708–712 (1999).

11

ROLE OF TRAF6 IN THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

Yongwon Choi

1. INTRODUCTION

TRAF6 is a member of the TNF receptor associated factor (TRAF) family, members of which are important for signaling induced by a variety of the TNF receptor family members. TRAF6 was initially identified as a signaling adapter for CD40, but has subsequently been shown to be a critical factor for the interleukin-1 receptor/Toll-like receptor (IL-1R/TLR) family. Therefore, TRAF6 represents a central point of convergence for the signal transduction by the TNFR and the IL-1R/TLR superfamilies, and thus plays a critical role in the regulation of innate immune responses. Considering the importance of the TNFR and IL-R/TLR family members to the regulation of the innate immune system, the extent to which TRAF6 regulates the physiology of innate immunity, as well as the connection between the innate and adaptive immune responses, is of great interest. Here we have described the potential role of TRAF6 in regulating dendritic cell fates.

2. THE TNFR AND IL-R/TLR FAMILY

TNF and TNF receptor (TNFR) superfamily members both subserve and govern diverse cellular events during development, and following infectious insult or immunologic challenge [1,2]. Such varied outcomes arise from the selective activation of different signal transduction pathways: the caspase cascade, the NF-κB family of transcription factors, the mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs), including both the c-Jun N-terminal protein kinase (JNK) and p38 subsets, and Src family PTKs [2]. Caspases are responsible for the proteolytic events leading to apoptosis [3] whereas NF-κB inhibits cell death in many different cell types [4,5]. The JNK and p38 kinases contribute to AP-1 activation which regulate growth signals or induce cytokines [6,7]. Once coordinately

Abramson Family Cancer Research Institute, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA19010.

activated, these convergent signals may then regulate cell proliferation, differentiation or death [2].

It is believed that discrete signaling functions are initiated by recruiting different types of intracellular signal transducers to the TNFR superfamily complexes. Thus far, two major classes of signal transducers have been identified. The first is characterized by a conserved death domain which enables interaction with TNFR1, Fas(CD95), or TRAIL receptors [2,8-10].

A second class of signal transducing molecules that orchestrate the functions of the TNFR superfamily members encompass the TRAF proteins, which interact with the receptors TNFR2, CD40, CD30, 4-1BB or LT-βR, among others [2,11-14]. TRAF proteins interact with the cytoplasmic tails of the TNFR superfamily members and serve as adapter proteins to recruit downstream signal transducers like NIK and IKKs, which are responsible for the activation of NF-κB [2,5,15-17]. To date, six *bona fide* members of the TRAF family have been isolated [2]. None exhibit enzymatic activity, suggesting they operate solely as signal adapters. All contain a conserved C-terminal TRAF domain that is used for either homo- or hetero-oligomerization within the TRAF family and for interactions with the cytoplasmic regions of the TNFR superfamily [2,18]. In addition to the TRAF domain, most of the TRAF proteins contain an N-terminal RING finger, as well as several zinc finger structures which appear critical for their effector functions [2]. The *in vivo* roles of TRAF proteins are also emerging through the use of transgenic or knockout mice[2]. For example, TRAF2 provides anti-apoptotic signals during TNF-α-induced apoptosis[2,19,20]. TRAF1 appears to be a negative regulator of TNFR signaling during T cell activation[21]. Lack of TRAF3 results in defective T-dependent immune responses [22]. In addition, TRAF6 is required for osteoclast development and peripheral lymph node genesis [23,24].

An important role of the TNF family in DC biology has also emerged [25,26]. DCs have several special features that lead to the stimulation of naive T cells and play a role in the initiation of the immune response or tolerance[25,26]. Immature DCs, located in most potential sites of antigen entry, capture antigens and process them. Upon contact with antigens, DCs migrate to lymphoid organs where they encounter antigen-specific T cells. During this migration, DCs become fully mature and express high levels of various accessory molecules, including lymphocyte function antigens (LFA), intercellular adhesion molecules (ICAM) and costimulatory molecules CD80, CD86 and CD40[25-27]. Expression of these molecules allows DCs to be very potent antigen-presenting cells (APCs), capable of efficiently activating naive T cells. The small number of DCs required to present various antigens, including transplantation antigens, superantigens, and conventional protein antigens, provides evidence of the potency of DCs as APCs. For example, it was shown that one DC per 100-3000 naive T cells leads to an efficient mixed lymphocyte reaction (MLR) including proliferation, lymphokine production and the development of CTLs [25-27]. In addition, DCs have also been implicated as a major cell type responsible for T cell tolerance [25-27].

Some TNF family members regulate the differentiation, function and survival of DCs. For example, TNF-α and CD40L are molecules involved in the differentiation of DCs from CD34+ bone marrow or cord blood progenitors [25-30]. Moreover, TNF family members can regulate the T cell-DC dialogue via DCs responses to T cells using TNFR superfamily members [31-35]. For example, CD40L expressed by activated and memory T cells, interacts with CD40 on DCs, and subsequently increases DC survival, upregulates MHC and costimulatory molecule expression, and induces DC cytokine production (e.g.,

IL-12) [25-27,36,37]. TRANCE, also expressed on activated T cells [38], can similarly increase DC survival by upregulating Bcl-X_L expression, and induce IL-12 production in these cells[35,39]. Thus the CD40L/CD40 or TRANCE/TRANCE-R system indirectly enhances T cell stimulation by regulating APCs, such as DCs. In addition to their roles in immune responses, some TNF family members appear to regulate T cell tolerance by controlling the fate of CD4+CD25+ Treg cells [2,40].

TRANCE elicits signals by interacting with its receptor, TRANCE-R [2,35,41], which initiates its signaling by recruiting TRAF proteins. RANK was shown to interact with TRAF1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 by transient transfection assays [2,42-44]. However, further studies in primary cells suggest that TRAF6 might be a major signaling adapter for RANK in a physiological setting. It was shown that TRANCE or TRANCE-R KO mice exhibit grossly similar phenotypes to TRAF6 KO mice, including osteopetrosis and absence of peripheral lymph nodes [23,24,45-49]. No other TRAF KO mouse exhibit such defects [20-22,50].

In addition to its role for TNFR family members (CD40 and TRANCE-R), TRAF6 is a major signaling molecule for the IL-1R/Toll-like receptor (TLR) superfamily [51-53]. However, the biochemical nature of the interaction of TRAF6 with these superfamilies appears to be distinct. While TNFR superfamily members, such as CD40 and TRANCE-R, activate TRAF6 through direct physical association[2], the sequential recruitment of MyD88 and IRAK is required for TRAF6 to activate the IL-1R/TLR superfamily[51-53]. This IRAK-TRAF6 interaction appears to occur in the cytoplasm after the departure of IRAK from the receptor-signaling complex. Nevertheless, TRAF6 represents a central point of convergence for signal transduction via the TNFR superfamily and the IL-1R/TLR superfamily, both of which regulate DC maturation, activation and survival [14,23-27,52-54].

3. TRAF6 AS A REGULATOR OF DC FATES

3.1. Defects in DC Development in TRAF6 KO Mice

In mice, there are at least three distinct subsets of DC in spleens. Examination of these DC subsets in TRAF6 KO mice revealed a significant defect in the development of $CD4^+CD11b^+ CD11c^{high}$ DCs. Since RelB KO mice show a similarly specific defect in the development of CD4+ DCs, it is likely that a TRAF6-RelB pathway regulates the fates of CD4+ DC subset in vivo. However, it remains to be determined whether the absence of the $CD4^+$ DC subset is due to a defect in differentiation of this lineage or a selective survival defect in this population.

3.2. Defective DC Maturation and Activation in the Absence of TRAF6

Injection of LPS, one of the most potent DC maturation stimuli, upregulates the expression of costimulatory molecules on splenic DCs *in vivo* [55,56]. To test, whether LPS matures TRAF6 KO DCs *in vivo*, TRAF6 KO mice were intraperitoneally injected with LPS or PBS. Although LPS injection upregulated CD86 expression in splenic DCs in wild-type mice, it failed to induce the upregulation of MHC II and CD86 on CD11c+ DCs from TRAF6 KO mice. Similarly, injection of agonistic anti-CD40 Ab failed to induce the upregulation of costimulatory molecules in TRAF6-deficient DCs. Moreover, various bacterial products and CD40 ligand stimulation failed to induce the production of

proinflammatory cytokines in TRAF6 KO DCs. These results strongly suggest that TRAF6 is a key factor for mediating DC maturation and activation induced by multiple TLR ligands and by CD40 ligation.

3.3. Defects in the T Cell Activation by DCs Derived from TRAF6 KO Mice

Another hallmark of DC maturation is an increased capacity to stimulate T cells. To test T cell stimulatory activity, wild-type and TRAF6 KO DCs were prepared *in vitro*, and stimulated with LPS. As expected, T cell proliferation by LPS-stimulated wild-type DCs was dramatically increased when compared to that by untreated wild-type DCs. In contrast, LPS stimulation of TRAF6 KO DCs did not enhance their stimulatory capacity above background levels. A defect in the T cell stimulatory capacity of TRAF6 KO DCs was also observed by measuring IFN-γ secretion by all responsive T cells. These data demonstrate that defects in phenotypic maturation observed in TRAF6 KO DCs are reflected in their relative inability to augment T cell stimulatory capacity, a hallmark of DC maturation.

3.4. Defective Signal Transduction in DCs Derived from TRAF6 KO Mice

The absence of TRAF6, results in a severe defect in the early phase of NF-κB, JNK and p38 kinase activation induced by IL-1, CD40L or TRANCE. Among TLR ligands, CpG (for TLR9) stimulation demonstrated a requirement for TRAF6 to activate NF-κB, JNK and p38 kinase. However, LPS (for TLR4), and particularly dsRNA (for TLR3), were not dependent on TRAF6 to activate NF-κB, JNK, and p38 kinase. In the absence of TRAF6, there was only a slight reduction in the magnitude and delay in the kinetics of activation. It is most likely that TRIF can stimulate NF-κB and MAPKs independent of TRAF6.

4. CONCLUSION

TRAF6 appears to be required for maturation and activation of DCs induced by various microbial products that interact with TLRs. In addition, TRAF6 plays a central role in DC maturation and activation induced by the TNF receptor family member CD40. Thus it appears that TRAF6 is a converging point for signals required for DC maturation and activation induced by microbial and host products. However, it remains to be determined whether there are TRAF6-independent DC maturation signals when DCs encountered with other stimuli.

5. REFERENCES

1. C. A. Smith, T. Farrah & R. G. Goodwin. The TNF receptor superfamily of cellular and viral proteins: activation, costimulation, and death. *Cell* **76**, 959-962 (1994).
2. R. M. Locksley, N. Killeen & M. J. Lenardo. The TNF and TNF receptor superfamilies: integrating mammalian biology. *Cell* **104**, 487-501. (2001).
3. D. K. Miller. The role of the caspase family of cysteine proteases in apoptosis. *Semin. Immunol.* **9**, 35-49 (1997).
4. M. J. May & S. Ghosh. Signal transduction through NF-kappa B. *Immunol Today* **19**, 80-8 (1998).

5. S. Ghosh & M. Karin. Missing pieces in the NF-kappaB puzzle. *Cell* **109 Suppl**, S81-96 (2002).
6. M. Karin. The regulation of AP-1 activity by mitogen-activated protein kinases. *J. Biol. Chem.* **270**, 16483-16486 (1995).
7. Z. Xia, M. Dickens, J. Raingeaud, R. J. Davis & M. E. Greenberg. Opposing effects of ERK and JNK-p38 MAP kinases on apoptosis. *Science* **270**, 1326-1331 (1995).
8. L. A. Tartaglia, T. M. Ayres, G. H. W. Wong & D. V. Goeddel. A novel domian within the 55 kd TNF receptor signals cell death. *Cell* **74**, 845-853 (1993).
9. N. Itoh & S. Nagata. A novel protein domain required for apoptosis. *J. Biol. Chem.* **268**, 10932-10937 (1993).
10. S. Nagata. Apoptosis by Death Factor. *Cell* **88**, 355-365 (1997).
11. M. Rothe, S. C. Wong, W. J. Henzel & D. V. Goeddel. A novel family of putative signal transducers associted with the cytoplasmic domain of the 75 kDa tumor necrosis factor receptor. *Cell* **78**, 681-692 (1994).
12. G. Cheng et al. Involvement of CRAF1, a relative of TRAF, in CD40 signaling. *Science* **267**, 1494-1498 (1995).
13. H. Nakano et al. TRAF5, an activator of NF-kB and putative signal transducer for the lymphotoxin-beta receptor. *J. Biol. Chem.* **271**, 14661-14664 (1996).
14. Z. Cao, J. Xiong, M. Takeuchi, T. Kurama & D. V. Goeddel. TRAF6 is a signal transducer for interleukin-1. *Nature* **383**, 443-446 (1996).
15. N. L. Malinin, M. P. Boldin, A. V. Kovalenko & D. Wallach. MAP3K-related kinase involved in NF-kB induction by TNF, CD95 and IL-1. *Nature* **385**, 540-544 (1997).
16. E. Zandi, D. M. Rothwarf, M. Delhase, M. Hayakawa & M. Karin. The IkappaB kinase complex (IKK) contains two kinase subunits, IKKalpha and IKKbeta, necessary for IkappaB phosphorylation and NF-kappaB activation. *Cell* **91**, 243-52 (1997).
17. J. A. DiDonato, M. Hayakawa, D. M. Rothwarf, E. Zandi & M. Karin. A cytokine-responsive IkB kinase that activates the transcription factor NF-kB. *Nature* **388**, 548-554 (1997).
18. J. Y. Chung, Y. C. Park, H. Ye & H. Wu. All TRAFs are not created equal: common and distinct molecular mechanisms of TRAF-mediated signal transduction. *J Cell Sci* **115**, 679-88 (2002).
19. S. Y. Lee et al. TRAF2 is essential for JNK but not NF-kB activation and regulates lymphocyte proliferation and survival. *Immunity* **7**, 703-713 (1997).
20. W.-C. Yeh et al. Early lethality, functional NF-kB activation and increased sensitivity to TNF-induced cell death in TRAF2-deficient mice. *Immunity* **7**, 715-725 (1997).
21. E. N. Tsitsikov et al. TRAF1 is a negative regulator of TNF signaling. enhanced TNF signaling in TRAF1-deficient mice. *Immunity* **15**, 647-57 (2001).
22. Y. Xu, G. Cheng & D. Baltimore. Targeted disruption of TRAF3 leads to postnatal lethality and defective T-dependent immune responses. *Immunity* **5**, 407-415 (1996).
23. A. Naito et al. Severe osteopetrosis, defective interleukin-1 signalling and lymph node organogenesis in TRAF6-deficient mice. *Genes Cells* **4**, 353-362 (1999).
24. M. A. Lomaga et al. TRAF6 deficiency results in osteopetrosis and defective interleukin-1, CD40, and LPS signaling. *Genes Dev* **13**, 1015-1024 (1999).
25. J. Banchereau & R. M. Steinman. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature* **392**, 245-52 (1998).
26. R. M. Steinman & M. C. Nussenzweig. Avoiding horror autotoxicus: the importance of dendritic cells in peripheral T cell tolerance. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **99**, 351-8. (2002).
27. K. Shortman & Y. J. Liu. Mouse and human dendritic cell subtypes. *Nat Rev Immunol* **2**, 151-61. (2002).
28. L. Flores-Romo et al. CD40 ligation on human cord blood CD34+ hematopoietic progenitors induces their proliferation and differentiation into functional dendritic cells. *J Exp Med* **185**, 341-9 (1997).
29. C. Caux et al. CD34+ hematopoietic progenitors from human cord blood differentiate along two independent dendritic cell pathways in response to GM-CSF+TNF alpha. *J Exp Med* **184**, 695-706 (1996).
30. J. W. Young, P. Szabolcs & M. A. Moore. Identification of dendritic cell colony-forming units among normal human CD34+ bone marrow progenitors that are expanded by c-kit-ligand and yield pure dendritic cell colonies in the presence of granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor and tumor necrosis factor alpha. *J Exp Med* **182**, 1111-9 (1995).
31. R. J. Noelle. CD40 and its ligand in host defense. *Immunity* **4**, 415-419 (1996).
32. J. P. Ridge, F. DiRosa & P. Matzinger. A conditioned dendritic cell can be a temporal bridge between a $CD4^+$ T-helper and a T-killer cell. *Nature* **393**, 474-478 (1998).
33. R. Josien et al. TRANCE, a TNF family member, enhances the longevity and adjuvant properties of dendritic cells in vivo. *J. Exp. Med.* **191**, 495-502 (2000).
34. M. F. Bachmann et al. TRANCE, a tumor necrosis factor family member critical for CD40 ligand-independent T helper cell activation. *J. Exp. Med.* **189**, 1025-1031 (1999).

35. B. R. Wong, R. Josien & Y. Choi. TRANCE is a TNF family member that regulates dendritic cell and osteoclast function. *J. Leuk. Biol.* **65**, 715-724 (1999).
36. C. Van Kooten & J. Banchereau. CD40-CD40 ligand: a multifunctional receptor-ligand pair. *Adv. Immunol.* **61**, 1-77 (1996).
37. C. van Kooten & J. Banchereau. Functions of CD40 on B cells, dendritic cells and other cells. *Curr Opin Immunol* **9**, 330-7 (1997).
38. B. R. Wong et al. TRANCE is a novel ligand of the tumor necrosis factor receptor family that activates c-Jun N-terminal kinases in T cells. *J. Biol. Chem.* **272**, 25910-25914 (1997).
39. B. R. Wong et al. TRANCE (tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-related activation-induced cytokine), a new TNF family member predominantly expressed in T cells, is a dendritic cell-specific survival factor. *J Exp Med* **186**, 2075-80 (1997).
40. E. A. Green, Y. Choi & R. A. Flavell. Pancreatic lymph node-derived CD4(+)CD25(+) Treg cells: highly potent regulators of diabetes that require TRANCE-RANK signals. *Immunity* **16**, 183-91. (2002).
41. L. E. Theill, W. J. Boyle & J. M. Penninger. RANK-L and RANK: T cells, bone loss, and mammalian evolution. *Annu Rev Immunol* **20**, 795-823 (2002).
42. B. R. Wong et al. The TRAF family of signal transducers mediates NF-kappaB activation by the TRANCE receptor. *J. Biol. Chem.* **273**, 28355-28359 (1998).
43. B. G. Darnay, J. Ni, P. A. Moore & B. B. Aggarwal. Activation of NF-kappaB by RANK requires tumor necrosis factor receptor- associated factor (TRAF) 6 and NF-kappaB-inducing kinase. Identification of a novel TRAF6 interaction motif. *J Biol Chem* **274**, 7724-31 (1999).
44. L. Galibert, M. E. Tometsko, D. M. Anderson, D. Cosman & W. C. Dougall. The involvement of multiple tumor necrosis factor receptor (TNFR)- associated factors in the signaling mechanisms of receptor activator of NF-kappaB, a member of the TNFR superfamily. *J Biol Chem* **273**, 34120-7 (1998).
45. D. Kim et al. Regulation of peripheral lymph node genesis by the tumor necrosis factor family member TRANCE. *J Exp Med* **192**, 1467-78. (2000).
46. N. S. Kim, P. R. Odgren, D. K. Kim, J. Marks, S.C. & Y. Choi. Diverse roles of the tumor necrosis factor family member TRANCE in skeleton physiology revealed by TRANCE deficiency and partial rescue by a lymphocyte-expressed TRANCE transgene. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **97**, 10905-10910 (2000).
47. Y. Y. Kong et al. OPGL is a key regulator of osteoclastogenesis, lymphocyte development and lymph-node organogenesis. *Nature* **397**, 315-323 (1999).
48. W. C. Dougall et al. RANK is essential for osteoclast and lymph node development. *Genes Dev.* **13**, 2412-2424 (1999).
49. J. Li et al. RANK is the intrinsic hematopoietic cell surface receptor that controls osteoclastogenesis and regulation of bone mass and calcium metabolism. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **97**, 1566-71. (2000).
50. H. Nakano et al. Targeted disruption of Traf5 gene causes defects in CD40- and CD27- mediated lymphocyte activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **96**, 9803-8 (1999).
51. R. Medzhitov et al. MyD88 is an adaptor protein in the hToll/IL-1 receptor family signaling pathways. *Mol Cell* **2**, 253-8 (1998).
52. R. Medzhitov & C. Janeway, Jr. The Toll receptor family and microbial recognition. *Trends Microbiol* **8**, 452-6. (2000).
53. S. Akira, K. Takeda & T. Kaisho. Toll-like receptors: critical proteins linking innate and acquired immunity. *Nat Immunol* **2**, 675-80. (2001).
54. H. Ye et al. Distinct molecular mechanism for initiating TRAF6 signalling. *Nature* **418**, 443-7. (2002).
55. T. De Smedt et al. Regulation of dendritic cell numbers and maturation by lipopolysaccharide in vivo. *J Exp Med* **184**, 1413-24. (1996).
56. T. Kaisho, O. Takeuchi, T. Kawai, K. Hoshino & S. Akira. Endotoxin-induced maturation of MyD88-deficient dendritic cells. *J Immunol* **166**, 5688-94. (2001).

12

THE INNATE FUNCTIONS OF DENDRITIC CELLS IN PERIPHERAL LYMPHOID TISSUES

Ralph M. Steinman, Laura Bonifaz, Shin-ichiro Fujii, Kang Liu, David Bonnyay, Sayuri Yamazaki, Maggi Pack, ^Daniel Hawiger, *Tomonori Iyoda, *Kayo Inaba, and ^Michel C. Nussenzweig

1. INTRODUCTION

The term "innate" has several functional connotations for dendritic cell (DC) biology (Table 1). DCs can mediate innate immunity directly; they also link innate and adaptive arms of the immune system during immune responses and in maintaining tolerance.

The traditional view of innate function is to provide rapid resistance to infection by mechanisms such as phagocytosis, which was the first example of innate immunity discovered by Metchnikoff. Phagocytosis takes place in certain DCs, but the function of microbial uptake in DCs may pertain more to antigen presentation rather than to large scale innate resistance. (In some cases, DCs sue endocytosis to sequester and transmit pathogens, which is the case for HIV-1 at least in culture.) More needs to be done to follow the fate of different organisms in these cells. For example, in a recent study, DCs could restrain the growth of *Legionella pneumophilia* and at the same time present *Legionella* antigens, whereas macrophages were permissive for growth and less active as presenting cells [1]. Several other functions in innate immunity are better established for DCs. For example, during virus infection, DCs or subsets of DCs can make particularly large amounts of protective cytokines, especially type I and II interferons [2, 3] in response to ligation of Toll Like Receptors (TLR's) [4, 5], stimulation of intracellular protein kinase R [6], and NKT cells [7]. A newly recognized function of DCs is to mobilize most types of innate lymphocytes, such as NK, NKT, and $\gamma\delta$ T cells. This field is just beginning to be studied in vivo [7, 8] but may represent a major way for DCs to provide innate immunity.

Laboratories of Cellular Physiology and Immunology, and ^Molecular Immunology, and the Chris Browne Center for Immunology and Immune Diseases, The Rockefeller University, 1230 York Ave, New York, NY 10021-6399, USA; * Department of Animal Development and Physiology, Graduate School of Biostudies, Kyoto University, Kyoto 606-8502, Japan

Table 1. Innate Functions of Dendritic Cells

Innate resistance to infection
Phagocytosis,
Secretion especially cytokines,
Activation of innate lymphocytes
DC maturation, a link between innate to adaptive T cell mediated immunity
Toll like receptors
Heat shock proteins, necrotic cells, uric acid
Inflammatory cytokines
Immune complexes
CD40 ligand, e.g., on T cells, platelets and mast cells
Multiple pathways of peripheral tolerance as an innate function of DCs
Self tissues
Environmental proteins

DCs link innate and adaptive immunity by a terminal differentiation process called DC maturation. Maturation can be initiated by select microbial signals acting through TLRs. However, maturation can also occur with stimuli that are not clearly microbial, such as ligation of CD40 (Table 1). A major consequence of maturation is that the DCs are able to initiate adaptive T cell immunity to presented antigens. The type of immunity e.g., Th1 vs. Th2 and even regulatory T cells, may be influenced by the way that the pathogen differentiates or matures the DCs[9]. This article will not deal with the developing area of "pathogen tuning"[10], but it is an important topic since the way DCs sense the environment influences the subsequent host response. We will focus on maturation as it applies to strong cell mediated immune response to defined proteins. One of our goals is to learn to control DC maturation in vivo to develop vaccines composed of simple proteins and defined maturation stimuli.

DCs also bridge innate and adaptive immune responses by presenting antigens in the steady state to maintain peripheral tolerance. Many examples are now available whereby DCs capture self and environmental antigens in the steady state, and present these in lymphoid tissues for purposes of tolerance. Classically the view was that DCs in the steady state were simply waiting for a maturation stimulus to initiate immunity. However, it appears that DCs in lymphoid tissues actively mediate many of the known pathways to peripheral tolerance, both intrinsic to the tolerized T cell (deletion, anergy)[11-13] and extrinsic (regulatory and suppressor T cells)[14-16]. By tolerizing the T cell repertoire in the steady state, DCs obviate the induction of immunity to self and environmental antigens when these antigens are subsequently presented together with microbial antigens during infection.

We will begin this chapter by summarizing certain physiological features of DCs that are innate, i.e., built in and functional in the steady state. These features include: 1) the anatomic position of DCs in vivo, particularly within lymphoid tissues, 2) the capacity of DCs to take up and process antigens for presentation, and 3) the ability of DCs to respond quickly to a panel of differentiation or maturation stimuli that change the cells in several

pertinent ways to initiate and control adaptive immunity. We will then consider how these features allow DCs to control peripheral tolerance and immunity and emphasize a new DC targeting approach to vaccination.

2. DENDRITIC CELL FUNCTIONS IN LYMPHOID TISSUES

2.1. Anatomic Position

A hallmark of the distribution of DCs in vivo is their abundance in the T cell areas of lymphoid tissues. In the T areas, DCs form a maze of processes through which lymphocytes continually recirculate[17,18]. DCs are therefore in an ideal position to select rare clones of antigen-specific lymphocytes for purposes of either immunity or tolerance[19-21]. In the same way, DCs sustain T cell viability, since recognition of MHC products on DCs is sufficient for keeping naive lymphocytes alive [22].

For example, epidermal Langerhans cells move via afferent lymphatics to lymph nodes that drain the skin, and these migrants are identified in the node by strong expression of two endocytosis receptors, Langerin/CD207 and DEC-205/CD205 (as well as low levels of CD8α in mice)[24]. Additional lymph-derived DCs originate from the dermis and from the interstitial spaces of other organs, in the case of nonskin draining lymph nodes. The dermal or interstitial DCs may in turn derive from blood precursors, frequently termed myeloid DCs. These express PSGL, glycans recognized by P and E selectins on blood vessels[25]. DCs also can originate from blood monocytes. In the steady state there may be a subset of monocytes destined to become DCs and marked by high levels of CXCR3 or by CD16[26,27]. Additionally, there are inflammatory situations where monocytes differentiate along a DC rather than macrophage pathway. Active cytokines like GM-CSF, flt-3L, IL-4, IL-13 have been identified in various in vivo and in vitro models of monocyte to DC differentiation. However, there is little direct in vivo data on the conversion of monocytes to DCs during infection, and in fact, the conversion can sometimes be inhibited by bacteria[28].

In sum, the origin of DCs in the T cell areas is an intricate topic, even without considering the chemokines and other molecules required to position DCs. One must consider possible distinctions between the steady state and infection, as well as differences that relate to DC subsets such as plasmacytoid DCs, Langerhans cells, and others.

2.2. Dendritic Cell Maturation

The term maturation denotes the extensive differentiation that allows DCs to become strong stimulators of T cell mediated immunity (Table 2). Maturation was first encountered in cultured Langerhans cells[29], where it was proposed to be a critical process for initiating immunity[30-32]. As part of maturation, there was extensive remodeling of the LC surface. Many markers increased in expression (e.g., MHC II, CD86, DEC-205) and others decreased (e.g., FcγR and F4/80). The markers changed in a similar fashion when LCs were undergoing enhanced migration from intact pieces of skin, as in transplantation[33] or simple explantation into culture[33,34]. Antigen capture and presentation occurred in immature DCs[30,35,36], but surprisingly, mature DCs were unable to take up several antigens. Instead mature DCs had acquired the capacity to act as the most potent accessories for T cell immunity, initially assessed by T cell proliferation and T-dependent

Table 2. Some Functions that Change Substantially during DC Maturation

Production of cytokines like IL-1, TNF, IL-6, interferons, IL-12, IL-23
Production of chemokines like IL-8, MIP-1α,β, MCP-1, RANTES
Alterations of chemokine receptors e.g., increased CCR7
Decreased pinocytosis and phagocytosis, and several endocytic receptors
Increased antigen processing and expression of MHC peptide complexes
Increased expression of B7 and TNF costimulatory family members
Increased CD40

antibody formation[30,31]. This was the first dissection of immunization into two sets of functions: antigen capture and presentation vs. accessory (later "costimulatory") functions for T cell stimulation. This separation later proved vital to understand tolerance, since immature DCs in lymphoid tissues capture and process antigens in the steady state but induce peripheral tolerance rather than immunity (below).

DC maturation has also been studied in tissue culture experiments where immature cells, derived from marrow and blood precursors, are induced to differentiate by the addition of cytokines such as GM-CSF and TNF-α. Differentiation of these DC precursors to more mature forms greatly increases the processing of previously acquired antigens[37], the export of processed antigen as MHC peptide complexes to the cell surface[38], and the lifespan of the complexes[39]. The findings of Mellman and colleagues are outlining the unusual features of the endocytic system of these maturing DCs, particularly the extensive regulation at the levels of antigen uptake[40], transport of MHC class II molecules[38,41], lysosomal pH and hydrolytic activity[42].

Most DCs in vivo in lymphoid tissues have the functional features of immature cells even though the DCs express co-stimulatory molecules such as CD86. DCs in the T area of lymphoid organs are continually and efficiently processing antigens to form MHC peptide complexes in the steady state[11-13,43-46]. This presentation leads to tolerance and not immunity[11-13,44,45]. Maturation is required to activate immunity.

Many stimuli have been identified that trigger some or all of the above changes in DCs (Table 1). It is not clear if each stimulus results in functionally similar mature cells. Also, it needs to be kept in mind that different maturation stimuli may interact to control immunogenicity. For example, if a microbial ligand activates a DC through a TLR, cytokines (IL-1β, TNF-α, IFN-α and IFN-γ) are then produced which could act back on the DCs to drive further differentiation. Also, newly produced MHC peptide complexes might activate helper cells and expression of CD40L, which also acts back on the DCs. We have recently begun to dissect the components of DC maturation in vivo in response to innate NKT lymphocytes[47]. We find that inflammatory cytokines are responsible for the upregulation of CD80 and CD86, two frequently used surrogate markers of DC maturation, but that full maturation of immunogenicity to a coadministered protein requires CD40 ligation even in DCs that are already expressing high levels of MHC-peptide complexes and CD80/86 costimulators.

In summary, DC maturation should be assessed in vivo in terms of immunogenicity and not by expression of surrogate markers like MHC or co-stimulatory molecules. A

major innate feature of DCs is to act as sentinels and adjuvants for the immune system by rapidly maturing and becoming powerful inducers of adaptive immunity in response to an array of microbial and other stimuli.

2.3. Antigen Uptake and Processing by DCs onto Multiple Classes of Antigen Presenting Molecules

An essential innate feature of DCs is their expression of a broad range of receptors for endocytosis and antigen presentation. Some of these are shared with other leukocytes, particularly monocytes and macrophages. These would include Fcγ and complement receptors for immune complexes and antibody coated tumor cells, and receptors involved in the uptake of dying cells. Other receptors are more restricted to DCs and often subsets of DCs. These include orphan receptors with yet to be determined ligands; but their amino acid sequences suggest recognition of carbohydrates. Many are type II transmembrane proteins with a single external C-type lectin domain, while others are type I proteins with multiple external and contiguous carbohydrate recognition domains. DC-SIGN/CD209 is an example of the type II variety, but it has primarily been studied on cultured monocyte-derived DCs. (A spectrum of pathogens is recognized by DC-SIGN incoludingn several viruses (HIV-1, CMV, HCV, Dengue, Ebola), fungi (candida), protozoan parasites (certain Leishmania), and mycobacteria.) DEC-205/CD205 is a type I transmembrane protein, and it has been studied on both cultured DCs and DCs in lymphoid tissues. While natural ligands are not known, antibodies to DEC-205 have been used as surrogate ligands, as will be discussed below. In retrospect, the uptake of antigens by DCs in vivo has in the past largely been left to "chance". The identification of DC receptors for antigen uptake should change this situation and make it possible to target antigens to DCs more efficiently and selectively.

An important feature of antigen uptake in DCs relates to the efficient formation of peptide complexes with both MHC class I and II products. Processing to form ligands for $CD4^+$ T cells can be very efficient[37], but more intriguing is that DCs can present nonreplicating forms of antigens on MHC class I products[48,49](reviewed in [50,51]). DCs process immune complexes, dying cells, and DEC-205 ligands to form MHC class I (and MHC II) peptide complexes. For class I, this "exogenous pathway" can utilize transporters for antigenic peptides or TAPs[12,44,52,53]. It is now thought that TAP-dependence takes place in the endocytic vacuole, following fusion of elements of the rough endoplasmic reticulum[54,55]. DCs also present antigens on other types of molecules such as the glycolipid binding CD1 family. In sum, the capacity of DCs to efficiently present nonreplicating antigens on many types of antigen presenting molecules allows them to control tolerance and immunity in several different classes of lymphocytes.

2.4. Summary

DCs are far from quiescent in the steady state. Instead, they have a number of innate functions (Table 1) that depend on such properties as their positioning in lymphoid organs, environmental sensing through numerous pathways for maturation, and expression of efficient antigen uptake and processing pathways. Together, these features allow DCs to play pivotal roles in innate resistance as well as adaptive tolerance and immunity.

3. EXAMPLES OF THE INNATE ROLES OF DENDRITIC CELLS IN LYMPHOID TISSUES IN PERIPHERAL TOLERANCE

3.1. Presentation of Antigens Targeted to DCs

The most detailed and direct studies of antigen presentation by DCs in lymphoid tissues in the steady state has involved a new approach. The approach targets the DEC-205/CD205 endocytois receptor on DCs. DEC-205 originally came to attention when Breel and Kraal immunized rats with lymphoid tissue "stroma" and screened hybridomas for reactivity to the "interdigitating" DCs of the T cell areas. One of the hybridomas, termed NLDC-145, reacted strongly with DCs in the T cell areas of all peripheral lymphoid tissues (spleen, lymph nodes, Peyer's patch); the antibody also stained Langerhans cells (though weakly) and thymic cortical epithelium (very strongly)[18]. The corresponding antigen was unknown for some time until it was isolated as a 205 kD glycoprotein from the thymus by Swiggard et al[56] and cloned by Jiang et al[57]. The cloned molecule had considerable homology to the macrophage mannose receptor (MMR/CD206)[57]. The amino termini of both receptors had two domains, one cysteine rich and the next fibronectin like, followed by 10 external contiguous carbohydrate recognition domains in DEC-205 and 8 in the MMR. Both the MMR and DEC-205 had cytosolic domains with motifs for localization to coated pits and rapid entry into the cell[57].

However additional cell biological studies showed that DEC-205 had an intracellular traffic pattern that was different from the MMR and other recycling endocytic receptors. DEC-205 did not recycle through peripheral endosomes but instead moved through deeper MHC II rich compartments[58]. This traffic was attributed to a triad of acidic amino acids in the cytosolic domain, which also was associated with much more efficient antigen presentation on MHC class II products relative to ligands for the MMR. Another major difference between DEC-205 and its MMR cousin was that DEC-205 was abundant on a large fraction of DCs in lymph nodes, whereas the MMR was primarily found elsewhere, e.g., on sinusoidal lining endothelium and macrophages[59,60]. These features of DEC-205, as well as the availability of the Kraal rat anti-mouse DEC-205 antibody, set the stage for an examination of the consequences of DEC-205 mediated antigen uptake in situ. (Although DCs express many different receptors with the potential for endocytosis, these have been studied mainly in human, and antibodies to mouse counterparts are not yet available except for anti-mouse DEC-205/CD205.)

First we needed methods to deliver antigens via DEC-205, since natural ligands have been difficult to identify. Therefore the antibody to DEC 205 was used as a surrogate but specific and high affinity ligand, following modification to deliver antigens. This was done in two ways. In one, the cDNA of the heavy chain was engineered to introduce sequences for antigens, such as Hen Egg Lysozyme, at the carboxyl terminus[11]. In the other, OVA protein was chemically linked to inter-heavy chain thiol groups generated by mild reduction of the antibody[12,46]. In both instances, the modified antibody selectively targeted the antigen to DCs in vivo. This could be demonstrated in several ways. 1) In tissue sections, the DEC-205 antibody localized selectively to MHC class II and CD11c positive cells in the T cell areas; 2) in FACS analyses, the injected rat Ig and associated OVA were found selectively in DCs; and 3) in functional studies, CD11c$^+$ DCs selectively presented antigen to antigen-specific TCR transgenic T cells.

As in the uptake of dying cells and environmental proteins (see below), there was no change in the surface markers of DCs that had interacted with anti-DEC-205 antibodies. Nonetheless, under these steady state conditions, there was vigorous antigen presentation

to T cells. A single injection of submicrogram doses of antigen lead to extensive proliferation of a bolus of 1 million or more TCR transgenic, OVA-specific, $CD8^+$ and $CD4^+$ T cells, with the former exogenous pathway being TAP dependent. Therefore, an innate property of DCs in lymphoid organs was to capture and process antigens with considerable efficiency.

When the consequences of DEC-205 delivery were examined, different forms of tolerance developed in the steady state. We observed deletional tolerance with two high affinity peptides from OVA and hen egg lysozyme[11,12], and a form of functional inactivation with a self MOG peptide[13]. More work is needed to understand these different outcomes, but the unifying theme is that peripheral tolerance is sustained by the innate properties of DCs (or at least some subsets of DCs) in lymphoid tissues.

3.2. Presentation of Antigens from Dying Cells

Cell death occurs frequently in vivo, and this can have significant consequences for the presentation of self and foreign antigens. Cell death takes place in the so-called "turnover" of many tissues in the steady state, and cell death accompanies injury as well as infection. DCs in vivo can capture dying cells in these circumstances, i.e., in the steady state and following various perturbations. DCs are likely to be important in determining the immunologic consequences of this cell death. For example, peripheral tolerance may be induced to self antigens captured in the steady state and possibly during most examples of injury and trauma, while immunity develops in the context of cell death occurring during infection.

To directly investigate the handling of dying cells by the immune system, we followed the uptake and fate of syngeneic "osmotically shocked" spleen cells loaded with a marker protein, ovalbumin (OVA). This system was identified by Bevan and colleagues (who bathed cells in a high concentration of OVA and then briefly exposed the cells to hypertonic followed by hypotonic medium; this osmotic shock would rupture endocytic vesicles, release OVA into the cytoplasm, and allow presentation on MHC class I) to study the direct presentation of cell associated antigens[61]. It later became apparent that osmotic shock was leading to cell death, and that the dying cells could be captured efficiently by the $CD8\alpha^+$ subset of DCs following i.v. injection into mice[44,53]. Presentation by host DCs in this indirect or cross presentation pathway was detected by the proliferation of OVA-specific $CD8^+$ and $CD4^+$ TCR transgenic T cells. However, the DCs taking up dying cells did not show evidence for maturation, at least at the level of several cell surface markers. When the fate of the OVA-specific, $CD8^+$ T cells was followed, they disappeared over the course of 2 weeks, and importantly, the animal became profoundly tolerant to rechallenge with OVA in CFA. Therefore we concluded that DCs have an important innate function with regard to dying cells in the steady state: the latter can be taken up, processed and presented for purposes of tolerance.

To prove that most DCs could process the phagocytosed cells, and to follow what could happen when cell death was induced in vivo (rather than ex vivo by osmotic shock above), we used another system in which we could monitor the formation of MHC class II-peptide complexes directly. The system was to inject allogeneic B cells (from BALB/c mice), which in turn were rapidly killed in vivo by recipient NK cells (in C57BL/6 mice). The MHC class II disparate ($I\text{-}A^b$) host DCs efficiently took up the allogeneic B cells killed by host NK cells, i.e., within 12 hrs, 30% of $CD8^+$ splenic DCs took up B cell fragments. The successful processing of the dying cells, which expressed a distinct I-E MHC class II molecule, led to the formation of an epitope recognized by the Y-Ae

monoclonal antibody, an epitope formed by the complex of I-A^b and an I-E peptide. All the DCs that took up the injected allogeneic B cells quickly became Y-Ae positive[53]. In addition, the DCs could stimulate naive, $CD4^+$ TCR transgenic T cells specific for the same MHC peptide complex. We think that this may be an important pathway for DCs to capture and process targets that are killed by NK cells, including class I deficient tumor cells and infected cells (e.g., targets made class I deficient by herpes virus infection). Reciprocally, NK cells are activated and expanded by DCs, and NK cells have the capacity to mature DCs (Table 2). This may change the outcome from tolerance to immunity, as we shall discuss for other maturation stimuli in the next section.

There is an additional pathway for presentation that needs to be kept in mind. Incoming DCs typically do not leave lymphoid organs via efferent lymph but instead die within a short period after arrival. This was visualized by following the fate of BALB/C DCs injected s.c. into C57BL/6 recipients. Using the Y-Ae antibody described above, we noted that many host H-2^b DCs in the lymph node became Y-Ae positive within a day, indicating that they had captured and successfully processed the injected, I-E bearing BALB/C DCs[37]. This pathway is relevant to transplantation, since it shows how donor DCs can initiate the indirect pathway of rejection by delivering donor MHC and other antigens to recipient DCs. The death of incoming DCs from the periphery could thereby distribute a bolus of peripheral self antigen to a larger number of DCs in the lymph node. This could increase the efficiency of peripheral tolerance, e.g., other DCs or DC subsets in the lymph node might be better at forming MHC peptide complexes and may be longer lived than DCs entering from peripheral tissues.

3.3. Presentation of Antigens from the Environment

Not only are self tissues presented by DCs in draining lymph nodes in the steady state, but harmless environmental proteins can be handled similarly. We set out to test this with OVA as a model airway protein. Mice were allowed to inhale endotoxin free OVA. This did not change the phenotype of the DCs in the draining lymph nodes in the chest (mediastinum). However, the mediastinal lymph node DCs were efficiently presenting OVA peptides on MHC class I and II products, as indicated by robust proliferation of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$, OVA specific, TCR transgenic T cells[45]. These T cells however, produced very little IL-2 and IFN-γ, as detected with intracellular cytokine staining assays. When we examined cells from the mediastinal lymph nodes for antigen presenting activity, only the $CD11c^+$ DCs could present OVA to $CD8^+$, OVA specific, TCR transgenic T cells. Therefore it seems that DCs can acquire and present environmental proteins continually in the steady state, but immune effector T cells do not develop.

We did not determine the origin of the DCs presenting environmental protein, in our case OVA as a surrogate airway protein. Prior work suggested the OVA was captured in the lung followed by migration to the node[67]. Alternatively, OVA might have entered the afferent lymph to be captured by DCs already in the lymph node, or peripheral OVA capturing DCs could come to the lymph node, die and then undergo reprocessing by DCs in the lymph node.

We did ask if tolerance resulted from the presentation of inhaled OVA in the steady state. In fact, tolerance was apparent. If mice inhaled OVA for 30 minutes on 3 successive days, OVA specific $CD8^+$ killer T cells did not develop when the mice were challenged with OVA under conditions that would normally lead to immunity (see below). We did not study the mechanism for this peripheral tolerance. One possibility is

that there are IL-10 producing DCs in the lung and/or draining lymph nodes, and these DCs induce regulatory T cells for extrinsic tolerance[14,15].

3.4. Summary

In this section, we have used the word innate to signify DC functions that exist naturally rather than being acquired, and we distinguish "innate function" from "innate immunity," where the latter implies a protective role against infection. The reason for this distinction in terminology is that a major innate function of DCs in lymphoid tissues is specific immune tolerance rather than resistance. This function reflects the features of DCs in lymphoid tissues that were summarized above. DCs are positioned in the T cell areas to access the recirculating pool of lymphocytes, and they have efficient pathways for antigen uptake and processing such that small amounts of captured antigens (self, environmental, foreign) can be recognized by large numbers of T cells. The consequence is peripheral tolerance. A major unknown relates to the tolerizing mechanisms of these DCs, and their state of activation or maturation in the lymph node. Is tolerance simply a matter of abundant "signal one" presentation by DCs, or are other accessory molecules required? Are the immature DCs in a lymph node distinct from immature DCs from other sources, i.e., do lymph node DCs have additional specializations for tolerance?

4. DENDRITIC CELL MATURATION AS THE LINK BETWEEN INNATE AND ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

4.1. T Cell Immunity to Antigens Targeted in Vivo via the DEC-205 Receptor

We have recently evaluated the selective targeting of antigens to maturing DCs in vivo in naive mice with a polyclonal repertoire[46]. We found that the combination of anti-DEC-205:OVA plus an agonistic CD40 antibody to mature the DCs led to strong $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cell immunity[46]. In the absence of anti-CD40, no primary immune response occurred, whereas in the presence of anti-CD40, the immune response was robust and durable, such that cytolytic and IFN-γ producing $CD8^+$ T cells were observed for months after a single subcutaneous injection of this simple protein vaccine. This new vaccination approach was associated with greater protection relative to standard approaches using CFA as an adjuvant. For example, mice immunized with anti-DEC-205:OVA and anti-CD40 could resist a lethal intransal challenge with vaccinia OVA virus, and also could exert resistance against an established B16-OVA melanoma tumor.

When we analyzed some of the underlying mechanisms, some expected and some unexpected findings were made. The use of receptor mediated targeting, as expected, greatly enhanced the efficiency with which OVA was presented to T cells, several hundred fold or more relative to soluble unconjugated OVA. Even so, the combination of 1000 fold higher doses of soluble OVA and anti-CD40 only induced a fraction of the $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cell priming observed with anti-DEC:OVA and anti-CD40. This encouraged us to probe more deeply and identify two other findings that we think contributed to the stronger and more durable immunity. When we checked for the longevity of antigen presentation in vivo, using TCR transgenic T cells as reporters, we found that class I MHC peptide complexes were readily detected for 2 weeks after a single intracutaneous injection of anti-DEC-205: OVA. This may indicate that DEC-205 was expressed by a subset of long lived DCs, or perhaps the DCs that initially took up the

OVA were dying and being reprocessed. A second unexpected finding was that the injected anti-DEC-205 antibody gained access to DCs systemically in distal lymphoid tissues. If the antibody was injected into the skin of the paws, within 30 minutes it had targeted (and was presented by) DEC-205 expressing splenic DCs, and within a few hrs, the antibody had labeled DCs in distal mediastinal and mesenteric lymph nodes. This indicates that an antibody in the afferent lymph exploits the normal protein retrieval function of the lymphatic system, and gains access to the efferent lymph and blood stream. The DEC-205 targeting function of the antibody leads to systemic loading of DCs with a single injection.

4.2. T Cell Immunity Initiated by Mature DCs Presenting Antigens from Dying Cells

We have examined the consequences of providing DCs with a maturation stimulus in each of the above models of antigen uptake in vivo, where tolerance was observed in the steady state. We initially used agonistic anti-CD40 antibodies for maturation in the case of DCs that had captured DEC-205 targeted antigens[11] or OVA loaded dying splenocytes[44]. Now, instead of being deleted, the responding T cells were retained and exhibited an enhanced secondary response. Furthermore, during the primary response, active effector function was noted when anti-CD40 antibodies were injected[11,44]. The TCR transgenic T cells made large amounts of IFN-γ and were cytolytic to peptide loaded targets given i.v.

To directly prove that the maturing DCs were responsible for immunogenicity, we removed DCs from animals that had been given antigen together with α-GalCer glycolipid 4 hrs earlier. When these DCs were injected into naive animals, they were able to prime $CD4^+$and $CD8^+$ T cells in the recipients, but now there was no further need for antigen, α-GalCer, or NKT cells[7]. DCs from $CD40^{-/-}$ mice were inactive in this adoptive transfer approach, even though the DCs were presenting antigens and expressing high levels of CD80/86, comparably to wild type mice[47]. This was the first direct evidence showing that DCs matured in vivo, in this case via CD40 and innate lymphocytes, switch their innate tolerizing function to the induction of adaptive immunity.

4.3. T Cell Immunity to Environmental Proteins

Our interest in antigens in the environment, e.g., proteins in the airway and intestinal tract, related to a dilemma inherent in the concept that maturation was the critical switch for DCs to induce immunity rather than specific tolerance. When DCs present microbial antigens, the DCs are likely to be simultaneously capturing and presenting self antigens from dying cells and harmless environmental proteins. We postulated that DCs avoid this dilemma by capturing many of these self and environmental antigens in the steady state, and silence the T cell repertoire. This would obviate the potential for the DCs to generate autoimmunity or chronic inflammation during a subsequent infection[76,77].

We tested this hypothesis in the system described above wherein DCs capture and present inhaled OVA in the steady state[45]. We asked what happened if OVA were inhaled during the course of an influenza infection. This infection led to DC maturation in the draining lymph node, as assessed by increased expression of MHC II, CD80 and CD86. Interestingly, macrophages and B cells in the node did not show these changes. As mentioned above, $CD11c^+$ DCs were the only cell type in which we could detect presenting activity for OVA-specific (and also influenza specific) T cells. When OVA

was inhaled in association with infectious influenza, the immunologic outcome was different. OVA-specific T cells started making large amounts of IL-2 and IFN-γ. When we next studied naive mice with a polyclonal repertoire, rather than adoptively transferred transgenic T cells, OVA immunity developed following the combination of OVA and influenza, whereas tolerance took place if the OVA were given for 3 days prior to the influenza. These findings indicate that an innate function of DCs in lymph nodes is to induce tolerance to environmental proteins, to avoid the dilemma of subsequently inducing immunity to these proteins in the setting of infection.

4.4. Summary

It becomes more feasible to link innate with adaptive immunity if one pays attention to the need to direct the antigen to DCs and mature these cells. Antigen uptake can be harnessed through receptor-mediated mechanisms, while maturation can be controlled in vivo with stimuli such as innate lymphocytes, microbial infection, and CD40 ligation. Much remains to be explored in terms of the stimuli for, and consequences of, maturation in vivo. Nevertheless, DC maturation is required to induce immunity, and to avoid tolerance. The mechanisms that underlie DC functions in tolerance and immunity are significant areas for future work.

5. DISCUSSION

This chapter did not consider certain areas of innate DC function. We have focused on T cells, but DCs also influence B cells and all classes of innate lymphocytes. For example, type I interferon production during the innate response of plasmacytoid DCs plays an important accessory role in the human antibody response to influenza in culture[78], and DCs in the marginal zone of mouse spleen can present bacterial antigens to antibody forming B cells[79]. Nor have we considered the functions of DC subsets, which may be very different in terms of their antigen capturing pathways and their capacity to respond to maturation stimuli. For example, the uptake of dying cells in several instances is limited to the CD8α subset of splenic DCs, while the lectins Langerin and BDCA-2 are likewise expressed by select DC subsets.

Instead, we have concentrated here on a change in one of the longstanding emphases in DC physiology. Prior emphasis has been on the initiation of adaptive T cell mediated immunity to specific proteins, be they of microbial, tumor or self origin. Now it is apparent that DCs have innate functions that lead to peripheral tolerance (Table 1). A critical switch is postulated to be the maturation status of the tolerizing and immunizing DCs, but underlying mechanisms need to be pinpointed.

The newly recognized roles of DCs reflect a shift in experimental approach. Much of the initial work on DC biology was carried out with DCs in culture, often derived from precursors such as blood monocytes and proliferating bone marrow progenitors. Now it is becoming more feasible to study the functions of DCs in vivo, particularly DCs in lymphoid tissues. By using genetic approaches to selectively express antigens in these cells[80], or by delivering antigens directly to DCs in lymphoid tissues[11-13,44,46], one can begin to harness both the tolerizing and immunizing functions of DCs in vivo.

The material in this chapter could provide new opportunities for vaccine design. Antigen targeting to DCs together with appropriate maturation stimuli represents a potentially exciting new route to vaccination. Chemically defined, relatively simple

agents, i.e., antigens engineered into antibodies and defined maturation stimuli, should provide a feasible means to harness the innate functions of DCs and induce strong, durable and protective adaptive immunity directed to specific microbial and tumor proteins. This approach would make use of DC targeting for the first time in vaccine biology allowing delivery of multiple antigenic epitopes on multiple presenting molecules, along with DC accessory functions.

The standard explanation for the generation of tolerance and immunity is "signal one-signal two" theory. The theory is that antigen alone ("signal one") leads to tolerance by deletion or anergy, while antigen plus a second costimulatory signal ("signal two") leads to immunity. Instead, we would suggest that antigen delivery to DCs in the steady state leads to tolerance (by both intrinsic and extrinsic mechanisms), and antigen delivery to maturing DCs leads to different forms of T cell differentiation and immunity. In this model tolerance and immunity are sets of functions carried out by different functional states of DCs in vivo in lymphoid tissues. To gain control of tolerance and immunity in an antigen-specific manner, we suggest that it will be valuable to expand experiments to include a direct analysis of DCs.

6. REFERENCES

1. A. L. Neild, and C. R. Roy, Legionella reveal dendritic cell functions that facilitate selection of antigens for MHC class II presentation, *Immunity*. **18**, 813-823 (2003).
2. F. P. Siegal, N. Kadowaki, M. Shodell, P. A. Fitzgerald-Bocarsly, K. Shah, S. Ho, S. Antonenko, and Y. J. Liu, The nature of the principal type 1 interferon-producing cells in human blood, *Science*. **284**, 1835-1837 (1999).
3. C. B. Lopez, A. Garcia-Sastre, B. R. G. Williams, and T. M. Moran, Type 1 interferon induction pathway, but not released interferon, participates in the maturation of dendritic cells induced by negative-strand RNA viruses, *J. Infect. Dis.* **187**, 1126-1136 (2003).
4. N. Kadowaki, S. Antonenko, and Y. J. Liu, Distinct CpG DNA and polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid double-stranded RNA, respectively, stimulate CD11c- type 2 dendritic cell precursors and CD11c+ dendritic cells to produce type I IFN, *J. Immunol.* **166**, 2291-2295 (2001).
5. L. Alexopoulou, A. C. Holt, R. Medzhitov, and R. A. Flavell, Recognition of double-stranded RNA and activation of NF-kB by Toll-like receptor 3, *Nature*. **413**, 732-738 (2001).
6. S. S. Diebold, M. Montoya, H. Unger, L. Alexopoulou, P. Roy, L. E. Haswell, A. Al-Shamkhani, R. Flavell, P. Borrow, and C. Reis e Sousa, Viral infection switches non-plasmacytoid dendritic cells into high interferon producers, *Nature*. **424**, 324-328 (2003).
7. S. Fujii, K. Shimizu, C. Smith, L. Bonifaz, and R. M. Steinman, Activation of natural killer T cells by a-galactosylceramide rapidly induces the full maturation of dendritic cells in vivo and thereby acts as an adjuvant for combined CD4 and CD8 T cell immunity to a co-administered protein, *J. Exp. Med.* **198**, 267-279 (2003).
8. N. C. Fernandez, A. Lozier, C. Flament, P. Ricciardi-Castagnoli, D. Bellet, M. Suter, M. Perricaudet, T. Tursz, E. Maraskovsky, and L. Zitvogel, Dendritic cells directly trigger NK cell functions: cross-talk relevant in innate anti-tumor immune responses in vivo, *Nat. Med.* **5**, 405-411 (1999).
9. M. L. Kapsenberg, Dendritic-cell control of pathogen-driven T-cell polarization, *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* **3**, 984-993 (2003).
10. B. Pulendran, K. Palucka, and J. Banchereau, Sensing pathogens and tuning immune responses, *Science*. **293**, 253-256 (2001).
11. D. Hawiger, K. Inaba, Y. Dorsett, K. Guo, K. Mahnke, M. Rivera, J. V. Ravetch, R. M. Steinman, and M. C. Nussenzweig, Dendritic cells induce peripheral T cell unresponsiveness under steady state conditions in vivo, *J. Exp. Med.* **194**, 769-780 (2001).
12. L. Bonifaz, D. Bonnyay, K. Mahnke, M. Rivera, M. C. Nussenzweig, and R. M. Steinman, Efficient targeting of protein antigen to the dendritic cell receptor DEC-205 in the steady state leads to antigen presentation on major histocompatibility complex class I products and peripheral $CD8^+$ T cell tolerance, *J. Exp. Med.* **196**, 1627-1638 (2002).

13. D. Hawiger, R. F. Masilamani, E. Bettelli, V. K. Kuchroo, and M. C. Nussenzweig, Dynamic regulation of T cell tolerance induced by dendritic cells *in vivo*, *Submitted.* (2004).
14. O. Akbari, R. H. DeKruyff, and D. T. Umetsu, Pulmonary dendritic cells producing IL-10 mediate tolerance induced by respiratory exposure to antigen, *Nat. Immunol.* **2**, 725-731 (2001).
15. A. Wakkach, N. Fournier, V. Brun, J. P. Breittmayer, F. Cottrez, and H. Groux, Characterization of dendritic cells that induce tolerance and T regulatory 1 cell differentiation in vivo, *Immunity.* **18**, 605-617 (2003).
16. S. Yamazaki, T. Iyoda, K. Tarbell, K. Olson, K. Velinzon, K. Inaba, and R. M. Steinman, Direct expansion of functional $CD25^+$ $CD4^+$ regulatory T cells by antigen processing dendritic cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **198**, 235-247 (2003).
17. M. D. Witmer, and R. M. Steinman, The anatomy of peripheral lymphoid organs with emphasis on accessory cells: light microscopic, immunocytochemical studies of mouse spleen, lymph node and Peyer's patch., *Am. J. Anat.* **170**, 465-481 (1984).
18. G. Kraal, M. Breel, M. Janse, and G. Bruin, Langerhans cells, veiled cells, and interdigitating cells in the mouse recognized by a monoclonal antibody, *J. Exp. Med.* **163**, 981-997 (1986).
19. E. Ingulli, A. Mondino, A. Khoruts, and M. K. Jenkins, In vivo detection of dendritic cell antigen presentation to CD4+ T cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **185**, 2133-2141 (1997).
20. P. Bousso, and E. Robey, Dynamics of $CD8^+$ T cell priming by dendritic cells in intact lymph nodes, *Nat. Immunol.* **4**, 579-585 (2003).
21. T. R. Mempel, S. E. Henrickson, and U. H. Von Andrian, T-cell priming by dendritic cells in lymph nodes occurs in three distinct phases, *Nature.* **427**, 154-159 (2004).
22. T. Brocker, Survival of mature CD4 T lymphocytes is dependent on major histocompatibility complex class II-expressing dendritic cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **186**, 1223-1232 (1997).
23. M. O'Keeffe, H. Hochrein, D. Vremec, I. Caminschi, J. L. Miller, E. M. Anders, L. Wu, M. H. Lahoud, S. Henri, B. Scott, P. Hertzog, L. Tatarczuch, and K. Shortman, Mouse plasmacytoid cells: long-lived cells, heterogeneous in surface phenotype and function, that differentiate into $CD8^+$ dendritic cells only after microbial stimulus, *J. Exp. Med.* **196**, 1307-1319 (2002).
24. S. Henri, D. Vremec, A. Kamath, J. Waithman, S. Williams, C. Benoist, K. Burnham, S. Saeland, E. Handman, and K. Shortman, The dendritic cell populations of mouse lymph nodes, *J. Immunol.* **167**, 741-748 (2001).
25. C. Robert, R. C. Fuhlbrigge, J. D. Kieffer, S. Ayehunie, R. O. Hynes, G. Cheng, S. Grabbe, U. H. von Andrian, and T. S. Kupper, Interaction of dendritic cells with skin endothelium: a new perspective on immunosurveillance, *J. Exp. Med.* **189**, 627-636 (1999).
26. F. Geissmann, S. Jung, and D. R. Littman, Blood monocytes consist of two principal subsets with distinct migratory properties, *Immunity.* **19**, 71-82 (2003).
27. G. J. Randolph, G. Sanchez-Schmitz, R. M. Liebman, and K. Schakel, The $CD16^+$ ($FcgRIII^+$) subset of human monocytes preferentially becomes migratory dendritic cells in a model tissue setting, *J. Exp. Med.* **196**, 517-527 (2002).
28. G. Rotta, E. W. Edwards, S. Sangaletti, C. Bennett, S. Ronzoni, M. P. Colombo, R. M. Steinman, G. J. Randolph, and M. Rescigno, Lipopolysaccharide or whole bacteria block the conversion of inflammatory monocytes into dendritic cells in vivo, *J. Exp. Med.* **198**, 1253-1263 (2003).
29. G. Schuler, and R. M. Steinman, Murine epidermal Langerhans cells mature into potent immunostimulatory dendritic cells in vitro, *J. Exp. Med.* **161**, 526-546 (1985).
30. N. Romani, S. Koide, M. Crowley, M. Witmer-Pack, A. M. Livingstone, C. G. Fathman, K. Inaba, and R. M. Steinman, Presentation of exogenous protein antigens by dendritic cells to T cell clones: intact protein is presented best by immature, epidermal Langerhans cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **169**, 1169-1178 (1989).
31. K. Inaba, G. Schuler, M. D. Witmer, J. Valinsky, B. Atassi, and R. M. Steinman, The immunologic properties of purified Langerhans cells: distinct requirements for the stimulation of unprimed and sensitized T lymphocytes, *J. Exp. Med.* **164**, 605-613 (1986).
32. K. Inaba, N. Romani, and R. M. Steinman, An antigen-independent contact mechanism as an early step in T-cell-proliferative responses to dendritic cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **170**, 527-542 (1989).
33. C. P. Larsen, R. M. Steinman, M. Witmer-Pack, D. F. Hankins, P. J. Morris, and J. M. Austyn, Migration and maturation of Langerhans cells in skin transplants and explants, *J. Exp. Med.* **172**, 1483-1493 (1990).
34. M. Pope, M. G. H. Betjes, N. Romani, H. Hirmand, P. U. Cameron, L. Hoffman, S. Gezelter, G. Schuler, and R. M. Steinman, Conjugates of dendritic cells and memory T lymphocytes from skin facilitate productive infection with HIV-1, *Cell.* **78**, 389-398 (1994).
35. E. Pure, K. Inaba, M. T. Crowley, L. Tardelli, M. D. Witmer-Pack, G. Ruberti, G. Fathman, and R. M. Steinman, Antigen processing by epidermal Langerhans cells correlates with the level of biosynthesis of major histocompatibility complex class II molecules and expression of invariant chain, *J. Exp. Med.* **172**, 1459-1469 (1990).

36. K. Inaba, J. P. Metlay, M. T. Crowley, and R. M. Steinman, Dendritic cells pulsed with protein antigens in vitro can prime antigen-specific, MHC-restricted T cells in situ, *J. Exp. Med.* **172**, 631-640 (1990).
37. K. Inaba, S. Turley, T. Iyoda, F. Yamaide, S. Shimoyama, C. Reis e Sousa, R. N. Germain, I. Mellman, and R. M. Steinman, The formation of immunogenic MHC class II- peptide ligands in lysosomal compartments of dendritic cells is regulated by inflammatory stimuli., *J. Exp. Med.* **191**, 927-936 (2000).
38. S. J. Turley, K. Inaba, W. S. Garrett, M. Ebersold, J. Untermaehrer, R. M. Steinman, and I. Mellman, Transport of peptide-MHC class II complexes in developing dendritic cells, *Science*. **288**, 522-527 (2000).
39. M. Cella, A. Engering, V. Pinet, J. Pieters, and A. Lanzavecchia, Inflammatory stimuli induce accumulation of MHC class II complexes on dendritic cells, *Nature*. **388**, 782-787 (1997).
40. W. S. Garrett, L. M. Chen, R. Kroschewski, M. Ebersold, S. Turley, S. Trombetta, J. E. Galan, and I. Mellman, Developmental control of endocytosis in dendritic cells by Cdc42, *Cell*. **102**, 325-334 (2000).
41. P. Pierre, S. J. Turley, E. Gatti, M. Hull, J. Meltzer, A. Mirza, K. Inaba, R. M. Steinman, and I. Mellman, Developmental regulation of MHC class II transport in mouse dendritic cells, *Nature*. **388**, 787-792 (1997).
42. E. S. Trombetta, M. Ebersold, W. Garrett, M. Pypaert, and I. Mellman, Activation of lysosomal function during dendritic cell maturation, *Science*. **299**, 1400-1403 (2003).
43. K. Inaba, M. Pack, M. Inaba, H. Sakuta, F. Isdell, and R. M. Steinman, High levels of a major histocompatibility complex II - self peptide complex on dendritic cells from lymph node, *J. Exp. Med.* **186**, 665-672 (1997).
44. K. Liu, T. Iyoda, M. Saternus, K. Kimura, K. Inaba, and R. M. Steinman, Immune tolerance after delivery of dying cells to dendritic cells in situ., *J. Exp. Med.* **196**, 1091-1097 (2002).
45. M. K. Brimnes, L. Bonifaz, R. M. Steinman, and T. M. Moran, Influenza virus-induced dendritic cell maturation is associated with the induction of strong T cell immunity to a coadministered, normally nonimmunogenic protein, *J. Exp. Med.* **198**, 133-144 (2003).
46. L. C. Bonifaz, D. P. Bonnyay, A. Charalambous, D. I. Darguste, S. Fujii, H. Soares, M. K. Brimnes, B. Moltedo, T. M. Moran, and R. M. Steinman, In vivo targeting of antigens to the DEC-205 receptor on maturing dendritic cells improves T cell vaccination, *J. Exp. Med.* **199**, 815-824 (2004).
47. S. Fujii, K. Liu, C. Smith, A. J. Bonito, and R. M. Steinman, The linkage of innate to adaptive immunity via maturing dendritic cells in vivo requires CD40 ligation in addition to antigen presentation and CD80/86 costimulation., *Submitted*. (2004).
48. J. den Haan, S. Lehar, and M. Bevan, $CD8^+$ but not $CD8^-$ dendritic cells cross-prime cytotoxic T cells in vivo, *J. Exp. Med.* **192**, 1685-1696 (2000).
49. S. Jung, D. Unutmaz, P. Wong, G.-I. Sano, K. De los Santos, T. Sparwasser, S. Wu, S. Vuthoori, K. Ko, F. Zavala, E. G. Pamer, D. R. Littman, and R. A. Lang, In vivo depletion of $CD11c^+$ dendritic cells abrogation priming of $CD8^+$ T cells by exogenous cell-associated antigens., *Immunity*. **17**, 211-220 (2002).
50. W. R. Heath, and F. R. Carbone, Cross-presentation in viral immunity and self tolerance, *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* **1**, 126-134 (2001).
51. S. Amigorena, Fcg receptors and cross-presentation in dendritic cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **195**, F1-3 (2002).
52. A. Regnault, D. Lankar, V. Lacabanne, A. Rodriguez, C. Thery, M. Rescigno, T. Saito, S. Verbeek, C. Bonnerot, P. Ricciardi-Castagnoli, and S. Amigorena, Fcg receptor-mediated induction of dendritic cell maturation and major histocompatibility complex class I-restricted antigen presentation after immune complex internalization, *J. Exp. Med.* **189**, 371-380 (1999).
53. T. Iyoda, S. Shimoyama, K. Liu, Y. Omatsu, Y. Maeda, K. Takahara, Y. Akiyama, R. M. Steinman, and K. Inaba, The $CD8^+$ dendritic cell subset selectively endocytoses dying cells in culture and in vivo, *J. Exp. Med.* **195**, 1289-1302 (2002).
54. P. Guermonprez, L. Saveanu, M. Kleijmeer, J. Davoust, P. Van Endert, and S. Amigorena, ER-phagosome fusion defines an MHC class I cross-presentation compartment in dendritic cells, *Nature*. **425**, 397-402 (2003).
55. M. Houde, S. Bertholet, E. Gagnon, S. Brunet, G. Goyette, A. Laplante, M. F. Princiotta, P. Thibault, D. Sacks, and M. Desjardins, Phagosomes are competent organelles for antigen cross-presentation, *Nature*. **425**, 402-406 (2003).
56. W. J. Swiggard, A. Mirza, M. C. Nussenzweig, and R. M. Steinman, DEC-205, a 205 kDa protein abundant on mouse dendritic cells and thymic epithelium that is detected by the monoclonal antibody NLDC-145: Purification, characterization and N-terminal amino acid sequence, *Cell. Immunol.* **165**, 302-311 (1995).
57. W. Jiang, W. J. Swiggard, C. Heufler, M. Peng, A. Mirza, R. M. Steinman, and M. C. Nussenzweig, The receptor DEC-205 expressed by dendritic cells and thymic epithelial cells is involved in antigen processing, *Nature*. **375**, 151-155 (1995).
58. K. Mahnke, M. Guo, S. Lee, H. Sepulveda, S. L. Swain, M. Nussenzweig, and R. M. Steinman, The dendritic cell receptor for endocytosis, DEC-205, can recycle and enhance antigen presentation via major histocompatibility complex class II-positive lysosomal compartments, *J. Cell Biol.* **151**, 673-683 (2000).

59. S. A. Linehan, L. Martinez-Pomares, P. D. Stahl, and S. Gordon, Mannose receptor and its putative ligands in normal murine lymphoid and nonlymphoid organs: in situ expression of mannose receptor by selected macrophages, endothelial cells, perivascular microglia, and mesangial cells, but not dendritic cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **189**, 1961-1972 (1999).
60. M. Guo, S. Gong, S. Maric, Z. Misulovin, M. Pack, K. Mahnke, M. Nussenzweig, and R. M. Steinman, A monoclonal antibody to the DEC-205 endocytosis receptor on human dendritic cells, *Hum. Immunol.* **61**, 729-738 (2000).
61. M. W. Moore, F. R. Carbone, and M. J. Bevan, Introduction of soluble protein into the class I pathway of antigen processing and presentation, *Cell.* **54**, 777-785 (1988).
62. C. W. Pugh, G. G. MacPherson, and H. W. Steer, Characterization of nonlymphoid cells derived from rat peripheral lymph, *J. Exp. Med.* **157**, 1758-1779 (1983).
63. F.-P. Huang, N. Platt, M. Wykes, J. R. Major, T. J. Powell, C. D. Jenkins, and G. G. MacPherson, A discrete subpopulation of dendritic cells transports apoptotic intestinal epithelial cells to T cell areas of mesenteric lymph nodes, *J. Exp. Med.* **191**, 435-442 (2000).
64. C. Scheinecker, R. McHugh, E. M. Shevach, and R. N. Germain, Constitutive presentation of a natural tissue autoantigen exclusively by dendritic cells in the draining lymph node, *J. Exp. Med.* **196**, 1079-1090 (2002).
65. G. T. Belz, G. M. N. Behrens, C. M. Smith, J. F. A. P. Miller, C. Jones, K. Lejon, C. G. Fathman, S. N. Mueller, K. Shortman, F. R. Carbone, and W. R. Heath, The CD8a$^+$ dendritic cell is responsible for inducing peripheral self-tolerance to tissue-associated antigens, *J. Exp. Med.* **196**, 1099-1104 (2002).
66. S. Turley, L. Poirot, M. Hattori, C. Benoist, and D. Mathis, Physiological b cell death triggers priming of self-reactive T cells by dendritic cells in a type-1 diabetes model, *J. Exp. Med.* **198**, 1527-1537 (2003).
67. K. Y. Vermaelen, I. Carro-Muino, B. N. Lambrecht, and R. A. Pauwels, Specific migratory dendritic cells rapidly transport antigen from the airways to the thoracic lymph nodes, *J. Exp. Med.* **193**, 51-60 (2001).
68. J. Cui, T. Shin, T. Kawano, H. Sato, E. Kondo, I. Toura, Y. Kaneko, H. Koseki, M. Kanno, and M. Taniguchi, Requirement for V_a14 NKT cells in IL-12-mediated rejection of tumors, *Science.* **278**, 1623-1626 (1997).
69. T. Kawano, J. Cui, Y. Koezuka, I. Toura, Y. Kaneko, K. Motoki, H. Ueno, R. Nakagawa, H. Sato, E. Kondo, H. Koseki, and M. Taniguchi, CD1d-restricted and TCR-mediated activation of Va14 NKT cells by glycosylceramides, *Science.* **278**, 1626-1629 (1997).
70. G. Gonzalez-Aseguinolaza, L. Van Kaer, C. C. Bergmann, J. M. Wilson, J. Schmieg, M. Kronenberg, T. Nakayama, M. Taniguchi, Y. Koezuka, and M. Tsuji, Natural killer T cell ligand a-galactosylceramide enhances protective immunity induced by malaria vaccines, *J. Exp. Med.* **195**, 617-624 (2002).
71. C. Caux, C. Massacrier, B. Vanbervliet, B. Dubois, C. Van Kooten, I. Durand, and J. Banchereau, Activation of human dendritic cells through CD40 cross-linking, *J. Exp. Med.* **180**, 1263-1272 (1994).
72. L. Flores-Romo, P. Bjorck, V. Duvert, C. Van Kooten, S. Saeland, and J. Banchereau, CD40 ligation on human CD34$^+$ hematopoietic progenitors induces their proliferation and differentiation into functional dendritic cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **185**, 341-349 (1997).
73. J. P. Ridge, F. Di Rosa, and P. Matzinger, A conditioned dendritic cell can be a temporal bridge between a CD4$^+$ T helper and a T-killer cell, *Nature.* **393**, 474-478 (1998).
74. S. R. M. Bennett, F. R. Carbone, F. Karamalis, R. A. Flavell, J. F. A. P. Miller, and W. R. Heath, Help for cytotoxic-T-cell responses is mediated by CD40 signalling, *Nature.* **393**, 478-480 (1998).
75. S. P. Schoenberger, R. E. M. Toes, E. I. H. van der Voort, R. Offringa, and C. J. M. Melief, T-cell help for cytotoxic T lymphocytes is mediated by CD40-CD40L interactions, *Nature.* **393**, 480-483 (1998).
76. R. M. Steinman, S. Turley, I. Mellman, and K. Inaba, The induction of tolerance by dendritic cells that have captured apoptotic cells, *J. Exp. Med.* **191**, 411-416 (2000).
77. R. M. Steinman, and M. C. Nussenzweig, Avoiding horror autotoxicus: the importance of dendritic cells in peripheral T cell tolerance, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **99**, 351-358 (2002).
78. G. Jego, A. K. Palucka, J. P. Blanck, C. Chalouni, V. Pascual, and J. Banchereau, Plasmacytoid dendritic cells induce plasma cell differentiation through type I interferon and interleukin 6, *Immunity.* **19**, 225-234 (2003).
79. M. Balazs, F. Martin, T. Zhou, and J. F. Kearney, Blood dendritic cells interact with splenic marginal zone B cells to initiate T-independent immune responses, *Immunity.* **17**, 341-352 (2002).
80. H. C. Probst, J. Lagnel, G. Kollias, and M. van den Broek, Inducible transgenic mice reveal resting dendritic cells as potent inducers of CD8$^+$ T cell tolerance, *Immunity.* **18**, 713-720 (2003).

13

THE MANNOSE-BINDING LECTIN: AN INFECTION SUSCEPTIBILITY GENE

R. Alan Ezekowitz, Lei Shi, Iain Fraser, and Kazue Takahashi

1. INTRODUCTION

A critical but unanswered question is what defines each individual's pre-morbid susceptibility to infection? We propose that individuals must have an "immune haplotype" that shapes their response to infectious agents. Infection is a balance between the intrinsic virulence of the infectious agent and the host defenses. Recent viral outbreaks of SARS and influenza serve to illustrate this point as these viruses cause severe disease in certain individuals, yet there are others in whom the same infectious challenge results in minimal symptoms. On the other hand it might be that those self same people who are resistance to one particular viral infection might be susceptible to other infection challenges. Similar rules can apply to susceptibility to bacterial infections.

We hypothesize that individual variations in a set number of genes that regulate both innate and adaptive immune responses might explain this individual variation in response to an infectious challenge. The mannose-binding lectin (MBL) serves as a broad first line host defense molecule and presents an interesting opportunity to explore this hypothesis further. MBL appears to be a prototypic pattern recognition molecule that is able to recognize the molecular patterns that decorate a wide range of microorganisms. Infectious agents that are recognized by MBL include certain Gram positive and Gram negative bacteria, yeast, parasites, mycobacteria, and viruses [1-3]. The idea that a relative lack of MBL might predispose the host to infection was based on the description of an MBL-dependent opsonic defect in human serum that correlated with a phenotype of recurrent infection [4]. These patients were found to have one of three substitution single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in exon 1 of the MBL gene that disrupt the collagen helix [5]. It appears that the disordered collagen chain acts a dominant negative fasion, resulting in a decrease in circulating levels of MBL that do not activate complement. More detailed analysis of the MBL gene has revealed at least ten distinct MBL

Laboratory of Developmental Immunology, Department of Pediatrics, Harvard Medical School, Massachusetts General Hospital, 55 Fruit Street, GRJ1402 Boston, MA 02114.

haplotypes in humans, four of which (LYPB, LYQC, HYPD and LXPA) dictate low serum levels [6]. Interestingly, there is a high rate of haplotype variation in various human populations with a range of heterozygosity from 15% in Caucasians to 30% in certain African populations [7,8].

A basic function of innate immunity is a concerted response by numerous molecules and effector cells that conspire to restrict the initial spread of an infectious focus. First line host defense molecules include antimicrobial peptides, natural antibodies, complement proteins, lipopolysaccharide binding protein (LBP), soluble receptors and collectins [9-11]. The collectins are multimeric lectin-containing molecules with collagen stalks that include the pulmonary surfactant proteins-A and -D, conglutinin, CL-43, CL-46, and MBL [1,12-14].

Importantly, MBL seems to be able to distinguish species self or altered self from non-self though it is able to recognize dying cells [15]. The specificity that allows the distinction of surfaces of virally infected cells and transformed cells from normal host cells depends on both fine recognition of molecular micro patterns, and on the spatial geometry of macro pattern of these molecules on the surface of the cell. The cognate ligands that are recognized by MBL appears to be dictated by the spatial orientation of the carbohydrate binding domains and the differences in geometry of the sugars that adorn microorganisms versus host glycoproteins exposed on viable cells. MBL is able to activate complement via a novel mechanism that co-opts the mannose-binding lectin associated serine protease (MASP) [16,17]. There is a family of three related MASP genes, but it is MASP-2 that utilizes the classical pathway convertase to cleave the third complement component (C3) [17]. MBL therefore activates complement in an antibody independent manner. The analogy of MBL to antibodies extends MBL's function as an opsonin [18-20].

2. MBL NULL MICE ARE HIGHLY SUSCEPTIBLE TO INFECTION WITH *STAPHLYOCOCCUS AUREUS*

In order to provide formal proof that MBL is indeed important in host defense *in vivo*, we set out to create a mouse model of MBL deficiency. Humans and new world monkeys have a single MBL gene, whereas rodents have two homologous forms of MBL that are designated MBL-A and MBL-C, the respective gene products of the *mbl1* and *mbl2* genes, and are 50% homologous [21-23]. These two homologues proteins have distinct and overlapping binding specificities, are found predominantly in serum, and are able to bind MASPs to activate complement [23-25]. The relative physiological role of these two proteins *in vivo* has not been clearly defined. In order to address some of these questions, we created MBL-A and MBL-C double KO (MBL null) mice. We verified that the MBL null mice lack MBL in serum and therefore have a nonfunctional MBL complement pathway. We chose to infect these mice with *S. aureus*, as this organism is a significant cause of human infection worldwide. The emergence of widespread antibiotic resistance to *S. aureus* poses new therapeutic challenges and so identification of host factors that play a role in resistance to infection with this Gram-positive infection is of great interest. We found that (1) all MBL null mice died two days after i.v. inoculation of *S. aureus* compared with 55% survival of wild type mice; (2) pretreatment of the mice with recombinant MBL reversed the phenotype; (3) there were significantly more bacteria in the blood of MBL mice compared to wild type mice at 24 hours; (4) the viscera of MBL null mice accumulated significantly more bacteria than wild type mice

24 hours post infection; (5) there was a decrease in phagocytosis of bacteria in blood and peritoneal cavity in MBL null mice. In contrast to intravenous infection, i.p. inoculation of *S. aureus* did not result in enhanced infectious complications in MBL null mice compared with wild type mice. However, when the MBL mice were rendered neutropenic, these neutropenic MBL null mice displayed enhanced bacterial accumulation in organs and had persistent bacteremia 10 days post inoculation.

3. CONCLUSIONS

MBL appears to fulfill the criteria as an important host defense molecule against initial infection with *S. aureus*. The animal data indicate that MBL acts in serum as an opsonin. The effector mechanism appears to be mediated in part by MBL-dependent complement lysis of bacteria and in part, via MBL-dependent phagocytosis by leukocytes. Based on these studies, it is not clear whether MBL dependent clearance of *S. aureus* is mediated via complement receptors or MBL (collectin) receptors. Unpublished observations from our laboratory indicate that there is indeed an MBL-dependent, complement independent clearance mechanism. What remains an open question is the consequence of MBL dependent clearance versus clearance via complement receptors.

It thus appears that MBL is part of the initial response to infection, which is a complex interaction between a variety of pattern recognition molecules that trigger the downstream physiological cascades of complement, clotting, cytokine, and chemokine release and interface with effectors cells such as neutrophils [26,27]. Furthermore, the effector action of MBL appears intimately tied to circulating phagocytes. Neutrophils and monocytes express complement receptors, MBL receptors (collectin receptors) [28,29] and the receptor for lipopolysaccharide binding protein (LBP) [30]. Wright and colleagues linked humoral and cellular interactions and drew attention to the importance of co-operative interactions between neutrophils and opsonins in combating infection [31,32]. More recent examples have exploited the use of null animals to explore such interactions and are germane to this present study, including the interaction of LBP and neutrophils in resistance to intraperitoneal *Salmonella* infection [33,34]. A similar synergistic interaction between neutrophils and MBL is suggested by clinical observations that chemotherapy-induced neutropenic patients with haplotypes that specify low serum MBL levels [14,35,36] appear more susceptible to infection [37]. These clinical observations together with *in vitro* studies suggest that MBL plays a key role as an ante-antibody in first line host defense [38,39] and supports a role for MBL in combating infection *in vivo*.

What has not been clearly determined is the role of MBL against a variety of pathogens. Does MBL play a role against other Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, mycobacteria and viruses *in vivo*? What is the relative role of MBL, complement and antibody in first line host defense? Finally, what is the real selective pressure for MBL haplotypes that specify low levels of MBL in humans? One speculation is that low levels of MBL might be protective against infection with intracellular pathogens like tuberculosis and malaria. While there might be some merit in this suggestion, it seems that it might well be that low MBL levels decrease the activity of the MBL complement pathway, resulting in a response that is less proinflammatory, and therefore less injurious to the host. Accordingly, low MBL levels might be protective against reperfusion injury. Overall, we are entering an exciting new chapter in this saga.

4. REFERENCES

1. Fraser, I.P., H. Koziel, and R.A. Ezekowitz. 1998. The serum mannose-binding protein and the macrophage mannose receptor are pattern recognition molecules that link innate and adaptive immunity. *Semin Immunol* 10:363-372.
2. Epstein, J., Q. Eichbaum, S. Sheriff, and R.A.B. Ezekowitz. 1996. The collectins in innate immunity. *Curr Op Immunol.* 8:29-35.
3. Eisen, D.P., and R.M. Minchinton. 2003. Impact of mannose-binding lectin on susceptibility to infectious diseases. *Clin Infect Dis* 37:1496-1505.
4. Super, M., S. Thiel, J. Lu, R.J. Levinsky, and M.W. Turner. 1989. Association of low levels of mannan-binding protein with a common defect of opsonisation. *Lancet* 2:1236-1239.
5. Sumiya, M., M. Super, P. Tabona, R.J. Levinsky, T. Arai, M.W. Turner, J.A. Summerfield, S. Thiel, and J. Lu. 1991. Molecular basis of opsonic defect in immunodeficient children. *Lancet* 337:1569-1570.
6. Madsen, H.O., M.L. Satz, B. Hogh, A. Svejgaard, and P. Garred. 1998. Different molecular events result in low protein levels of mannan-binding lectin in populations from southeast Africa and South America. *J Immunol* 161:3169-3175.
7. Super, M., S.D. Gillies, S. Foley, K. Sastry, J.E. Schweinle, V.J. Silverman, and R.A. Ezekowitz. 1992. Distinct and overlapping functions of allelic forms of human mannose binding protein. *Nat Genet* 2:50-55.
8. Madsen, H.O., P. Garred, S. Thiel, J.A. Kurtzhals, L.U. Lamm, L.P. Ryder, and A. Svejgaard. 1995. Interplay between promoter and structural gene variants control basal serum level of mannan-binding protein. *J Immunol* 155:3013-3020.
9. Hoffmann, J.A., F.C. Kafatos, C.A. Janeway, and R.A. Ezekowitz. 1999. Phylogenetic perspectives in innate immunity. *Science* 284:1313-1318.
10. Tobias, P.S., and R.J. Ulevitch. 1994. Lipopolysaccharide-binding protein and CD14 in the lipopolysaccharide-dependent activation of cells. *Chest* 105:48s-50s.
11. Lu, J., C. Teh, U. Kishore, and K.B. Reid. 2002. Collectins and ficolins: sugar pattern recognition molecules of the mammalian innate immune system. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1572:387-400.
12. Holmskov, U., S. Thiel, and J.C. Jensenius. 2003. Collections and ficolins: humoral lectins of the innate immune defense. *Annu Rev Immunol* 21:547-578.
13. Holmskov, U., R. Malhotra, R.B. Sim, and J.C. Jensenius. 1994. Collectins: collagenous C-type lectins of the innate immune defense system. *Immunology Today* 15:67-74.
14. Turner, M.W., and R.M. Hamvas. 2000. Mannose-binding lectin: structure, function, genetics and disease associations. *Rev Immunogenet* 2:305-322.
15. Ogden, C.A., A. deCathelineau, P.R. Hoffmann, D. Bratton, B. Ghebrehiwet, V.A. Fadok, and P.M. Henson. 2001. C1q and mannose binding lectin engagement of cell surface calreticulin and cd91 initiates macropinocytosis and uptake of apoptotic cells. *J Exp Med* 194:781-796.
16. Matsushita, M., and T. Fujita. 1992. Activation of the classical complement pathway by mannose-binding protein in association with a novel C1s-like serine protease. *J Exp Med* 176:1497-1502.
17. Thiel, S., T. Vorup-Jensen, C.M. Stover, W. Schwaeble, S.B. Laursen, K. Poulsen, A.C. Willis, P. Eggleton, S. Hansen, U. Holmskov, K.B. Reid, and J.C. Jensenius. 1997. A second serine protease associated with mannan-binding lectin that activates complement. *Nature* 386:506-510.
18. Kuzu, I., R. Bircknell, A.L. Harris, M. Jones, K.C. Gatter, and D.Y. Mason. 1992. Heterogeneity of vascular endothelial cells with relevance to diagnosis of vascular tumors. *Journal of Clinical Pathology* 45:143-148.
19. Neth, O., D.L. Jack, M. Johnson, N.J. Klein, and M.W. Turner. 2002. Enhancement of Complement Activation and Opsonophagocytosis by Complexes of Mannose-Binding Lectin with Mannose-Binding Lectin-Associated Serine Protease After Binding to Staphylococcus aureus. *J Immunol* 169:4430-4436.
20. Super, M., R.J. Levinsky, M.W. Turner, S. Thiel, and J. Lu. 1990. Association of low levels of mannan-binding protein with a common defect of opsonisation. *Clin Exp Immunol* 79:144-150.
21. Mogues, T., T. Ota, A.I. Tauber, and K.N. Sastry. 1996. Characterization of two mannose-binding protein cDNAs from rhesus monkey (Macaca mulatta): structure and evolutionary implications. *Glycobiol* 6:543-540.
22. Laursen, S.B., T.S. Dalgaard, S. Thiel, B.L. Lim, T.V. Jensen, H.R. Juul-Madsen, A. Takahashi, T. Hamana, M. Kawakami, and J.C. Jensenius. 1998. Cloning and sequencing of a cDNA encoding chicken mannan-binding lectin (MBL) and comparison with mammalian analogues. *Immunology* 93:421-430.
23. Hansen, S., S. Thiel, A. Willis, U. Holmskov, and J.C. Jensenius. 2000. Purification and characterization of two mannan-binding lectins from mouse serum. *J Immunol* 164:2610-2618.
24. Lee, R.T., Y. Ichikawa, M. Fay, K. Drickamer, M.C. Shao, and Y.C. Lee. 1991. Ligand-binding characteristics of rat serum-type mannose-binding protein (MBP-A). Homology of binding site architecture with mammalian and chicken hepatic lectins. *J Biol Chem* 266:4810-4815.

25. Ng, K.K., K. Drickamer, and W.I. Weis. 1996. Structural analysis of monosaccharide recognition by rat liver mannose-binding protein. *J Biol Chem* 271:663-674.
26. Matsukawa, A., C.M. Hogaboam, N.W. Lukacs, P.M. Lincoln, H.L. Evanoff, and S.L. Kunkel. 2000. Pivotal role of the CC chemokine, macrophage-derived chemokine, in the innate immune response. *J Immunol* 164:5362-5368.
27. Chinnaiyan, A.M., M. Huber-Lang, C. Kumar-Sinha, T.R. Barrette, S. Shankar-Sinha, V.J. Sarma, V.A. Padgaonkar, and P.A. Ward. 2001. Molecular signatures of sepsis: multiorgan gene expression profiles of systemic inflammation. *Am J Pathol* 159:1199-1209.
28. Holmskov, U.L. 2000. Collectins and collectin receptors in innate immunity. *APMIS Suppl* 100:1-59.
29. Wright, J.R. 1997. Immunomodulatory functions of surfactant. *Physiol Rev* 77:931-962.
30. Wright, S.D., R.A. Ramons, P.S. Tobias, R.J. Ulevitch, and J.C. Mathison. 1990. CD14 serves as the cellular receptor for complexes of lipopolysaccharide with lipopolysaccharide binding protein. *Science* 249:1431-1433.
31. Wright, A.E., and S.R. Douglas. 1904. Opsonins. *Proc Roy Soc Ser* 73:128-142.
32. Silverstein, A.M. 2003. Cellular versus humoral immunology: a century-long dispute. *Nat Immunol* 4:425-428.
33. Yang, K.K., B.G. Dorner, U. Merkel, B. Ryffel, C. Schutt, D. Golenbock, M.W. Freeman, R.S. Jack, J. Fierer, M.A. Swancutt, and D. Heumann. 2002. Neutrophil influx in response to a peritoneal infection with Salmonella is delayed in lipopolysaccharide-binding protein or CD14-deficient mice. *J Immunol* 169:4475-4480.
34. Fierer, J., M.A. Swancutt, D. Heumann, and D. Golenbock. 2002. The role of lipopolysaccharide binding protein in resistance to Salmonella infections in mice. *J Immunol* 168:6396-6403.
35. Garred, P., H.O. Madsen, J.A. Kurtzhals, L.U. Lamm, S. Thiel, A.S. Hey, and A. Svejgaard. 1992. Diallelic polymorphism may explain variations of the blood concentration of mannan-binding protein in Eskimos, but not in black Africans. *Eur J Immunogenet* 19:403-412.
36. Summerfield, J.A., M. Sumiya, M. Levin, and M.W. Turner. 1997. Mannose-binding protein gene mutations are associated with childhood infection in a consecutive hospital series. *Br Med J* 314:1229-1232.
37. Peterslund, N.A., C. Koch, J.C. Jensenius, and S. Thiel. 2001. Association between deficiency of mannose-binding lectin and severe infections after chemotherapy. *Lancet* 358:637-638.
38. Turner, M.W. 1998. Mannose-binding lectin (MBL) in health and disease. *Immunobiology* 199:327-339.
39. Ezekowitz, R.A.B. 1991. Ante-antibody immunity. *Curr Biol* 1:60-62.

14

IMMUNOTHERAPY VIA DENDRITIC CELLS

A. Karolina Palucka, Beatrice Laupeze, Caroline Aspord, Hiroaki Saito, Gaetan Jego, Joseph Fay, Sophie Paczesny, Virginia Pascual and Jacques Banchereau[1]

1. SUMMARY

The immune system evolved to protect us from microbes. The antigen (Ag)-nonspecific innate immunity and Ag-specific adaptive immunity synergize to eradicate the invading pathogen through cells, such as dendritic cells (DCZ7) and lymphocytes, and through their effector proteins including antimicrobial peptides, complement, and antibodies. Its intrinsic complexity renders the immune system prone to dysfunction including cancer, autoimmunity, chronic inflammation and allergy. DCs are unique in their capacity to induce and regulate immune responses and are therefore attractive candidates for immunotherapy. However, DCs consist of distinct subsets with common as well as unique functions that lead to distinct types of immune responses. Therefore, understanding DC heterogeneity and their role in immunopathology is critical to design better strategies for immunotherapy. Indeed, what we learn from studying autoimmunity will help us induce strong vaccine specific immunity, either protective, as in the case of microbes, or therapeutic, as in the case of tumors.

2. DENDRITIC CELLS

T and B cells are under the control of DCs [1-3] which thereby control immunity and tolerance (reviewed in [4-6]). The first 25 years of DC research mostly focused on how they turn on immunity particularly following microbial encounter. Immature, antigen-capturing mDCs sitting in peripheral tissues sense pathogens, tissue necrosis, and local inflammation. These signals induce DCs to undergo a maturation process while migrating through the afferent lymphatics into the T cell areas of draining lymph nodes. There, they present processed Ags to T cells via both classical (MHC class I and class II) and non-classical (CD1 family) antigen presenting molecules [1]. This results in T cell

[1] Baylor Institute for Immunology Research, Dallas, TX. Correspondence to A. Karolina Palucka, M.D., Ph.D.: karolinp@baylorhealth.edu, or Jacques Banchereau, Ph.D.: jacquesb@baylorhealth.edu, Baylor Institute for Immunology Research, 3434 Live Oak, Dallas, TX 75204. Phone: (1) 2148207450; Fax: (1) 2148204813.

Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation X
Edited by Gupta *et al.*, Springer, 2005

proliferation and differentiation into helper and effector cells with unique function and cytokine profiles. DCs also activate B cells, NK cells and NK T cells. Mature, antigen-loaded DCs are geared towards the launching of antigen-specific immunity [7, 8] though recent data indicate that mature DCs also activate regulatory T cells. Immature (non-activated) DCs capture and present self-antigens (e.g. apoptotic cells) to T cells [9, 10], which in the absence of appropriate costimulation leads to tolerance [11, 12]. How this complex balance is maintained in health and broken in autoimmunity is now starting to be understood.

Paul Langerhans first saw DCs in 1868, within the skin epithelium. Ralph Steinman, identified in 1973 a rare cell type from mouse spleen that is involved in the induction of immune responses. For nearly 20 years, DCs had to be painstakingly isolated from tissues and the progress was slow. In 1992, culture systems were discovered that produced large amounts of mouse [13] and human DCs [14, 15] thereby accelerating the study of DCs. Besides their rarity, the complexity of DCs lies in two other aspects: different subsets and different stages of maturation. Two major DC pathways are thought to exist [1, 16] (Fig. 1). A myeloid pathway, which generates two subsets, Langerhans cells (LCs), found in stratified epithelia such as skin and interstitial DCs (intDCs), found in all other tissues [17, 18]. These subsets can produce large amounts of IL-12. Another pathway includes plasmacytoid DCs (pDCs), which secrete, upon viral encounter, within a few hours large amounts of Type I Interferon, an antiviral cytokine [19]. Therefore, pDCs represent a first barrier to the expansion of intruding viruses thus acting as member of the innate immunity. Importantly these cells subsequently differentiate into DCs able to induce immune responses thus acting as members of adaptive immunity.

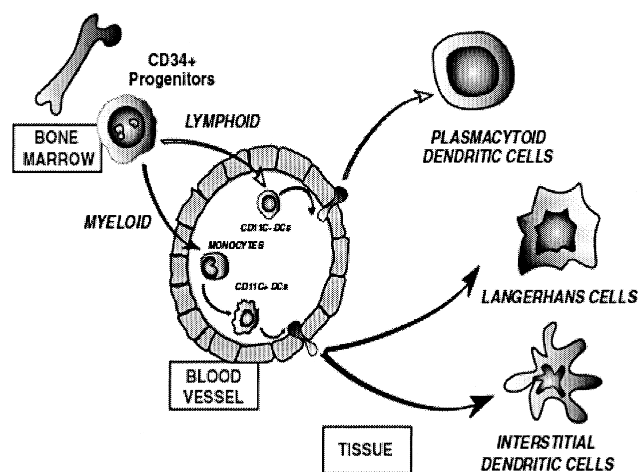


Figure 1: Subsets of human dendritic cells.

Circulating DCs precursors represent less than 1% of white blood cells [1, 16]. These precursors replenish the immature DCs that sit within tissues and are endowed with mechanisms to capture invading microbes such as receptor mediated endocytosis (lectins, Fc receptors), macropinocytosis and phagocytosis. Minute amounts of captured antigens are processed into small peptides while DCs move towards the draining secondary lymphoid organs. There, the DCs present the peptides to T cells and complete their

maturation after receiving signals from the antigen-specific T cells [20]. Each of the three DC subsets express a unique lectin. LCs express Langerin, critical to the formation of Birbeck granules [21]. The intDCs express DC-SIGN that binds 1) ICAM-1 on T cells facilitating MHC-peptide complex recognition 2) ICAM-3 expressed on endothelial cells therefore allowing transmigration of DCs into tissues and 3) HIV protein (GP120) among other microbial antigen/molecules [22, 23]. pDCs express another lectin called BDCA2 [24]. Toll receptors are also differentially expressed. For instance Toll 9 (a receptor for demethylated DNA) is expressed only by pDCs [25]. Such differential expression of molecules that are efficient anchors for pathogens, may have a capital influence on the type of immune response generated against a given microbe.

3. ENHANCING IMMUNITY VIA DCs

The concept of cancer immunotherapy has evolved in the past decade owing to the molecular identification of human cancer antigens [26, 27]. These therapeutic approaches were further facilitated through identification of in vitro culture methods allowing generation of large numbers of DCs on which the cancer antigens can be presented to T cells. Studies in mice have shown that injection of DCs loaded with tumor associated antigens (TAAs) leads to antitumor immune responses resulting in tumor rejection. Early trials in humans have shown the safety of TAA-loaded DCs as well as some clinical and immune responses. Recent studies concentrated on establishing maximal immune responses to control antigens and tumor antigens. Many issues remain to be addressed before DC therapy becomes an integral part of active immunotherapy (Fig. 2). These include the choice of the DC subset to be administered and the way to generate it. We have vaccinated 18 HLA A*0201$^+$ patients with metastatic melanoma with autologous CD34+ HPC derived DCs, that contain two subsets i.e. Langerhans cells and Interstitial DCs. DCs were pulsed with MelanA/MART-1, tyrosinase, MAGE-3 and gp100 peptides, as well as Flu-MP peptide and KLH as control Ags [28]. We found that vaccination with peptide-loaded CD34-DCs leads to expansion of i) melanoma-specific IFN-gamma producing CD8$^+$ T cells, and ii) melanoma-specific cytolytic CD8$^+$ T cell precursors that yield, upon single restimulation with peptide-pulsed DCs, cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) able to kill melanoma cells. The present results therefore justify the design of larger follow up studies to assess the immunological and clinical response to peptide-pulsed CD34-DC vaccines.

Another important parameter to establish is the dose and frequency of DC administration. Unlike traditional chemotherapy, the highest dose may not be yielding the best clinical response. Likewise, too frequent administration may result in activation induced cell death, resulting in elimination of T cells able to kill cancer cells. It is believed that optimal anti-tumor effects will be obtained with many vaccinations possibly over a lifelong schedule. A considerable object of research is the antigen loading. At present, DCs are mostly loaded with peptides from defined (tumor) antigens that bind to MHC Class I and II antigens. This presents numerous limitations such as i) the restriction to a given MHC type; ii) the limited number of TAAs, which restricts vaccination therapy to tumors for which many TAAs have been identified, for example melanoma, and iii) the limited repertoire of elicited immune effectors which may not allow eradication of the multiple tumor variants. Therefore, alternative strategies that provide both MHC class I and class II epitopes and lead to a diverse immune response involving many clones of CD4+ T cells and CTL are needed. These include: recombinant proteins, exosomes [29],

viral vectors [30], plasmid DNA, RNA transfection [31, 32], immune complexes [33] and, more recently, antibodies against DC surface molecules [34, 35]. Yet another way is to exploit the capacity of DC to present peptides from phagocytosed dead tumor cells on both MHC class I and II molecules, so called cross-priming [36, 10, 37, 38]. Indeed, we have demonstrated, using both prostate carcinoma and melanoma as model systems, that DCs loaded with killed allogeneic tumor cell lines can induce CD8+ T cells to differentiate into CTLs specific for shared tumor antigens [37, 38].

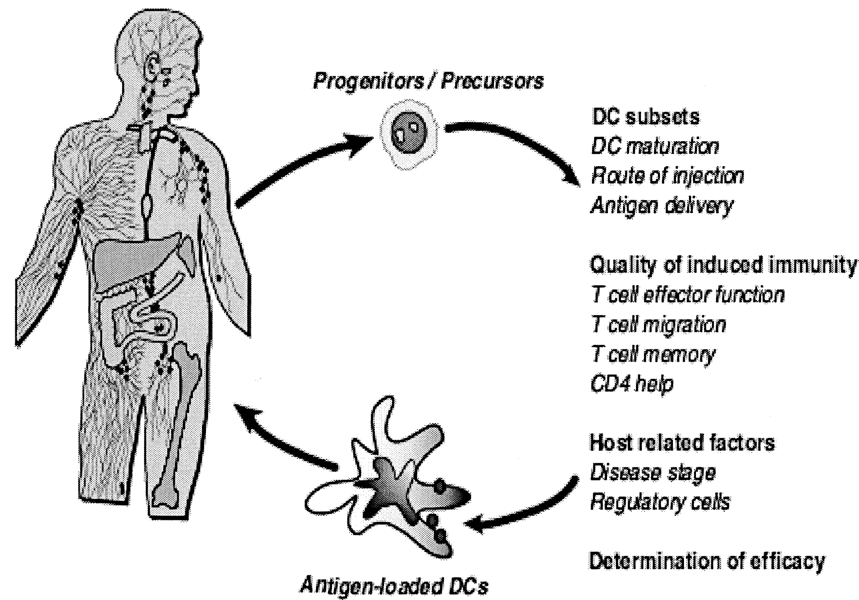


Figure 2: Parameters of dendritic cell vaccines.

4. TOLERANCE VIA DCs

Our body has evolved means to avoid the immune system attack on the components of self. Two mechanisms were created, central and peripheral tolerance both of which are controlled and maintained by DCs. Central tolerance occurs in thymus where newly generated T cells with a receptor that recognizes components exposed by mature thymic DCs are deleted [39-41]. There is evidence that both thymic epithelial cells as well as mature DCs in the thymus may be involved in this process [42, 43]. However, many self antigens may not access the thymus while other are expressed later in life. Upon activation, these autoreactive cells may lead to autoimmunity. Hence, the need for peripheral tolerance, which occurs in lymphoid organs by induction of T cell anergy, i.e. unresponsiveness, rather than deletion. The development of peripheral tolerance involves immature DCs [5]. These cells sitting within tissues capture the remains of cells that die in the process of physiological tissue turn-over. As there is no inflammation accompanying this process, the DCs remain immature and migrate towards the draining lymph nodes. These immature DCs, which lack costimulatory molecules, present the tissue antigens to autoreactive T cells, which in absence of costimulation, enter into a

state of anergy. Immature DCs may also control peripheral tolerance through induction and maintenance of regulatory T cells [44-48].

5. IFN-α BREAKS TOLERANCE: A NOVEL DC VACCINE

Breaking this anergic state, e.g. through increased availability of mature DCs, may result in autoimmunity. This concept is illustrated by our studies in patients suffering from the systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) [49]. IFN-alpha/beta plays a major role in SLE, a prototype autoimmune disease characterized by a break of tolerance to nuclear components. Until recently SLE has been viewed mainly as a B cell disease resulting from altered T/B cell interactions. The recognition of the fundamental role of immature DCs in the control of peripheral tolerance led to the hypothesis that SLE may be driven through unabated DC activation. CD14+ monocytes isolated from SLE patients blood, but not those from healthy individuals, act as DCs. Their activation is driven by circulating IFN-alpha that may come from one of the DC subsets, i.e., plasmacytoid DCs that infiltrate SLE skin lesions. The importance of IFN-alpha in SLE is further shown by the presence of IFN- alpha signature in the blood of all SLE patients and its extinction upon therapy with high dose steroids given to control disease flares. The excess IFN-alpha may also explain the hyperglobulinemia. Indeed, pDCs triggered with virus induce activated B cells to differentiate into plasma cells. Two pDCs cytokines act sequentially, with IFN- alpha/beta generating non-Ig secreting plasma blasts and IL-6 inducing their differentiation into Ig-secreting plasma cells. These plasma cells display the high levels of CD38 found on tissue plasma cells. Thus, pDCs are critical in generation of plasma cells and antibody responses (Fig. 3).

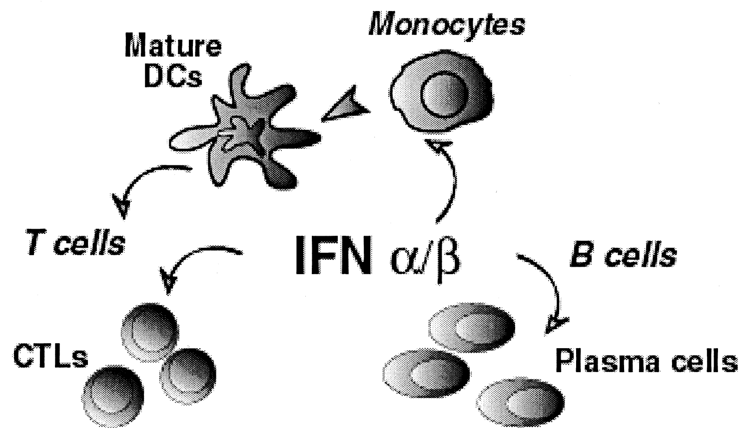


Figure 3: IFN alpha drives differentiation of immune effector cells including CTLs and plasma cells.

Importantly, SLE CD8⁺T cells appear to express higher levels of Granzymes and their numbers correlates with disease severity [Blanco, personal communication and our unpublished data]. Overexpression of effector molecules involved in cell lysis may not be restricted to CD8⁺T cells, as CD4⁺T cells from patients with active SLE show perforin overexpression as well [50]. Accordingly, IFN-DCs skew T cell differentiation into cytolytic phenotype with high levels of Granzyme and perforin expression. Thus, these DCs may be very efficient as vectors to enhance immunity either in cancer or infectious diseases. Indeed, our preliminary results suggest that IFN-DCs are more efficient than IL-4-DCs in cross-priming naive T cells against breast cancer antigens.

6. HuMOUSE: AN IN VIVO MODEL OF THE HUMAN IMMUNE SYSTEM

Understanding the specific functions of DC subsets and their interplay *in vivo* will be critical to understand the launching and modulation of immune responses. Hence, the need for pre-clinical models of the human immune system. Indeed, conclusions from studies in mice cannot be directly extrapolated to humans because of biological differences between species [51, 52]. SCID mice reconstituted with human cells represent interesting candidates for human disease models [53-55] and have been used for example in the evaluation of tumor metastasis [56], mechanisms of progression [57] as well as anti-tumor therapies (reviewed in [58]). However, many difficulties have been encountered. For example, grafting of PBMCs leads to rather limited immune reconstitution that may not allow potent priming of T cells. The grafting of human hematopoietic progenitor cells (HPC) [59, 60] improved reconstitution, particularly when fetal tissues co-engrafted with human thymus [61] or lymph node were used [62]. Yet, the complexity of the system limits its general applicability. The introduction of the NOD/SCID mice [63], improved engraftment of human cells [64, 65]. However, residual NK cell activity could interfere with the efficiency of engraftment [66] leading to development of mice with deletion of β2- macroglobulin [67, 68] or γ chain genes [69].

We surmised that many of the difficulties encountered in these models could be due to insufficient reconstitution of human DCs, a parameter that has not been extensively studied. Given the key role that DCs play in T cell homeostasis [42], DC reconstitution might facilitate human T lymphocyte reconstitution. Indeed, recent studies with ex vivo generated monocyte-derived DCs suggest their capacity to support CD4 T cell differentiation as well as humoral responses in vivo [70, 71]. However, these adoptive transfer models do not permit the evaluation of the interplay between DC subsets. We found that NOD/SCID mice engrafted with human CD34⁺ hematopoietic progenitors develop human myeloid and plasmacytoid DCs. Skin display immature DCs expressing Langerin while other tissues display interstitial DCs. Myeloid DCs from these mice induce proliferation of allogeneic CD4 T cells in vitro, and bone marrow human cells containing plasmacytoid DCs release IFN-α upon influenza virus exposure. Injection of influenza virus into reconstituted mice triggers IFN-α release and maturation of mDCs. Thus, these mice may provide a model to study the pathophysiology of human DC subsets in the context of microbial infection or cancer. Indeed, our preliminary studies demonstrate that these mice can be transplanted with tumors (the OncoHumouse) allowing in vivo analysis of tumor-DC interactions. Furthermore, a most recently published study shows the establishment of the full human immune system.

7. CONCLUSIONS

DCs are an attractive target for therapeutic manipulation of the immune system to enhance insufficient immune responses, in infectious diseases and cancer, or attenuate excessive immune responses, in allergy and autoimmunity. However, the complexity of the DC system brings about the necessity for their rational manipulation to achieve protective or therapeutic immunity.

8. REFERENCES

1. Banchereau, J., F. Briere, C. Caux, J. Davoust, S. Lebecque, Y. Liu, B. Pulendran, K. Palucka. 2000. Immunobiology of dendritic cells. *Ann Rev Immunol* 18:767.
2. Banchereau, J., R.M. Steinman. 1998. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature* 392:245-252.
3. Steinman, R.M. 1991. The dendritic cell system and its role in immunogenicity. *Annu Rev Immunol* 9:271-296.
4. Moser, M. 2003. Dendritic cells in immunity and tolerance-do they display opposite functions? *Immunity* 19:5-8.
5. Steinman, R.M., D. Hawiger, M.C. Nussenzweig. 2003. Tolerogenic dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 21:685-711.
6. Turley, S.J. 2002. Dendritic cells: inciting and inhibiting autoimmunity. *Curr Opin Immunol* 14:765-770.
7. Finkelman, F.D., A. Lees, R. Birnbaum, W.C. Gause, S.C. Morris. 1996. Dendritic cells can present antigen in vivo in a tolerogenic or immunogenic fashion. *J Immunol* 157:1406-1414.
8. Heath, W.R., F.R. Carbone. 2001. Cross-presentation, dendritic cells, tolerance and immunity. *Annu Rev Immunol* 19:47-64.
9. Albert, M.L., S.F. Pearce, L.M. Francisco, B. Sauter, P. Roy, R.L. Silverstein, N. Bhardwaj. 1998. Immature dendritic cells phagocytose apoptotic cells via alphavbeta5 and CD36, and cross-present antigens to cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med* 188:1359-1368.
10. Albert, M.L., B. Sauter, N. Bhardwaj. 1998. Dendritic cells acquire antigen from apoptotic cells and induce class I- restricted CTLs. *Nature* 392:86-89.
11. Huang, F.P., N. Platt, M. Wykes, J.R. Major, T.J. Powell, C.D. Jenkins, G.G. MacPherson. 2000. A discrete subpopulation of dendritic cells transports apoptotic intestinal epithelial cells to T cell areas of mesenteric lymph nodes. *J Exp Med* 191:435-444.
12. Steinman, R.M., S. Turley, I. Mellman, K. Inaba. 2000. The induction of tolerance by dendritic cells that have captured apoptotic cells. *J Exp Med* 191:411-416.
13. Inaba, K., M. Inaba, N. Romani, H. Aya, M. Deguchi, S. Ikehara, S. Muramatsu, R.M. Steinman. 1992. Generation of large numbers of dendritic cells from mouse bone marrow cultures supplemented with granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor. *J Exp Med* 176:1693-1702.
14. Caux, C., C. Dezutter-Dambuyant, D. Schmitt, J. Banchereau. 1992. GM-CSF and TNF-alpha cooperate in the generation of dendritic Langerhans cells. *Nature* 360:258-261.
15. Romani, N., S. Gruner, D. Brang, E. Kampgen, A. Lenz, B. Trockenbacher, G. Konwalinka, P.O. Fritsch, R.M. Steinman, G. Schuler. 1994. Proliferating dendritic cell progenitors in human blood. *J Exp Med* 180:83-93.
16. Shortman, K., Y.J. Liu. 2002. Mouse and human dendritic cell subtypes. *Nature Rev Immunol* 2:151-161.
17. Caux, C., C. Massacrier, B. Vanbervliet, B. Dubois, I. Durand, M. Cella, A. Lanzavecchia, J. Banchereau. 1997. CD34+ hematopoietic progenitors from human cord blood differentiate along two independent dendritic cell pathways in response to granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor plus tumor necrosis factor alpha: II. Functional analysis. *Blood* 90:1458-1470.
18. Caux, C., B. Vanbervliet, C. Massacrier, C. Dezutter-Dambuyant, B. de Saint-Vis, C. Jacquet, K. Yoneda, S. Imamura, D. Schmitt, J. Banchereau. 1996. CD34+ hematopoietic progenitors from human cord blood differentiate along two independent dendritic cell pathways in response to GM-CSF+TNF alpha. *J Exp Med* 184:695-706.
19. Siegal, F.P., N. Kadowaki, M. Shodell, P.A. Fitzgerald-Bocarsly, K. Shah, S. Ho, S. Antonenko, Y.J. Liu. 1999. The nature of the principal type 1 interferon-producing cells in human blood [In Process Citation]. *Science* 284:1835-1837.
20. Lanzavecchia, A., F. Sallusto. 2001. Regulation of T cell immunity by dendritic cells. *Cell* 106:263-266.
21. Valladeau, J., O. Ravel, C. Dezutter-Dambuyant, K. Moore, M. Kleijmeer, Y. Liu, V. Duvert-Frances, C. Vincent, D. Schmitt, J. Davoust, C. Caux, S. Lebecques, S. Saeland. 2000. Langerin, a novel C-type lectin

specific to Langerhans cells, is an endocytic receptor that induces the formation of Birbeck granules. *Immunity* 12:71-81.

22. Geijtenbeek, T.B., D.S. Kwon, R. Torensma, S.J. van Vliet, G.C. van Duijnhoven, J. Middel, I.L. Cornelissen, H.S. Nottet, V.N. KewalRamani, D.R. Littman, C.G. Figdor, Y. van Kooyk. 2000. DC-SIGN, a dendritic cell-specific HIV-1-binding protein that enhances trans-infection of T cells [In Process Citation]. *Cell* 100:587-597.
23. Geijtenbeek, T.B., R. Torensma, S.J. van Vliet, G.C. van Duijnhoven, G.J. Adema, Y. van Kooyk, C.G. Figdor. 2000. Identification of DC-SIGN, a novel dendritic cell-specific ICAM-3 receptor that supports primary immune responses [In Process Citation]. *Cell* 100:575-585.
24. Dzionek, A., A. Fuchs, P. Schmidt, S. Cremer, M. Zysk, S. Miltenyi, D.W. Buck, J. Schmitz. 2000. BDCA-2, BDCA-3, and BDCA-4: three markers for distinct subsets of dendritic cells in human peripheral blood. *J Immunol* 165:6037-6046.
25. Kadowaki, N., S. Ho, S. Antonenko, R.W. Malefyt, R.A. Kastelein, F. Bazan, Y.J. Liu. 2001. Subsets of human dendritic cell precursors express different toll-like receptors and respond to different microbial antigens. *J Exp Med* 194:863-869.
26. Boon, T., J.C. Cerottini, B. Van den Eynde, P. van der Bruggen, A. Van Pel. 1994. Tumor antigens recognized by T lymphocytes. *Annu Rev Immunol* 12:337-365.
27. Rosenberg, S.A. 1997. Cancer vaccines based on the identification of genes encoding cancer regression antigens. *Immunol Today* 18:175-182.
28. Banchereau, J., A.K. Palucka, M. Dhodapkar, S. Burkeholder, N. Taquet, A. Rolland, S. Taquet, S. Coquery, K.M. Wittkowski, N. Bhardwaj, L. Pineiro, R. Steinman, J. Fay. 2001. Immune and clinical responses in patients with metastatic melanoma to CD34(+) progenitor-derived dendritic cell vaccine. *Cancer Res* 61:6451-6458.
29. Zitvogel, L., A. Regnault, A. Lozier, J. Wolfers, C. Flament, D. Tenza, P. Ricciardi-Castagnoli, G. Raposo, S. Amigorena. 1998. Eradication of established murine tumors using a novel cell-free vaccine: dendritic cell-derived exosomes. *Nat Med* 4:594-600.
30. Ribas, A., L.H. Butterfield, J.A. Glaspy, J.S. Economou. 2002. Cancer immunotherapy using gene-modified dendritic cells. *Curr Gene Ther* 2:57-78.
31. Ashley, D.M., B. Faiola, S. Nair, L.P. Hale, D.D. Bigner, E. Gilboa. 1997. Bone marrow-generated dendritic cells pulsed with tumor extracts or tumor RNA induce antitumor immunity against central nervous system tumors. *J Exp Med* 186:1177-1182.
32. Boczkowski, D., S.K. Nair, D. Snyder, E. Gilboa. 1996. Dendritic cells pulsed with RNA are potent antigen-presenting cells in vitro and in vivo. *J Exp Med* 184:465-472.
33. Regnault, A., D. Lankar, V. Lacabanne, A. Rodriguez, C. Thery, M. Rescigno, T. Saito, S. Verbeek, C. Bonnerot, P. Ricciardi-Castagnoli, S. Amigorena. 1999. Fcgamma receptor-mediated induction of dendritic cell maturation and major histocompatibility complex class I-restricted antigen presentation after immune complex internalization. *J Exp Med* 189:371-380.
34. Fong, L., E.G. Engleman. 2000. Dendritic cells in cancer immunotherapy. *Annu Rev Immunol* 18:245-273.
35. Gilboa, E. 1999. The makings of a tumor rejection antigen. *Immunity* 11:263-270.
36. Albert, M.L., J.C. Darnell, A. Bender, L.M. Francisco, N. Bhardwaj, R.B. Darnell. 1998. Tumor-specific killer cells in paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration. *Nat Med* 4:1321-1324.
37. Berard, F., P. Blanco, J. Davoust, E.M. Neidhart-Berard, M. Nouri-Shirazi, N. Taquet, D. Rimoldi, J.C. Cerottini, J. Banchereau, A.K. Palucka. 2000. Cross-Priming of Naive CD8 T Cells against Melanoma Antigens Using Dendritic Cells Loaded with Killed Allogeneic Melanoma Cells. *J Exp Med* 192:1535-1544.
38. Nouri-Shirazi, M., J. Banchereau, D. Bell, S. Burkeholder, E.T. Kraus, J. Davoust, K.A. Palucka. 2000. Dendritic cells capture killed tumor cells and present their antigens to elicit tumor-specific immune responses [In Process Citation]. *J Immunol* 165:3797-3803.
39. Marrack, P., J. Kappler. 1997. Positive selection of thymocytes bearing alpha beta T cell receptors. *Curr Opin Immunol* 9:250-255.
40. Sprent, J., H. Kishimoto. 2002. The thymus and negative selection. *Immunol Rev* 185:126-135.
41. Starr, T.K., S.C. Jameson, K.A. Hogquist. 2003. Positive and negative selection of T cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 21:139-176.
42. Brocker, T. 1999. The role of dendritic cells in T cell selection and survival. *J Leukoc Biol* 66:331-335.
43. Fujimoto, Y., L. Tu, A.S. Miller, C. Bock, M. Fujimoto, C. Doyle, D.A. Steeber, T.F. Tedder. 2002. CD83 expression influences CD4+ T cell development in the thymus. *Cell* 108:755-767.
44. Bluestone, J.A., A.K. Abbas. 2003. Natural versus adaptive regulatory T cells. *Nat Rev Immunol* 3:253-257.
45. Cobbold, S., H. Waldmann. 1998. Infectious tolerance. *Curr Opin Immunol* 10:518-524.
46. Roncarolo, M.G., R. Bacchetta, C. Bordignon, S. Narula, M.K. Levings. 2001. Type 1 T regulatory cells. *Immunol Rev* 182:68-79.

47. Sakaguchi, S., N. Sakaguchi, J. Shimizu, S. Yamazaki, T. Sakihama, M. Itoh, Y. Kuniyasu, T. Nomura, M. Toda, T. Takahashi. 2001. Immunologic tolerance maintained by CD25+ CD4+ regulatory T cells: their common role in controlling autoimmunity, tumor immunity, and transplantation tolerance. *Immunol Rev* 182:18-32.
48. Shevach, E.M., R.S. McHugh, A.M. Thornton, C. Piccirillo, K. Natarajan, D.H. Margulies. 2001. Control of autoimmunity by regulatory T cells. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 490:21-32.
49. Blanco, P., A.K. Palucka, M. Gill, V. Pascual, J. Banchereau. 2001. Induction of dendritic cell differentiation by IFN-alpha in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Science* 294:1540-1543.
50. Kaplan, M.J., Q. Lu, A. Wu, J. Attwood, B. Richardson. 2004. Demethylation of promoter regulatory elements contributes to perforin overexpression in CD4+ lupus T cells. *J Immunol* 172:3652-3661.
51. Mestas, J., C.C. Hughes. 2004. Of mice and not men: differences between mouse and human immunology. *J Immunol* 172:2731-2738.
52. Porcelli, S.A., R.L. Modlin. 1999. The CD1 system: antigen-presenting molecules for T cell recognition of lipids and glycolipids. *Annu Rev Immunol* 17:297-329.
53. Kamel-Reid, S., M. Letarte, C. Sirard, M. Doedens, T. Grunberger, G. Fulop, M.H. Freedman, R.A. Phillips, J.E. Dick. 1989. A model of human acute lymphoblastic leukemia in immune-deficient SCID mice. *Science* 246:1597-1600.
54. McCune, J.M., R. Namikawa, H. Kaneshima, L.D. Shultz, M. Lieberman, I.L. Weissman. 1988. The SCID-hu mouse: murine model for the analysis of human hematolymphoid differentiation and function. *Science* 241:1632-1639.
55. Mosier, D.E., R.J. Gulizia, S.M. Baird, D.B. Wilson. 1988. Transfer of a functional human immune system to mice with severe combined immunodeficiency. *Nature* 335:256-259.
56. Muller, A., B. Homey, H. Soto, N. Ge, D. Catron, M.E. Buchanan, T. McClanahan, E. Murphy, W. Yuan, S.N. Wagner, J.L. Barrera, A. Mohar, E. Verastegui, A. Zlotnik. 2001. Involvement of chemokine receptors in breast cancer metastasis. *Nature* 410:50-56.
57. Palucka, A.K., R. Scuderi, A. Porwit, S. Jeha, A. Gruber, M. Bjorkholm, M. Beran, P. Pisa. 1996. Acute lymphoblastic leukemias from relapse engraft more rapidly in SCID mice. *Leukemia* 10:558-563.
58. Bankert, R.B., N.K. Egilmez, S.D. Hess. 2001. Human-SCID mouse chimeric models for the evaluation of anti-cancer therapies. *Trends Immunol* 22:386-393.
59. Dao, M.A., J.A. Nolta. 1999. Immunodeficient mice as models of human hematopoietic stem cell engraftment. *Curr Opin Immunol* 11:532-537.
60. Gatlin, J., A. Padgett, M.W. Melkus, P.F. Kelly, J.V. Garcia. 2001. Long-term engraftment of nonobese diabetic/severe combined immunodeficient mice with human CD34+ cells transduced by a self-inactivating human immunodeficiency virus type 1 vector. *Hum Gene Ther* 12:1079-1089.
61. Vandekerckhove, B.A., R. Baccala, D. Jones, D.H. Kono, A.N. Theofilopoulos, M.G. Roncarolo. 1992. Thymic selection of the human T cell receptor V beta repertoire in SCID-hu mice. *J Exp Med* 176:1619-1624.
62. Carballido, J.M., R. Namikawa, N. Carballido-Perrig, S. Antonenko, M.G. Roncarolo, J.E. de Vries. 2000. Generation of primary antigen-specific human T- and B-cell responses in immunocompetent SCID-hu mice. *Nat Med* 6:103-106.
63. Greiner, D.L., L.D. Shultz, J. Yates, M.C. Appel, G. Perdrizet, R.M. Hesselton, I. Schweitzer, W.G. Beamer, K.L. Shultz, S.C. Pelsue, et al. 1995. Improved engraftment of human spleen cells in NOD/LtSz-scid/scid mice as compared with C.B-17-scid/scid mice. *Am J Pathol* 146:888-902.
64. Shultz, L.D., P.A. Schweitzer, S.W. Christianson, B. Gott, I.B. Schweitzer, B. Tennent, S. McKenna, L. Mobraaten, T.V. Rajan, D.L. Greiner, et al. 1995. Multiple defects in innate and adaptive immunologic function in NOD/LtSz-scid mice. *J Immunol* 154:180-191.
65. Ueda, T., K. Tsuji, H. Yoshino, Y. Ebihara, H. Yagasaki, H. Hisakawa, T. Mitsui, A. Manabe, R. Tanaka, K. Kobayashi, M. Ito, K. Yasukawa, T. Nakahata. 2000. Expansion of human NOD/SCID-repopulating cells by stem cell factor, Flk2/Flt3 ligand, thrombopoietin, IL-6, and soluble IL-6 receptor. *J Clin Invest* 105:1013-1021.
66. Yoshino, H., T. Ueda, M. Kawahata, K. Kobayashi, Y. Ebihara, A. Manabe, R. Tanaka, M. Ito, S. Asano, T. Nakahata, K. Tsuji. 2000. Natural killer cell depletion by anti-asialo GM1 antiserum treatment enhances human hematopoietic stem cell engraftment in NOD/Shi-scid mice. *Bone Marrow Transplant* 26:1211-1216.
67. Christianson, S.W., D.L. Greiner, R.A. Hesselton, J.H. Leif, E.J. Wagar, I.B. Schweitzer, T.V. Rajan, B. Gott, D.C. Roopenian, L.D. Shultz. 1997. Enhanced human CD4+ T cell engraftment in beta2-microglobulin-deficient NOD-scid mice. *J Immunol* 158:3578-3586.
68. Kollet, O., A. Peled, T. Byk, H. Ben-Hur, D. Greiner, L. Shultz, T. Lapidot. 2000. beta2 microglobulin-deficient (B2m(null)) NOD/SCID mice are excellent recipients for studying human stem cell function. *Blood* 95:3102-3105.

69. Ito, M., H. Hiramatsu, K. Kobayashi, K. Suzue, M. Kawahata, K. Hioki, Y. Ueyama, Y. Koyanagi, K. Sugamura, K. Tsuji, T. Heike, T. Nakahata. 2002. NOD/SCID/gamma(c)(null) mouse: an excellent recipient mouse model for engraftment of human cells. *Blood* 100:3175-3182.
70. Coccia, M.A., P. Brams. 1998. High titer, prostate specific antigen-specific human IgG production by hu-PBL-SCID mice immunized with antigen-mouse IgG2a complex-pulsed autologous dendritic cells. *J Immunol* 161:5772-5780.
71. Hammad, H., B.N. Lambrecht, P. Pochard, P. Gosset, P. Marquillies, A.B. Tonnel, J. Pestel. 2002. Monocyte-derived dendritic cells induce a house dust mite-specific Th2 allergic inflammation in the lung of humanized SCID mice: involvement of CCR7. *J Immunol* 169:1524-1534.

15

ONTOGENY OF LAGERHANS CELLS AND GRAFT VERSUS HOST DISEASE

Miriam Merad

1. INTRODUCTION

Langerhans cells (LCs) through their stimulation of donor T cells likely play a key role in skin graft-versus-host-disease (GVHD), a serious complication that limits the use of allogeneic BM transplantation (1-5). LCs belong to a family of highly specialized antigen presenting cells called dendritic cells (DCs) (6, 7) and represent the only DCs of the epidermis (8). In common with all DCs, LCs are well equipped to capture environmental antigens, migrate to lymph nodes (LNs), and initiate specific T cell immune responses playing a critical role in skin immunity (6). Despite their importance, little is known about the life cycle of LCs, their precursor cell in the blood, the mechanism of LC replenishment after skin injury, and their homeostasis after allogeneic bone marrow (BM) transplantation. In this paper, we will discuss recent advances in our understanding of LC homeostasis during steady state and inflammatory conditions and the potential role of LCs in transplant immune reactions.

2. LCs AND IMMUNITY

Multiple leukocyte populations are found in the skin, including LCs in the epidermis, and macrophages, DCs and mast cells in the dermis. LCs are localized in the basal and suprabasal layers of the epidermis, where they represent the first hematopoietic barrier with the environment (7, 9). The presence of unique intracellular organelles, known as Birbeck granules (9) and expression of Langerin a lectine binding molecule, which constitutively bind to Birbeck granule (10) distinguish these cells from dermal DCs. They also differ in the factors that drive their differentiation. LC development seems to be critically dependent on transforming growth factor (TGF)-β because TGF-β knockout

---

Center for Gene Therapy and the Department of Medicine, Mount Sinai School of Medicine, 1425 Madison Avenue, New York, NY, 10029.

Mechanisms of Lymphocyte Activation and Immune Regulation X
Edited by Gupta *et al.*, Springer, 2005

mice are devoid of LCs, but not of their precursors (11, 12). LCs are well equipped to ingest foreign antigens that breach the skin mucosa. Upon activation, LCs increase their expression of MHC class II and costimulatory molecules, migrate to the draining lymph nodes (LNs) and initiate specific T cell immune responses playing a key role as sentinels of skin immunity (6). LCs are also found in skin lymphatics in steady state conditions in both animals and humans (13, 14). It is postulated that LCs migrate during steady state conditions to maintain or induce peripheral tolerance to skin antigens which may be critical for the prevention of skin autoimmune disease (15).

3. ORIGIN AND HOMEOSTASIS OF LCs

Given the importance of LCs in skin immunity, their mobilization to regional LNs, as well as the recruitment of LC precursors from the circulation into the skin, must be tightly regulated events. The presence of LCs in lymphatics in the incidence or absence of skin injury suggests that both in steady state and inflammatory conditions, migratory LCs are replaced (13, 14, 16). Although, the mechanisms that regulate the migration of LCs from the skin to the draining LNs are beginning to be understood, far less is known about the mechanisms that regulate the recruitment of LCs from the blood to the skin.

3.1. Murine Studies

Earlier studies in mice have shown that after allogeneic BM transplants, LCs are completely replaced by donor cells within a few weeks, providing the basis for the concept that LCs are derived from a mobile pool of BM-derived precursors that are constantly recruited to the skin (17, 18). In contrast to these results, we have recently discovered that under steady state conditions and after injuries that are only weakly inflammatory, BM precursors are not recruited to the skin and LCs are maintained by a stable renewable population present in the skin (19). However, as a consequence of UV-light induced skin inflammation, blood-borne LC precursors are actively recruited to the skin and replace resident LCs (19). The remarkable stability of LCs in the skin during steady state conditions contrasts with DC populations in other organs that undergo constant replacement by circulating BM derived precursors. A major difference between earlier studies and ours is that we transplanted mice with syngeneic rather than allogeneic BM. Importantly, we found that LCs remained of host origin for at least 18 months after transplantation of a purified population of allogeneic hematopoietic stem cells or T cell depleted (TCD) BM, but are replaced by donor-derived LCs if donor T cells are administered together with BM (Merad et al. Manuscript submitted). By contrast, dermal DCs as well as DCs in the blood, liver and lymphoid organs were replaced whether or not donor T cells were added to the graft. Given that allogenic T cells induce graft versus host disease (GVHD) it seems likely that, similar to the effect of UV-irradiation, GVHD associated skin inflammation promotes recruitment of BM derived LC precursors.

3.2. Human Studies

The study of LC chimerism in humans are difficult due to the lack of identifiable markers. Nonetheless, in an elegant study Emile et al. analyzed LC chimerism in 8 children with MHC class II deficiency (Bare Lymphocyte Syndrome) transplanted with allogeneic BM, and searched for donor MHC II$^+$ LCs in the skin after transplantation

(20). Consistent with our findings, donor LCs were not detected in the 2 children reconstituted with TCD allogeneic BM despite unequivocal engraftment of donor cells in the peripheral blood and dermis, while donor LCs were found in children who received whole allogeneic BM grafts. Although these results must be confirmed in a larger number of patients, they suggest that in humans as well as mice LC chimerism after allogeneic BM transplantation is induced only in the presence of alloreactive T cells. Moreover, persistence of host LCs more than 1 year after transplantation of allogeneic BM has been reported in patients (21). These results suggest that in humans, like mice, LC are remarkably stable in the skin and their replacement by circulating precursors is an active phenomenon dependent on the degree of the inflammatory injury.

3.3. LCs: Two Populations with Separate Ontogeny

Our finding that LCs self-renew throughout life in quiescent skin, and are replaced by circulating precursors only in the presence of inflammatory injuries, suggest that LCs with separate ontogeny exist. Interestingly, similar ontogeny has been described for macrophages, a population of antigen presenting cells found in most tissues. Two populations of macrophages are present in the body and include exudate and inflammatory macrophages. Exudate macrophages are found only in inflamed tissues, where they are recruited through a chemokine gradient induced by monocyte-chemokine protein-1 (MCP-1), they do not proliferate in situ and are thought to derive from a monocyte that originate in adult BM. Resident macrophages are present in non-inflamed tissues independently of MCP-1 (22), can proliferate in situ (22) and are thought to derive from primitive/fetal macrophages that originates in the yolk sac and in the fetal liver preceding that of BM derivation of typical monocytic cells (23-27). Similarly, LCs are already found in human embryos at 8.5 weeks of gestation and in mice and rats embryos at fetal day 15. LCs are found in non-inflamed and inflamed skin, and can proliferate in the skin (19, 28-30). Although, LCs are found in normal numbers in MCP-$1^{-/-}$ mice (31), their recruitment to injured skin is dependent on MCP chemokines (19). Based on these studies and our results, we hypothesize that 2 populations of LCs with separate ontogeny exist. One population of LCs proliferates in situ, resides in the epidermis under steady state conditions and originates from fetal hematopoietic progenitors that seed the skin during embryonic life independently of MCP chemokines. The other population of LCs seeds only inflamed skin in response to MCP chemokines and originates in adult BM.

Other murine skin hematopoietic cell populations share a similar life cycle with LCs. These include epidermal δ T cells and dermal mast cells. Mast cells represent a heterogenous population of hematopoietic cells that express high affinity IgE receptor (32). Mast cells are present in most tissues including the skin where they localize mainly in the dermis (32). Similarly to LCs, dermal mast cells were shown to self-renew in the skin and to persist in quiescent skin more than six months after congenic BM transplantation (33, 34). By contrast, after exposure to UV light, host mast cells were depleted and replaced by donor mast cells in 2 to 3 weeks (35). Epidermal T cells also called "dendritic epidermal T cells" express a δ T-cell receptor with minor diversity (Vβ3/Vβ1) (36). They derive only from fetal hematopoietic stem cells (HSC) precursors that seed the skin during fetal life and renew in the skin throughout life (37). These results suggest that the skin provide an environment suitable for self-renewal of leukocytes population.

4. UV SKIN INFLAMMATION MODEL TO STUDY THE HEMATOPOIETIC LINEAGE OF LCs

Although LCs are hematopoietic cells, their hematopoietic lineage as well as their immediate precursor in the blood are still unclear. This was due to the lack of pre-clinical model allowing to explore the recruitment of LC precursors to the skin and their differentiation into LCs. Our finding that circulating BM-derived cells can give rise to LCs in inflamed skin provides a model to explore this question. Clonogenic common myeloid (CMP) (38) and lymphoid precursors (CLP) (39) have been identified in murine BM and shown to give rise exclusively to all myeloid and lymphoid cells, respectively. We and others have found that both CMP and CLP can differentiate into DCs in lymphoid organs including spleen, LNs and thymus (40, 41). We have also shown that CMP are more efficient on a per cell basis to give rise to DCs in the spleen and LNs, compared to CLP (40, 42). Although the lineage of DCs in lymphoid organs is starting to be unraveled, the origin of DCs in non-lymphoid tissue including LCs in the skin, is still unclear. One study found that a lymphoid progenitor able to give rise to T cells, NK and DCs in lymphoid organs also gives rise to LCs in mice exposed to UV (43). In contrast, myeloid cells including circulating monocytes and $CD14^+$ dermal macrophages have been shown to give rise to LCs in vitro (44, 45) but the capacity of these cells to give rise to LCs was not tested in vivo. Human monocytes were also shown to give rise to DCs in vitro (46) while murine monocytes were shown to differentiate into DCs after migration from the periphery to the draining LNs (47, 48). Recently, two populations of circulating monocytes with different capacity to give rise to DCs were identified (49). The results of this study shows that $CD11b^+Gr.1/Ly6G^+$ expressing the MCP receptor CCR2 but not $CD11b^+$ $Gr.1/Ly6G^-CCR2^-$ monocytes differentiate into DCs in inflammatory sites (49), and it will be interesting to analyze the capacity of each of these populations to give rise to LCs in vivo using a model of UV-skin inflammation model.

5. CHEMOKINES AND LCs

The migration of leukocytes to inflammatory sites depends on a cascade of discrete events mediated, in part, by chemokines and their receptors (50-52). During skin inflammation, numerous chemokines are secreted in the skin, including CCL5 (also known as RANTES), a ligand for CCR1 and CCR5 (53); CCL2 (MCP-1), a ligand for CCR2(54); CCL22 (MDC) and CCL17 (TARC), ligands for CCR4(55, 56); CCL20 (MIP-3α), the ligand for CCR6 (57, 58) and CCL9 (MIG), CCL10 (IP-10) and CCL11 (ITAC), ligands for CXCR3 (59, 60). In addition, several chemokines are made constitutively in normal skin, including CXCL12 (SDF) (61) and CCL27 (CTACK) (62). We have recently found that transplantation of $CCR2^{-/-}$ BM cells into mice exposed to UV light resulted in delayed LC reconstitution, suggesting that CCR2 chemokine ligands play an important role in the recruitment of LCs to inflamed skin. Importantly, CCR2 chemokine ligands do not play a role in LC recruitment to the skin in steady state conditions as $CCR2^{-/-}$ mice have normal numbers of LCs in the skin. However the ability of $CCR2^{-/-}$ cells, after a 4 to 8 week delay, to give rise to normal numbers of LCs indicates that other chemokines may also contribute to LC precursor recruitment (19). CCL20/MIP-3α is another chemokine that has been shown to play a role in the recruitment of human $CD34^+$ derived LCs in vitro (63). In contrast, $CCR6^{-/-}$ mice that lack the receptor for CCL20 have normal numbers of LCs in the skin. These results suggest

that similarly to CCR2 chemokines ligands, CCL20 does not play a role in the seeding of LC precursors to the skin in early life, but does not preclude CCL20 from playing a role in the recruitment of LCs to inflamed skin.

6. LCs AND GVHD

Allogeneic BM transplantation is the treatment of choice for a variety of malignant and non-malignant disorders. Transplantation of allogeneic BM is usually administered after myelo-ablative therapy, to rescue hematopoiesis and to administer allogeneic T lymphocytes that are able to recognize and eradicate tumor cells (5). This effect is called the graft-versus-tumor effect. The counterpart of the graft-versus-tumor effect, is the development of GVHD which occurs when donor-derived T cells recognize and react to histo-incompatible recipient antigens leading to a variety of host tissue injuries (1-5, 64). GVHD is the major cause of morbidity and mortality after allogeneic BM transplantation, even when siblings are matched at the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) locus (65-67). GVHD occurs in both acute and chronic forms, each with different kinetics and distinctive pathology (3). The skin is the organ the most affected by GVHD and clinical symptoms range from a simple rash to a dramatic epidermolysis (3). Other affected organs are the gut, the liver, the lung and lymphoid organs (3). Chronic GVHD occurs less than 100 days after transplantation and affects the same tissues, in addition to the joints and the mucosal surfaces, with an incidence of 40 to 60% in transplant recipients surviving more than 100 days (3, 68). The principal strategies to prevent GVHD center around the depletion of donor T cells (69). However, this may lead to the loss of the graft-versus-tumor-effect, and to an increased risk of infections and graft failure.

More recently, advances in our understanding of basic immunology have underlined the central role of host DCs as key stimulators of donor T cells, inducing GVHD. In a pioneer study, Schlomchik et al. showed that mice lacking host DCs at the time of BM transplant do not develop GVHD upon transplantation of donor CD8 T cells (70). In a similar model, depletion of host liver DCs prior to transplantation of donor allo-reactive T cells, was shown to prevent liver GVHD (71). We have recently found, that by contrast to other DC population including spleen, liver, kidney and blood DCs, achievement of LC chimerism in the skin depends on the presence of donor T cells in the graft (Merad et al. manuscript submitted).

The observation that high levels of host LCs in the skin persist in animals after TCD BM transplantation has important implications for the development of GVHD in patients who undergo this procedure. Our results suggest that after allogeneic transplantation, DC chimerism in the blood does not correlate with DC chimerism in skin, suggesting that host DCs may persist in patients after allogeneic BM transplantation even if they are found to be fully chimeric in the blood. Previous studies have shown that host DCs are essential for both the activation (70-72) and effector phases of acute GVHD(73). Interestingly, in the latter study donor T cells induced GVHD only if host hematopoietic cells were present in target tissues (73). In this regard, host LCs persisting in skin may be responsible for the continued activation of donor T cells and for the production of cytokines that were found to be critical for the tissue damage observed in GVHD(73) .

In conclusion, we have recently showed that epidermal LCs self-renew in quiescent skin during adult life and are replaced by BM-derived hematopoietic precursors only during inflammatory injuries. In addition, we have found that this unique cycle of

homeostasis play an important role in transplant immune reactions. These findings may lead to new clinical strategies for the prevention of GVHD.

7. REFERENCES

1. Murphy, W.J., and Blazar, B.R. 1999. New strategies for preventing graft-versus-host disease. *Curr Opin Immunol* 11:509-515.
2. Blazar, B.R., Korngold, R., and Vallera, D.A. 1997. Recent advances in graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) prevention. *Immunol Rev* 157:79-109.
3. Ferrara, J.L., Levy, R., and Chao, N.J. 1999. Pathophysiologic mechanisms of acute graft-vs.-host disease. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant* 5:347-356.
4. Klingebiel, T., and Schlegel, P.G. 1998. GVHD: overview on pathophysiology, incidence, clinical and biological features. *Bone Marrow Transplant* 21 Suppl 2:S45-49.
5. Ho, V.T., and Soiffer, R.J. 2001. The history and future of T-cell depletion as graft-versus-host disease prophylaxis for allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Blood* 98:3192-3204.
6. Schuler, G., and Steinman, R.M. 1985. Murine epidermal Langerhans cells mature into potent immunostimulatory dendritic cells in vitro. *J Exp Med* 161:526-546.
7. Banchereau, J., Briere, F., Caux, C., Davoust, J., Lebecque, S., Liu, Y.J., Pulendran, B., and Palucka, K. 2000. Immunobiology of dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 18:767-811.
8. Stingl, G., Tamaki, K., and Katz, S.I. 1980. Origin and function of epidermal Langerhans cells. *Immunol Rev* 53:149-174.
9. Stingl, G., Elbe, A., Paer, E., Kilgus, O., Strohal, R., and Schreiber, S. 1991. The role of fetal epithelial tissues in the maturation/differentiation of bone marrow-derived precursors into dendritic epidermal T cells (DETC) of the mouse. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 173:269-277.
10. Valladeau, J., Ravel, O., Dezutter-Dambuyant, C., Moore, K., Kleijmeer, M., Liu, Y., Duvert-Frances, V., Vincent, C., Schmitt, D., Davoust, J., et al. 2000. Langerin, a novel C-type lectin specific to Langerhans cells, is an endocytic receptor that induces the formation of Birbeck granules. *Immunity* 12:71-81.
11. Strobl, H., Riedl, E., Scheinecker, C., Bello-Fernandez, C., Pickl, W.F., Rappersberger, K., Majdic, O., and Knapp, W. 1996. TGF-beta 1 promotes in vitro development of dendritic cells from CD34+ hemopoietic progenitors. *J Immunol* 157:1499-1507.
12. Strobl, H., and Knapp, W. 1999. TGF-beta1 regulation of dendritic cells. *Microbes Infect* 1:1283-1290.
13. Hemmi, H., Yoshino, M., Yamazaki, H., Naito, M., Iyoda, T., Omatsu, Y., Shimoyama, S., Letterio, J.J., Nakabayashi, T., Tagaya, H., et al. 2001. Skin antigens in the steady state are trafficked to regional lymph nodes by transforming growth factor-beta1-dependent cells. *Int Immunol* 13:695-704.
14. Drexhage, H.A., Mullink, H., de Groot, J., Clarke, J., and Balfour, B.M. 1979. A study of cells present in peripheral lymph of pigs with special reference to a type of cell resembling the Langerhans cell. *Cell Tissue Res* 202:407-430.
15. Steinman, R.M., Hawiger, D., and Nussenzweig, M.C. 2003. Tolerogenic dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 21:685-711.
16. Jakob, T., Ring, J., and Udey, M.C. 2001. Multistep navigation of Langerhans/dendritic cells in and out of the skin. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 108:688-696.
17. Katz, S.I., Tamaki, K., and Sachs, D.H. 1979. Epidermal Langerhans cells are derived from cells originating in bone marrow. *Nature* 282:324-326.
18. Frelinger, J.G., Hood, L., Hill, S., and Frelinger, J.A. 1979. Mouse epidermal Ia molecules have a bone marrow origin. *Nature* 282:321-323.
19. Merad, M., Manz, M.G., Karsunky, H., Wagers, A., Peters, W., Charo, I., Weissman, I.L., Cyster, J.G., and Engleman, E.G. 2002. Langerhans cells renew in the skin throughout life under steady-state conditions. *Nat Immunol* 3:1135-1141.
20. Emile, J.F., Haddad, E., Fraitag, S., Canioni, D., Fischer, A., and Brousse, N. 1997. Detection of donor-derived Langerhans cells in MHC class II immunodeficient patients after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. *Br J Haematol* 98:480-484.
21. Perreault, C., Pelletier, M., Belanger, R., Boileau, J., Bonny, Y., David, M., Gyger, M., Landry, D., and Montplaisir, S. 1985. Persistence of host Langerhans cells following allogeneic bone marrow transplantation: possible relationship with acute graft-versus-host disease. *Br J Haematol* 60:253-260.
22. Akagawa, K.S., Takasuka, N., Nozaki, Y., Komuro, I., Azuma, M., Ueda, M., Naito, M., and Takahashi, K. 1996. Generation of CD1+RelB+ dendritic cells and tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase-positive osteoclast-like multinucleated giant cells from human monocytes. *Blood* 88:4029-4039.

23. Takahashi, K., Yamamura, F., and Naito, M. 1989. Differentiation, maturation, and proliferation of macrophages in the mouse yolk sac: a light-microscopic, enzyme-cytochemical, immunohistochemical, and ultrastructural study. *J Leukoc Biol* 45:87-96.
24. Takahashi, K., and Naito, M. 1993. Development, differentiation, and proliferation of macrophages in the rat yolk sac. *Tissue Cell* 25:351-362.
25. Higashi, K., Naito, M., Takeya, M., Ando, M., Araki, S., and Takahashi, K. 1992. Ontogenetic development, differentiation, and phenotypic expression of macrophages in fetal rat lungs. *J Leukoc Biol* 51:444-454.
26. Naito, M., Takahashi, K., and Nishikawa, S. 1990. Development, differentiation, and maturation of macrophages in the fetal mouse liver. *J Leukoc Biol* 48:27-37.
27. Herbomel, P., Thisse, B., and Thisse, C. 2001. Zebrafish early macrophages colonize cephalic mesenchyme and developing brain, retina, and epidermis through a M-CSF receptor-dependent invasive process. *Dev Biol* 238:274-288.
28. Czernielewski, J., Vaigot, P., and Prunieras, M. 1985. Epidermal Langerhans cells--a cycling cell population. *J Invest Dermatol* 84:424-426.
29. Czernielewski, J.M., and Demarchez, M. 1987. Further evidence for the self-reproducing capacity of Langerhans cells in human skin. *J Invest Dermatol* 88:17-20.
30. Miyauchi, S., and Hashimoto, K. 1987. Epidermal Langerhans cells undergo mitosis during the early recovery phase after ultraviolet-B irradiation. *J Invest Dermatol* 88:703-708.
31. Sato, N., Ahuja, S.K., Quinones, M., Kostecki, V., Reddick, R.L., Melby, P.C., Kuziel, W.A., and Ahuja, S.S. 2000. CC chemokine receptor (CCR)2 is required for langerhans cell migration and localization of T helper cell type 1 (Th1)-inducing dendritic cells. Absence of CCR2 shifts the Leishmania major-resistant phenotype to a susceptible state dominated by Th2 cytokines, b cell outgrowth, and sustained neutrophilic inflammation. *J Exp Med* 192:205-218.
32. Kitamura, Y. 1989. Heterogeneity of mast cells and phenotypic change between subpopulations. *Annu Rev Immunol* 7:59-76.
33. Kitamura, Y., Matsuda, H., and Hatanaka, K. 1979. Clonal nature of mast-cell clusters formed in W/Wv mice after bone marrow transplantation. *Nature* 281:154-155.
34. Kitamura, Y., Shimada, M., Hatanaka, K., and Miyano, Y. 1977. Development of mast cells from grafted bone marrow cells in irradiated mice. *Nature* 268:442-443.
35. Toyota, N., Kitamura, Y., and Ogawa, K. 1990. Administration of 8-methoxypsoralen and ultraviolet A irradiation (PUVA) induces turnover of mast cells in the skin of C57BL/6 mice. *J Invest Dermatol* 95:353-358.
36. Havran, W.L., Grell, S., Duwe, G., Kimura, J., Wilson, A., Kruisbeek, A.M., O'Brien, R.L., Born, W., Tigelaar, R.E., and Allison, J.P. 1989. Limited diversity of T-cell receptor gamma-chain expression of murine Thy-1+ dendritic epidermal cells revealed by V gamma 3-specific monoclonal antibody. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 86:4185-4189.
37. Ikuta, K., Kina, T., MacNeil, I., Uchida, N., Peault, B., Chien, Y.H., and Weissman, I.L. 1990. A developmental switch in thymic lymphocyte maturation potential occurs at the level of hematopoietic stem cells. *Cell* 62:863-874.
38. Akashi, K., Traver, D., Miyamoto, T., and Weissman, I.L. 2000. A clonogenic common myeloid progenitor that gives rise to all myeloid lineages. *Nature* 404:193-197.
39. Kondo, M., Weissman, I.L., and Akashi, K. 1997. Identification of clonogenic common lymphoid progenitors in mouse bone marrow. *Cell* 91:661-672.
40. Traver, D., Akashi, K., Manz, M., Merad, M., Miyamoto, T., Engleman, E.G., and Weissman, I.L. 2000. Development of CD8alpha-positive dendritic cells from a common myeloid progenitor. *Science* 290:2152-2154.
41. Karsunky, H., Merad, M., Cozzio, A., Weissman, I.L., and Manz, M.G. 2003. Flt3 ligand regulates dendritic cell development from Flt3+ lymphoid and myeloid-committed progenitors to Flt3+ dendritic cells in vivo. *J Exp Med* 198:305-313.
42. Manz, M.G., Traver, D., Miyamoto, T., Weissman, I.L., and Akashi, K. 2001. Dendritic cell potentials of early lymphoid and myeloid progenitors. *Blood* 97:3333-3341.
43. Anjuere, F., del Hoyo, G.M., Martin, P., and Ardavin, C. 2000. Langerhans cells develop from a lymphoid-committed precursor. *Blood* 96:1633-1637.
44. Geissmann, F., Prost, C., Monnet, J.P., Dy, M., Brousse, N., and Hermine, O. 1998. Transforming growth factor beta1, in the presence of granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor and interleukin 4, induces differentiation of human peripheral blood monocytes into dendritic Langerhans cells. *J Exp Med* 187:961-966.
45. Larregina, A.T., Morelli, A.E., Spencer, L.A., Logar, A.J., Watkins, S.C., Thomson, A.W., and Falo, L.D., Jr. 2001. Dermal-resident CD14+ cells differentiate into Langerhans cells. *Nat Immunol* 2:1151-1158.

46. Sallusto, F., and Lanzavecchia, A. 1994. Efficient presentation of soluble antigen by cultured human dendritic cells is maintained by granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor plus interleukin 4 and downregulated by tumor necrosis factor alpha. *J Exp Med* 179:1109-1118.
47. Randolph, G.J., Beaulieu, S., Lebecque, S., Steinman, R.M., and Muller, W.A. 1998. Differentiation of monocytes into dendritic cells in a model of transendothelial trafficking. *Science* 282:480-483.
48. Randolph, G.J., Inaba, K., Robbiani, D.F., Steinman, R.M., and Muller, W.A. 1999. Differentiation of phagocytic monocytes into lymph node dendritic cells in vivo. *Immunity* 11:753-761.
49. Geissmann, F., Jung, S., and Littman, D.R. 2003. Blood monocytes consist of two principal subsets with distinct migratory properties. *Immunity* 19:71-82.
50. Springer, T.A. 1994. Traffic signals for lymphocyte recirculation and leukocyte emigration: the multistep paradigm. *Cell* 76:301-314.
51. Butcher, E.C. 1991. Leukocyte-endothelial cell recognition: three (or more) steps to specificity and diversity. *Cell* 67:1033-1036.
52. Zlotnik, A., and Yoshie, O. 2000. Chemokines: a new classification system and their role in immunity. *Immunity* 12:121-127.
53. Sebastiani, S., Albanesi, C., De, P.O., Puddu, P., Cavani, A., and Girolomoni, G. 2002. The role of chemokines in allergic contact dermatitis. *Arch Dermatol Res* 293:552-559.
54. Barker, J.N., Jones, M.L., Swenson, C.L., Sarma, V., Mitra, R.S., Ward, P.A., Johnson, K.J., Fantone, J.C., Dixit, V.M., and Nickoloff, B.J. 1991. Monocyte chemotaxis and activating factor production by keratinocytes in response to IFN-gamma. *J Immunol* 146:1192-1197.
55. Campbell, J.J., Haraldsen, G., Pan, J., Rottman, J., Qin, S., Ponath, P., Andrew, D.P., Warnke, R., Ruffing, N., Kassam, N., et al. 1999. The chemokine receptor CCR4 in vascular recognition by cutaneous but not intestinal memory T cells. *Nature* 400:776-780.
56. Katou, F., Ohtani, H., Nakayama, T., Ono, K., Matsushima, K., Saaristo, A., Nagura, H., Yoshie, O., and Motegi, K. 2001. Macrophage-derived chemokine (MDC/CCL22) and CCR4 are involved in the formation of T lymphocyte-dendritic cell clusters in human inflamed skin and secondary lymphoid tissue. *Am J Pathol* 158:1263-1270.
57. Dieu-Nosjean, M.C., Massacrier, C., Homey, B., Vanbervliet, B., Pin, J.J., Vicari, A., Lebecque, S., Dezutter-Dambuyant, C., Schmitt, D., Zlotnik, A., et al. 2000. Macrophage inflammatory protein 3alpha is expressed at inflamed epithelial surfaces and is the most potent chemokine known in attracting Langerhans cell precursors. *J Exp Med* 192:705-718.
58. Nakayama, T., Fujisawa, R., Yamada, H., Horikawa, T., Kawasaki, H., Hieshima, K., Izawa, D., Fujiie, S., Tezuka, T., and Yoshie, O. 2001. Inducible expression of a CC chemokine liver- and activation-regulated chemokine (LARC)/macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-3 alpha/CCL20 by epidermal keratinocytes and its role in atopic dermatitis. *Int Immunol* 13:95-103.
59. Tensen, C.P., Flier, J., Van Der Raaij-Helmer, E.M., Sampat-Sardjoepersad, S., Van Der Schors, R.C., Leurs, R., Scheper, R.J., Boorsma, D.M., and Willemze, R. 1999. Human IP-9: A keratinocyte-derived high affinity CXC-chemokine ligand for the IP-10/Mig receptor (CXCR3). *J Invest Dermatol* 112:716-722.
60. Flier, J., Boorsma, D.M., van Beek, P.J., Nieboer, C., Stoof, T.J., Willemze, R., and Tensen, C.P. 2001. Differential expression of CXCR3 targeting chemokines CXCL10, CXCL9, and CXCL11 in different types of skin inflammation. *J Pathol* 194:398-405.
61. Pablos, J.L., Amara, A., Bouloc, A., Santiago, B., Caruz, A., Galindo, M., Delaunay, T., Virelizier, J.L., and Arenzana-Seisdedos, F. 1999. Stromal-cell derived factor is expressed by dendritic cells and endothelium in human skin. *Am J Pathol* 155:1577-1586.
62. Morales, J., Homey, B., Vicari, A.P., Hudak, S., Oldham, E., Hedrick, J., Orozco, R., Copeland, N.G., Jenkins, N.A., McEvoy, L.M., et al. 1999. CTACK, a skin-associated chemokine that preferentially attracts skin-homing memory T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 96:14470-14475.
63. Caux, C., Ait-Yahia, S., Chemin, K., de Bouteiller, O., Dieu-Nosjean, M.C., Homey, B., Massacrier, C., Vanbervliet, B., Zlotnik, A., and Vicari, A. 2000. Dendritic cell biology and regulation of dendritic cell trafficking by chemokines. *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 22:345-369.
64. Vallera, D.A., and Blazar, B.R. 1989. T cell depletion for graft-versus-host-disease prophylaxis. A perspective on engraftment in mice and humans. *Transplantation* 47:751-760.
65. Gale, R.P., Bortin, M.M., van Bekkum, D.W., Biggs, J.C., Dicke, K.A., Gluckman, E., Good, R.A., Hoffmann, R.G., Kay, H.E., Kersey, J.H., et al. 1987. Risk factors for acute graft-versus-host disease. *Br J Haematol* 67:397-406.
66. Martin, P.J., Schoch, G., Fisher, L., Byers, V., Anasetti, C., Appelbaum, F.R., Beatty, P.G., Doney, K., McDonald, G.B., Sanders, J.E., et al. 1990. A retrospective analysis of therapy for acute graft-versus-host disease: initial treatment. *Blood* 76:1464-1472.

67. Weisdorf, D., Haake, R., Blazar, B., Miller, W., McGlave, P., Ramsay, N., Kersey, J., and Filipovich, A. 1990. Treatment of moderate/severe acute graft-versus-host disease after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation: an analysis of clinical risk features and outcome. *Blood* 75:1024-1030.
68. Atkinson, K., Horowitz, M.M., Gale, R.P., van Bekkum, D.W., Gluckman, E., Good, R.A., Jacobsen, N., Kolb, H.J., Rimm, A.A., Ringden, O., et al. 1990. Risk factors for chronic graft-versus-host disease after HLA-identical sibling bone marrow transplantation. *Blood* 75:2459-2464.
69. Ratanatharathorn, V., Nash, R.A., Przepiorka, D., Devine, S.M., Klein, J.L., Weisdorf, D., Fay, J.W., Nademanee, A., Antin, J.H., Christiansen, N.P., et al. 1998. Phase III study comparing methotrexate and tacrolimus (prograf, FK506) with methotrexate and cyclosporine for graft-versus-host disease prophylaxis after HLA-identical sibling bone marrow transplantation. *Blood* 92:2303-2314.
70. Shlomchik, W.D., Couzens, M.S., Tang, C.B., McNiff, J., Robert, M.E., Liu, J., Shlomchik, M.J., and Emerson, S.G. 1999. Prevention of graft versus host disease by inactivation of host antigen-presenting cells. *Science* 285:412-415.
71. Zhang, Y., Shlomchik, W.D., Joe, G., Louboutin, J.P., Zhu, J., Rivera, A., Giannola, D., and Emerson, S. 2002. APCs in the liver and spleen recruit activated allogeneic CD8+ T cells to elicit hepatic graft-versus-host disease. *J Immunol* 169:7111-7118.
72. Zhang, Y., Louboutin, J.P., Zhu, J., Rivera, A.J., and Emerson, S.G. 2002. Preterminal host dendritic cells in irradiated mice prime CD8+ T cell-mediated acute graft-versus-host disease. *JCI* 109:1335-1344.
73. Teshima, T., Ordemann, R., Reddy, P., Gagin, S., Liu, C., Cooke, K.R., and Ferrara, J. 2002. Acute graft-versus-host disease does not require alloantigen expression on host epithelium. *Nat Med* 6:575-581.

16

ROLE OF THE CD19 AND CD21/35 RECEPTOR COMPLEX IN INNATE IMMUNITY, HOST DEFENSE AND AUTOIMMUNITY

Karen M. Haas and Thomas F. Tedder*

1. INTRODUCTION

Humoral immune responses to foreign and self-antigens must be tightly regulated to facilitate protective immunity to pathogens while avoiding autoimmune responses. The outcome of these responses is determined in part by signals generated through the B lymphocyte antigen receptor (BCR). These signals are further supplemented and fine-tuned by other cell-surface molecules that modify and provide a context for BCR signal transduction[1]. Such molecules, or "response regulators", influence these events by positively or negatively biasing the context of BCR signaling, thus establishing appropriate signaling thresholds. Response regulators amplify or dampen BCR signaling by regulating the activity of intracellular kinases, phosphatases, and other effector proteins. Included among the list of BCR signal transduction response regulators is CD19, which integrates multiple intracellular signaling pathways. On the B cell surface, CD19 interacts directly with CD21 (complement receptor 2, CR2), a receptor for the C3d complement cleavage product that forms covalent bonds with foreign Ags or immune complexes to effectively link innate and acquired immunity. This review summarizes recent findings that have clarified how the CD19/CD21 receptor complex functions to regulate B cell responses in host defense and autoimmunity.

2. CD19

2.1. CD19 Structure and Expression

CD19 is a 95,000 M_r transmembrane glycoprotein of the Ig superfamily expressed by the B cell lineage from the early pre-B stage until its loss during plasma cell

*Duke University Medical Center, Durham, North Carolina 27710.

differentiation, as well as on the surface of follicular dendritic cells (FDCs)[2,3]. The extracellular domain of CD19 contains two C2-type Ig-like domains separated by a smaller, potentially disulfide-linked domain, as well as an extensive and highly conserved cytoplasmic domain[4, 5]. CD19 density on the cell surface is highly regulated during development, with similar expression levels by all mature conventional B cells from different peripheral lymphoid tissues[2, 6]. Although mature mouse B cells express ~3-fold higher CD19 levels than immature B cells, B-1 cells express slightly higher CD19 levels than conventional B cells[3]. CD19 expression levels are not significantly influenced by treatment of B cells with anti-IgM antibodies, lipopolysaccharide, or IL-4[2, 7].

CD19 interacts on the cell surface with CD21, as well as CD81, a broadly expressed member of the tetraspans family of cell-surface molecules[8]. Tetraspans family members are involved in multiple diverse signaling pathways[9]. Although CD81-deficient ($CD81^{-/-}$) mice are surprisingly normal, CD19 expression is halved in the absence of CD81 expression, and B cell signaling is reduced[10-13]. CD81 physically associates with another broadly-expressed cell surface molecule, CD225 (Leu-13), that has unknown function[14-16]. Thus, CD19 provides a B lineage-specific component for a receptor complex containing ubiquitously expressed molecules.

2.2. CD19 Signaling Function

CD19 function intersects with multiple signaling pathways crucial for modulating intrinsic and antigen receptor-induced signals. There are nine highly conserved tyrosine residues within the ~240 amino acid CD19 cytoplasmic domain[5]. Most of these tyrosines provide functionally active SH2 domain-recognition motifs that mediate recruitment of regulatory molecules to the cell surface[17-19]. Most significant is that CD19 functions as a specialized adapter protein for the amplification of Src-family protein tyrosine kinase (PTK) activity through a mechanism termed "processive amplification"[20-23]. Lyn activated endogenously or following BCR engagement is the primary kinase that phosphorylates CD19[21]. Following BCR or CD19 ligation, Lyn binding to phosphorylated CD19 results in amplified Lyn kinase activity[20-22]. The recent observation that phosphorylated CD19 preferentially localizes within detergent-insoluble lipid raft microsignaling domains suggests that CD19 may also influence the spatial distribution of Lyn at the membrane/cytoplasm interface[24, 25]. CD19 phosphorylation and amplification of Lyn kinase activity facilitates CD19 interactions with Vav and the p85 subunit of phosphatidylinositol 3 (PI3)-kinase, and initiates downstream events including the augmentation of $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ responses[20, 26-31]. In addition, CD19 interacts with other signaling molecules through its phosphorylated tyrosine residues, including Grb2, SOS, PLC-γ2 and the c-Abl PTKs[21, 24, 32]. The functional significance of these interactions is yet to be defined.

An important function of CD19 is regulating CD22 signaling. CD19 amplification of Lyn kinase activity is required for optimal CD22 phosphorylation and activation of the CD22/SHP1 regulatory pathway[26]. CD22 phosphorylation also induces formation of a CD22/Shc/Grb-2 ternary complex that may downregulate $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ responses through SH2 domain-containing inositol polyphosphate 5-phosphatase (SHIP) recruitment[33]. As a consequence of these events, CD19 and BCR co-ligation dramatically lowers the threshold for B cell activation in vitro,[34, 35] and regulates mitogen-activated protein kinase

activation and proliferation[21, 34, 36]. CD19 thereby functions as a key regulator of B cell transmembrane signaling through its regulation of multiple signaling pathways.

2.3. CD19-Deficient and CD19-Transgenic Mice

That CD19 is an intrinsic response regulator[37] has been revealed in studies of mice that lack or overexpress CD19[38-40]. B cells develop normally in CD19-deficient ($CD19^{-/-}$) mice, but are reduced in number by ~50% in the periphery. B cells from these mice are hyporesponsive to most transmembrane signals, including BCR ligation and mitogens, leading to deficiencies in proliferation, clonal expansion and differentiation[2, 3, 38, 41, 42]. In addition, although $CD19^{-/-}$ B cells express cytoplasmic signaling molecules at normal levels, BCR ligation-induced phosphorylation of most downstream signaling molecules is reduced[20]. $CD19^{-/-}$ mice generate modest humoral immune responses and have reduced germinal center formation[2, 3, 38, 40-42]. By contrast, B cells from transgenic mice that overexpress human CD19 ($hCD19TG^{+/+}$) are hyperresponsive to transmembrane signals, proliferate at elevated levels, and generate elevated humoral immune responses[2, 3, 38, 39, 41, 42]. The number of B cells exiting the bone marrow and entering the circulating B cell pool is reduced by >95% in $hCD19TG^{+/+}$ mice, presumably the result of enhanced negative selection. Peritoneal B1 B cell numbers correlate positively with CD19 expression levels since B1 cell development is severely decreased in $CD19^{-/-}$ mice, while the frequency of peritoneal and spleen B1 cells in $hCD19TG^{+/+}$ mice is increased[3]. Thus, CD19 expression levels define signaling thresholds critical for expansion of the peripheral B cell pool[1, 23].

2.4. Models of CD19 Function

2.4.1. Costimulatory Molecule Model

CD19 was initially regarded as a negative regulator of BCR signal transduction. This notion resulted from antibody crosslinking studies which demonstrated that anti-CD19 monoclonal antibody binding inhibited proliferative responses, $[Ca^{++}]_i$ mobilization and differentiation subsequent to BCR crosslinking[43-45]. By contrast, crosslinking CD19 with the BCR can also synergistically augment B cell proliferation in vitro[37, 46]. Moreover, coligating CD19 with the BCR lowers the number of surface IgM molecules required for inducing B cell $[Ca^{++}]_i$ mobilization and proliferation[34]. This costimulatory effect led to the suggestion that C3d fragments covalently bound to antigen may coligate the CD19/CD21 complex with the BCR in vivo[47]. In this context, CD19 and BCR signaling would be upregulated when antigen-specific B cells encounter antigen-C3d complexes in vivo such as at sites of inflammation and complement activation. Although this hypothesis has not been formally proven, it provides a concept that generally explains CD19 function during immune responses. However, one concern with this concept is that CD21-deficient mice demonstrate a modest phenotype relative to CD19-deficient mice[48, 49]. At a minimum, this demonstrates that CD19 serves functions in addition to mediating CD21-initiated signals as we have recently demonstrated[50].

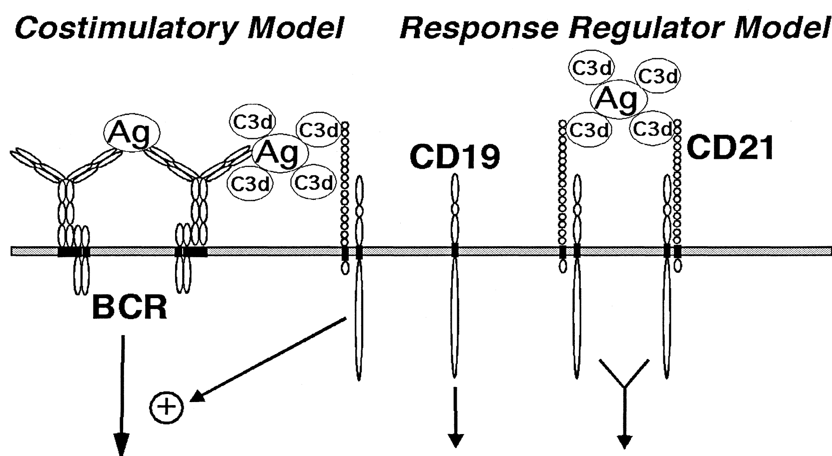


Figure 1. Models for CD19 function in vivo. In the response regulator model, CD21 associated with CD19 binds antigen complexes covalently modified with the C3d fragment of complement (C3d-Ag-C3d) independent of BCR specificity. In the costimulatory model, Ag-C3d complexes crosslink Ag-specific BCRs and CD19 by engaging both CD21 and the BCR.

2.4.2. *Response Regulator Model for CD19 Function*

Studies of mice that lack or overexpress CD19 confirm that CD19 functions as an intrinsic response-regulator[37]. That the majority of mature B cells are uniformly affected by loss or overexpression of CD19 suggests that CD19 regulates B cell function independent of BCR engagement[38-40]. Thus, CD19 functions as a general rheostat to adjust B cell signal transduction independent of B cell antigen-specificity. Thereby, intrinsic CD19 expression levels could regulate B cell activity autonomously, without a need for BCR engagement and independent of CD21 expression or engagement. CD19 may itself possess ligand-binding activity, although this remains to be demonstrated. Alternatively or in addition, C3d-antigen complexes may crosslink CD21 molecules and thereby utilize CD19 to generate signals (Fig. 1). In both cases, CD19/CD21 complex engagement would generate transmembrane signals that could synergize with BCR-induced signals and thereby result in augmented $[Ca^{++}]_i$ and proliferative responses. This is supported by the observation that simultaneous CD19 engagement and BCR engagement generates augmented responses without the need to physically crosslink the BCR and CD19 complexes with each other. Regardless of which model is operable, CD19 synergistically functions as both a co-stimulatory molecule and a response-regulator in the modulation of both basal and BCR-induced signaling in B cells.

3. CD21

3.1. CD21 Structure, Expression, and Function

CD21 is expressed both on B cells and FDCs. CD21 is expressed first by $IgM^{hi}IgD^{lo}$ transitional B cells and is expressed by most mature B cells, where CD19 is usually

expressed in molar excess of CD21[51, 52]. Uniquely, the highest levels of CD21 expression are found on marginal zone B lymphocytes. While CD21 and CD35 (CR1, complement receptor 1) are encoded by different genes in humans, these two receptors are alternative splice products of the same *Cr2* gene in mice[53]. CD21 contains an extracellular domain of 15 or 16 repeating structural elements called short consensus repeat (SCR) domains, a membrane-spanning region, and a 34 amino acid cytoplasmic domain[54, 55]. The short cytoplasmic tail is devoid of known signaling motifs, but is required for CD21 internalization upon ligand binding[56]. In mice, CD35 is generated by the addition of six SCRs to the amino-terminal end of the CD21 protein[53]. The iC3b/C3d,g cleavage fragments of complement component C3 form covalent bonds with foreign antigens or immune complexes to generate C3d(g)-antigen complexes that bind to CD21[57] and signal through the CD19 complex (Fig. 1). Mouse CD35 binds both C3b and C3d, and also associates with CD19[6]. CD35 serves as a cofactor for the hydrolysis of C3b-Ag complexes into C3d,g-Ag, which allows CD21 binding[58]. This process is important for the processing of Ag-antibody complexes and the final deposition of C3d-Ag complexes on the surface of B cells and follicular dendritic cells through CD21. Thus, C3d functions as a ligand for the CD19/21 complex, thereby linking complement activation and B cell signal transduction.

3.2. CD21/35 Deficient Mice

Three independent lines of CD21/35 deficient (CD21/35$^{-/-}$) mice have been generated[48, 49, 59]. However, the CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice generated by Ahearn et al.[48] expresses a hypomorphic cell-surface CD21/35 protein[50, 59]. In these mice, splicing-out of the gene-targeted exon in the *Cr2* locus results in a smaller cell-surface CD21/35 protein (CD21/35^{hypo}) expressed at ~40% of wild type levels that retains ligand-binding activity. Regardless, B cell development is relatively normal in CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice[49, 59]. Although B1a cell development was reported to be reduced in CD21/35^{hypo} mice,[48] we have been unable to detect such a reduction in these particular mice[50] or in our more recently generated CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mouse[59]. All three lines of mice with a genetically disrupted *Cr2* locus exhibit decreased antibody responses to challenge with low-dose T cell dependent (TD) antigens,[48, 49, 59] but generate near normal primary responses to high-dose TD antigens, antigen/adjuvant challenge, or during secondary responses[49, 50, 59-61]. CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice generated in our lab also exhibit significantly reduced germinal center formation, reduced levels of natural serum antibody, and impaired antibody responses to TI-1 and TI-2 antigens. Most strikingly, IgG3 production is markedly impaired in these mice[59].

Many TI and TD antigens activate complement via the alternative pathway or activate the classical pathway after binding natural antibodies that are reactive with pathogenic microorganisms[62-64]. The covalent attachment of C3 cleavage products thereby provides a mechanism by which antigens can be directly targeted to complement receptor-expressing cells, such as marginal zone B cells which express high levels of CD21. TI antigens such as pneumococcal polysaccharide and Group B streptococcus (GBS) capsular polysaccharide preferentially localize on marginal zone B cells and FDCs along with C3[65, 66]. In the absence of C3 or with decreased levels of CD21/35 expression, marginal zone B cells do not bind the TI antigens TNP-Ficoll or GBS PS efficiently in vivo[65, 67]. CD21/35 is required for the localization of C3d-antigen complexes in vivo since CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice are unable to focus tetrameric C3dg complexes to the marginal zones of splenic follicles or on the surface of B cells in vivo[59]. However, C3dg tetramers effectively reveal CD21 ligand binding in wild type mice and exhibit functional activity

on normal, but not $CD21^{-/-}$ B cells, including augmentation of anti-IgM mediated intracellular Ca^{++} flux and activation of p38 MAP kinase[59, 68]. Consistent with this finding, poor responsiveness of neonates to TI-2 antigens is attributed to their insufficient CD21 expression and lack of marginal zone B cells[69]. Thus, CD21/35 may regulate the production of TI antigen-elicited antibodies by targeting C3d-antigen complexes to marginal zone B cell populations, which are produced in normal to augmented numbers even when CD21/35 expression is reduced[59, 70]. Based on the high level of C3dg-tetramer binding observed for naïve B cells in vivo, C3-tagged complexes may augment CD19 function and thereby enhance B cell transmembrane signaling in a large fraction of B cells. This indicates a critical role for CD21/35 not only in the rapid trapping of C3dg-Ag-complexes in marginal zones, but in the localization of C3dg-decorated antigen to B cells in a manner independent of their antigen receptor specificity.

4. CD21/35 REGULATES PROTECTIVE IMMUNITY TO BACTERIA

4.1. Complement Is Required For Protection Against Encapsulated Bacteria

Protection against extracellular bacterial infections relies on complex and overlapping interactions between innate and adaptive immune responses. Innate protection requires complement activation since complement-deficient patients are susceptible to infections with encapsulated bacteria such as *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (*S. pneumoniae*), the predominant cause of community-acquired pneumonias, septicemia, otitis media and meningitis[71-73]. The C3 complement component is particularly important for the efficient opsonization, lysis, and clearance of bacteria[74-78]. Administration of cobra venom factor (CVF), a convertase analog that depletes C3, leads to impaired opsonization and clearance of *S. pneumoniae* by anti-capsular antibody[79]. Furthermore, C3-deficient ($C3^{-/-}$) mice have impaired clearance of *S. pneumoniae*[80]. The decoration of pathogen-derived antigens with C3 breakdown fragments, C3b, iC3b, and C3d provides signals important for the opsonization or destruction of bacteria by phagocytic and nonphagocytic cells bearing appropriate receptors. Furthermore, C3-decorated antigen complexes promote the development of protective humoral immunity. Thus, complement bridges innate and acquired immune responses and is important for complete protection against encapsulated bacteria.

4.2. CD21/35 Is Required For Protection Against Encapsulated Bacteria

We recently investigated the role that CD21/35 plays in the protective immune response to *S. pneumoniae* infection[59]. An important role for CD21/35 during innate and adaptive immune responses was revealed by the dramatic susceptibility of $CD21/35^{-/-}$ mice to acute lethal *S. pneumoniae* infection, despite immunization[59]. CD21/35 expression significantly enhanced the generation of protective humoral immune responses to low dose live bacterial challenge as well as to immunization with heat-killed bacteria. Complete protection of $CD21/35^{-/-}$ mice during bacterial challenge was achieved when mice were given either multiple immunizations or 100-fold higher doses of immunogenic heat-killed bacteria than wild type littermates. These results indicate an

impaired ability of low-concentration antigens to rapidly generate protective responses in $CD21/35^{-/-}$ mice,' despite the intrinsic adjuvanticity of intact bacteria. Since CD21/35 selectively targets antibody-antigen-C3d complexes to B cells and follicular dendritic cells (FDCs),[61, 81] CD21/35 is likely to also selectively focus bacterial antigens to these cells during acute infections. Thereby, CD21/35 expression may facilitate the processing and presentation of antigens at low concentrations, particularly in the absence of pre-formed or natural antibodies where Fc receptor interactions may also facilitate immune complex processing[82-86].

The role of CD21/35 in localization of blood-borne antigens on marginal zone B cells may be central to the susceptibility observed for $CD21/35^{-/-}$ mice. Using model antigens, others have proposed that marginal zone B cell trapping of antigens has a critical role in host defense against bacterial pathogens since the proximity of marginal zone B cells to marginal sinuses insures that they are amongst the first population of cells to encounter blood-borne antigens[87]. Consistent with this, marginal zone B cells generate rapid activation, proliferative and Ig secretory responses[88]. Thus, TI and TD bacterial antigens that activate complement are likely to become focused onto marginal zone B cells by virtue of their high level CD21/35 receptor expression and proximal association with the splenic microvasculature. Thereby, CD21 crosslinking and its activation of the CD19 regulatory pathway may make B cells more responsive to transmembrane signals[89]. This provides yet another molecular example of how the innate and adaptive immune responses cooperatively interact to hasten antigen recognition and enhance the generation of nascent humoral immune responses during life-threatening encounters with virulent pathogens.

The explanation for the impaired generation of protective immunity to encapsulated bacteria in $CD21/35^{-/-}$ mice may also be due to impaired IgG3 antibody responses in the absence of CD21/35 expression. IgG3 is the major mouse IgG isotype produced in response to TI-2 antigens[90]. Mice unable to produce IgG3 in response to TI-2 antigens, such as *xid* and γ3 gene-disrupted mice are more susceptible to pneumococcal infection since IgG3 anti-PS antibodies may be the major opsonin[91, 92]. In humans, IgG2 is the major IgG isotype produced in response to most TI antigens during late ontogeny[93]. Human IgG2-deficiency is associated with increased susceptibility to chronic sinopulmonary infections, highlighting its importance in resistance to encapsulated bacteria[94]. Mouse IgG3 demonstrates superior binding to polysaccharide antigens which results in enhanced activation of effector function, including complement activation and Fc receptor binding[95]. Therefore, deficient IgG3 production by $CD21/35^{-/-}$ mice may be the primary explanation for their increased susceptibility to bacterial infection. Given the essential role of B cells in protection from encapsulated bacteria[96] and the importance of marginal zone and B1a B cell populations in IgG3 responses,[67, 97] localization of C3d complexes to these B cell subsets may be central to the generation of protective antibody responses during acute infections.

5. C3d AS A MOLECULAR ADJUVANT

Covalently linking C3d fragments to antigens results in augmented humoral responses. In the first demonstration of this, immunization of transgenic mice expressing BCR specific for hen egg lysozyme (HEL) with recombinant lysozyme fused to multiple copies of C3d lowered the dose of antigen required for antibody responses comparable to

HEL alone by at least 1,000-fold[35]. Likewise, immunization of mice with DNA-based vaccines encoding HIV-1 gp120 fused to multiple copies of C3d results in higher antibody responses with enhanced avidity maturation when compared to gp120 immunization alone[98, 99]. Immunization of mice with DNA-based vaccines consisting of either influenza or measles virus hemagglutinin fused to multiple copies of C3d also results in more rapid antibody responses and higher neutralizing titers than immunization with antigen alone[100-102]. C3d also functions as a mucosal adjuvant for influenza virus hemagglutinin administered intranasally[103]. Finally, antibody titers and isotype switching in response to pneumococcal capsular polysaccharide type 14 are enhanced when it is conjugated to C3d[104]. C3d is therefore under consideration as an effective molecular adjuvant that may be safe and acceptable for use in vaccines.

C3d is postulated to augment humoral responses by targeting antigen complexes to B cells and FDCs that express CD21/35. In one model, coligation of the BCR and CD19/CD21 by C3d-antigen complexes is proposed to lower the signaling threshold required for B cell activation and expansion (Fig. 1)[34, 47, 105, 106]. Alternatively, C3d-antigen complexes may crosslink cell surface CD21, which can generate transmembrane signals through CD19 regardless of B cell antigen receptor specificity (Fig. 1)[89]. However, a direct role for CD21/35 in this process had never been investigated. Therefore, we assessed the importance of CD21/35 receptor engagement in mediating the immunostimulatory effects of C3d by immunizing CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice with two antigens, streptavidin (SA) and recombinant HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein gp120$_{IIIB}$ (gp120), either alone or complexed to multimers of C3dg or C3d, respectively[107]. Humoral responses to soluble SA and gp120 were impaired in CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice, indicative of the critical role that CD21/35 expression plays in antibody responses to antigens administered in the absence of adjuvants[59]. Unexpectedly, IgG antibody responses to SA-C3dg and gp120-C3d were significantly augmented in CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice in comparison to these antigens given without C3d(g). These effects were also reflected in the markedly enhanced frequency of SA-specific antibody producing cells in both CD21/35$^{-/-}$ and wild type mice immunized with SA-C3dg. Remarkably, this study demonstrates that C3d can function as a molecular adjuvant through CD21/35 receptor-independent pathways.

Adjuvants function in multiple ways, which may include enhancing the in vivo half-life of antigens, augmenting antigen processing and presentation, and inducing cytokine production[108]. Although the precise mechanisms through which C3d functions as a molecular adjuvant remain to be elucidated, several hypotheses can be offered. First, C3d could function as a simple protein carrier. In support of this, OVA functions as an adjuvant for pneumococcal polysaccharide in a manner similar to C3d[104]. Similarly, coupling biotinylated chicken gamma globulin to SA significantly augmented SA antibody responses in both wild type and CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice to levels similar to that elicited by SA-C3d tetramers (unpublished observations). Alternatively, attachment of C3d to antigens could prolong the in vivo half-life of antigen, perhaps by forming molecular aggregates or facilitating molecular interactions. Finally, C3d interacts with numerous serum proteins, cell surface receptors, and membrane-associated regulatory proteins[109]. Thus, C3d aggregates may bind antigen complexes to proteins other than CD21/35, which also enhance humoral responses. Given the unexpected finding that C3d augments humoral immune responses through CD21/35-independent pathways, understanding the mechanisms of C3d action may provide important insight into the identity of other molecules with adjuvant activity that will allow the design of even more potent vaccines.

6. CD19 AND CD21/35 EXPRESSION REGULATE AUTOIMMUNITY

6.1. CD19 Expression Levels Regulate the Development of Autoimmunity

The level of CD19 expressed by B cells influences the development of autoimmunity. For example, lines of hCD19TG$^{+/+}$ mice that overexpress CD19 by as little as 20% produce autoantibodies in a genetic background not normally associated with autoimmunity[110]. Additional autoantibody specificities and titers are manifest with further increases in CD19 expression[3]. Antinuclear antibodies, especially anti-spindle pole antibodies, as well as anti-single-stranded DNA, anti-double-stranded DNA, and anti-histone antibodies, and rheumatoid factor were induced in hCD19TG$^{+/+}$ mice, but not wild type littermate controls. Although multiple molecules involved in a common CD19 signal transduction pathway influence autoimmunity in mice, similar examples in humans have only recently become available. Systemic sclerosis (SSc) is a multisystem disorder of connective tissue characterized by sclerotic changes in the skin and internal organs. Autoantibodies are detected in more than 90% of SSc patients and are considered to play a critical role in the pathogenesis of SSc[111]. Surprisingly, CD19 and CD21 expression levels are 20% higher on B cells from SSc patients compared with healthy individuals, while the expression of other cell surface markers such as CD20, CD22, and CD40 is normal[110]. Like mice that overexpress CD19, the tight-skin mouse, a genetic model for human SSc, also contains spontaneously activated B cells and autoantibodies against SSc-specific target autoantigens[112]. Tight-skin mice also develop cutaneous fibrosis, like in SSc patients. In contrast to mice that overexpress CD19, mice that are CD19$^{-/-}$ are hyporesponsive to transmembrane signals as compared to wild type mice. CD19-deficiency in tight-skin mice results in quiescent B cells, with significantly reduced autoantibody production and skin fibrosis[112]. Thus, modest alterations in CD19 expression could contribute to the development of autoantibodies in humans. Moreover, subtle alterations in the expression or function of other regulatory molecules involved in the CD19 signal transduction pathway may also predetermine autoimmune susceptibility in other syndromes. Although speculative, it is possible that graded alterations in expression or function in these "response-regulators" may result in the spectra of autoantibody specificities that characterize different autoimmune diseases.

6.2. CD21 Regulates CD19 Expression: Implications For Autoimmunity

Altered CD21 function correlates with autoimmunity in mouse models[113-115]. In addition, self-reactive B cells with 60% reduced CD21 expression are not anergized by soluble self-antigen in mouse models of tolerance[50, 114]. Recent studies using CD21/35$^{-/-}$ and C4$^{-/-}$ mice suggest that complement and CD21 also regulate the elimination of self-reactive B cells, since lupus-prone *lpr* mice lacking CD21 or C4 have exacerbated disease, presumably due to increased autoantibodies[114]. Spontaneous autoimmunity due to the impaired clearance of immune complexes has also been found in C4$^{-/-}$ mice, but not in CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice[116]. Although these studies suggest a direct role for CD21 in regulating B cell function and autoantibody production, this may actually reflect a role for CD21 in regulating cell surface CD19 expression.

The phenotypes of CD19$^{-/-}$, CD21/35$^{-/-}$ and C3$^{-/-}$ mice have demonstrated that CD19, CD21 and C3 expression are interrelated and may form a regulatory loop that influences B cell function. Specifically, CD21 expression is increased by >30% on peripheral B cells from C3$^{-/-}$ littermates[50]. This suggests that ongoing C3d,g generation may

chronically engage CD21, resulting in receptor internalization as occurs during inflammatory responses or in patients with systemic autoimmune disease[117]. CD21 engagement may result in increased CD19 turnover, which could limit signal transduction or partially desensitize B cells chronically stimulated through the CD19-CD21 complex. Consistent with this concept, CD19 expression levels are >20% higher on peripheral B cells of CD21/35^{hypo} mice[50] and ~50% higher on B cells from mice completely deficient in CD21/35 expression[59]. Increased CD19 expression on CD21/35$^{-/-}$ B cells may be functionally significant as similar increases in CD19 expression predispose mice to autoimmunity[3, 110]. Therefore, increased CD19 expression may explain why CD21/35-deficiency contributes to autoimmunity, since CD21 expression influences CD19 function indirectly by regulating its cell surface expression. Alternatively, or in addition, the CD19/CD21 complex may downregulate BCR signaling in B cells following CD21 hypercrosslinking by immune complexes[118, 119]. In this context, CD19/CD21 hypercrosslinking appears to sequester the available pool of intracellular Lyn away from other signaling molecules and thereby downregulates B cell responses to BCR ligation. In CD21/35$^{-/-}$ mice, C3d-bearing immune complexes may augment autoantibody production and predispose these mice to autoimmunity. Thus, tightly regulated CD19 and CD21/35 expression levels balance intrinsic signal transduction thresholds and B cell responsiveness to transmembrane signals.

7. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This research was supported by a Basic Research Grant from theArthritis Foundation and NIH grants, AI56363 and CA96547. K.M.H. was supported in part by a fellowship from the Lymphoma Research Foundation.

8. REFERENCES

1. T. F. Tedder, Response-regulators of B lymphocyte signaling thresholds provide a context for antigen receptor signal transduction. *Semin. Immunol.* **10**, 259-265 (1998).
2. S. Sato, D. A. Steeber, P. J. Jansen and T. F. Tedder, CD19 expression levels regulate B lymphocyte development: human CD19 restores normal function in mice lacking endogenous CD19. *J. Immunol.* **158**, 4662-4669 (1997).
3. S. Sato, N. Ono, D. A. Steeber, D. S. Pisetsky and T. F. Tedder, CD19 regulates B lymphocyte signaling thresholds critical for the development of B-1 lineage cells and autoimmunity. *J. Immunol.* **157**, 4371-4378 (1996).
4. T. F. Tedder and C. M. Isaacs, Isolation of cDNAs encoding the CD19 antigen of human and mouse B lymphocytes: A new member of the immunoglobulin superfamily. *J. Immunol.* **143**, 712-717 (1989).
5. L.-J. Zhou, D. C. Ord, A. L. Hughes and T. F. Tedder, Structure and domain organization of the CD19 antigen of human, mouse and guinea pig B lymphocytes. Conservation of the extensive cytoplasmic domain. *J. Immunol.* **147**, 1424-1432 (1991).
6. I. Krop, A. L. Shaffer, D. T. Fearon and M. S. Schlissel, The signaling activity of murine CD19 is regulated during B cell development. *J. Immunol.* **157**, 48-56 (1996).
7. A. W. Boyd, K. C. Anderson, A. S. Freedman, D. C. Fisher, B. Slaughenhoupt, S. F. Schlossman and L. M. Nadler, Studies of *in vitro* activation and differentiation of human B lymphocytes. I. Phenotypic and functional characterization of the B cell population responding to anti-Ig antibody. *J. Immunol.* **134**, 1516-1523 (1985).
8. L. E. Bradbury, G. S. Kansas, S. Levy, R. L. Evans and T. F. Tedder, The CD19/CD21 signal transducing complex of human B lymphocytes includes the target of antiproliferative antibody-1 and Leu-13 molecules. *J. Immunol.* **149**, 2841-2850 (1992).

9. S. Levy, S. C. Todd and H. T. Maecker, CD81 (TAPA-1): a molecule involved in signal transduction and cell adhesion in the immune system. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **16**, 89-110 (1998).
10. H. T. Maecker and S. Levy Normal lymphocyte development but delayed humoral immune response in CD81-null mice. *J. Exp. Med.* **185**, 1505-1510 (1997).
11. T. Miyazaki, U. Muller and K. S. Campbell, Normal development but differentially altered proliferative responses of lymphocytes in mice lacking CD81. *EMBO J.* **16**, 4217-4225 (1997).
12. E. N. Tsitsikov, J.-C. Gutierrez-Ramos and R. S. Geha, Impaired CD19 expression and signaling, enhanced antibody response to type II T-independent antigen and reduction of B-1 cells in CD81-deficient mice. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **94**, 10844-10849 (1997).
13. T. Shoham, R. Rajapaksa, C. Boucheix, E. Rubinstein, J. C. Poe, T. F. Tedder and S. Levy, The tetraspanin CD81 regulates the expression of CD19 during B cell development in a postendoplasmic reticulum compartment. *J. Immunol.* **171**, 4062-4072 (2003).
14. G. A. Deblandre, O. P. Marinx, S. S. Evans, S. Majjaj, O. Leo, D. Caput, G. A. Huez and M. G. Wathelet, Expression cloning of an interferon-inducible 17-kDa membrane protein implicated in the control of cell growth. *J. Biol. Chem.* **270**, 23860-23866 (1995).
15. L. E. Bradbury, V. S. Goldmacher and T. F. Tedder, The CD19 signal transduction complex of B lymphocytes: deletion of the CD19 cytoplasmic domain alters signal transduction but not complex formation with TAPA-1 and Leu-13. *J. Immunol.* **151**, 2915-2927 (1993).
16. A. K. Matsumoto, D. R. Martin, R. H. Carter, L. B. Klickstein, J. M. Ahearn and D. T. Fearon, Functional dissection of the CD21/CD19/TAPA-1/Leu-13 complex of B lymphocytes. *J. Exp. Med.* **178**, 1407-1417 (1993).
17. C. J. van Noesel, A. C. Lankester, G. M. van Schijndel and R. A. van Lier, The CR2/CD19 complex on human B cells contains the src-family kinase Lyn. *Int. Immunol.* **5**, 699-705 (1993).
18. F. M. Uckun, A. L. Burkhardt, L. Jarvis, X. Jun, B. Stealey, I. Dibirdik, D. E. Myers, L. Tuel-Ahlgren and J. B. Bolen, Signal transduction through the CD19 receptor during discrete developmental stages of human B-cell ontogeny. *J. Biol. Chem.* **268**, 21172-21184 (1993).
19. N. J. Chalupny, S. B. Kanner, G. L. Schieven, S. Wee, L. K. Gilliland, A. Aruffo and J. A. Ledbetter, Tyrosine phosphorylation of CD19 in pre-B and mature B cells. *EMBO J.* **12**, 2691-2696 (1993).
20. M. Fujimoto, J. C. Poe, P. J. Jansen, S. Sato and T. F. Tedder CD19 amplifies B lymphocyte signal transduction by regulating Src-family protein tyrosine kinase activation. *J. Immunol.* **162**, 7088-7094 (1999).
21. M. Fujimoto, Y. Fujimoto, J. C. Poe, P. J. Jansen, C. A. Lowell, A. L. DeFranco and T. F. Tedder, CD19 regulates Src-family protein tyrosine kinase activation in B lymphocytes through processive amplification. *Immunity* **13**, 47-57 (2000).
22. M. Hasegawa, M. Fujimoto, J. C. Poe, D. A. Steeber, C. A. Lowell and T. F. Tedder, A CD19-dependent signaling pathway regulates autoimmunity in Lyn-deficient mice. *J. Immunol.* **167**, 2469-2478 (2001).
23. M. Fujimoto, J. C. Poe, M. Inaoki and T. F. Tedder, CD19 regulates B lymphocyte responses to transmembrane signals. *Semin. Immunol.* **10**, 267-277 (1998).
24. P. A. Zipfel, M. Grove, K. Blackburn, M. Fujimoto, T. F. Tedder and A. M. Pendergast, The c-Abl tyrosine kinase is regulated downstream of the B cell antigen receptor and interacts with CD19. *J. Immunol.* **165**, 6872-6879 (2000).
25. A. Cherukuri, P. C. Cheng, H. W. Sohn and S. K. Pierce, The CD19/CD21 complex functions to prolong B cell antigen receptor signaling from lipid rafts. *Immunity* **14**, 169-179 (2001).
26. M. Fujimoto, A. P. Bradney, J. C. Poe, D. A. Steeber and T. F. Tedder, Modulation of B lymphocyte antigen receptor signal transduction by a CD19/CD22 regulatory loop. *Immunity* **11**, 191-200 (1999).
27. S. Sato, P. J. Jansen and T. F. Tedder, CD19 and CD22 reciprocally regulate Vav tyrosine phosphorylation during B lymphocyte signaling. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* **94**, 13158-13162 (1997).
28. W. K. Weng, L. Jarvis and T. W. LeBien, Signaling through CD19 activates vav/mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway and induces formation of a CD19/vav/phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase complex in human B cell precursors. *J. Biol. Chem.* **269**, 32514-32521 (1994).
29. D. A. Tuveson, R. H. Carter, S. P. Soltoff and D. T. Fearon, CD19 of B cells as a surrogate kinase insert region to bind phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase. *Science* **260**, 986-989 (1993).
30. A. M. Buhl, C. M. Pleiman, R. C. Rickert and J. C. , Qualitative regulation of B cell antigen receptor signaling by CD19: Selective requirement for PI3-kinase activation, inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate production and Ca^{2+} mobilization. *J. Exp. Med.* **186**, 1897-1910 (1997).
31. G. M. Doody, D. D. Balladeau, E. Clayton, A. Hutchings, R. Berland, S. McAdam, P. J. Leibson and M. Turner, Vav-2 controls NFAT-dependent tranascription in B- but not T-lymphocytes. *EMBO J.* **19**, 6173-6184 (2000).

32. S. R. Brooks, X. Li, E. J. Volanakis and R. H. Carter, Systematic analysis of the role of CD19 cytoplasmic tyrosines in enhancement of activation in Daudi human B cells: clustering of phospholipase C and Vav and of Grb2 and Sos with different CD19 tyrosines. *J. Immunol.* **164**, 3123-3131 (2000).
33. J. C. Poe, M. Fujimoto, P. J. Jansen, A. S. Miller and T. F. Tedder, CD22 forms a quaternary complex with SHIP, Grb2 and Shc. A pathway for regulation of B lymphocyte antigen receptor-induced calcium flux. *J. Biol. Chem.* **275**, 17420-17427 (2000).
34. R. H. Carter and D. T. Fearon, CD19: lowering the threshold for antigen receptor stimulation of B lymphocytes. *Science* **256**, 105-107 (1992).
35. P. W. Dempsey, M. E. D. Allison, S. Akkaraju, C. C. Goodnow and D. T. Fearon, C3d of complement as a molecular adjuvant: bridging innate and acquired immunity. *Science* **271**, 348-350 (1996).
36. R. M. Tooze, G. M. Doody and D. T. Fearon, Counterregulation by the coreceptors CD19 and CD22 of MAP kinase activation by membrane immunoglobulin. *Immunity* **7**, 59-67 (1997).
37. T. F. Tedder, M. Inaoki and S. Sato, The CD19/21 complex regulates signal transduction thresholds governing humoral immunity and autoimmunity. *Immunity* **6**, 107-118 (1997).
38. P. Engel, L.-J. Zhou, D. C. Ord, S. Sato, B. Koller and T. F. Tedder, Abnormal B lymphocyte development, activation and differentiation in mice that lack or overexpress the CD19 signal transduction molecule. *Immunity* **3**, 39-50 (1995).
39. L.-J. Zhou, H. M. Smith, T. J. Waldschmidt, R. Schwarting, J. Daley and T. F. Tedder, Tissue-specific expression of the human CD19 gene in transgenic mice inhibits antigen-independent B lymphocyte development. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* **14**, 3884-3894 (1994).
40. R. C. Rickert, K. Rajewsky and J. Roes, Impairment of T-cell-dependent B-cell responses and B-1 cell development in CD19-deficient mice. *Nature* **376**, 352-355 (1995).
41. S. Sato, D. A. Steeber and T. F. Tedder, The CD19 signal transduction molecule is a response regulator of B-lymphocyte differentiation. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **92**, 11558-11562 (1995).
42. S. Sato, A. S. Miller, M. C. Howard and T. F. Tedder, Regulation of B lymphocyte development and activation by the CD19/CD21/CD81/Leu 13 complex requires the cytoplasmic domain of CD19. *J. Immunol.* **159**, 3278-3287 (1997).
43. A. Pezzutto, B. Dorken, P. S. Rabinovitch, J. A. Ledbetter, G. Moldenhauer and E. A. Clark, CD19 monoclonal antibody HD37 inhibits anti-immunoglobulin-induced B cell activation and proliferation. *J. Immunol.* **138**, 2793-2799 (1987).
44. T. B. Barrett, G. L. Shu, K. E. Draves, A. Pezzutto and E. A. Clark, Signaling through CD19, Fc receptors or transforming growth factor-ß: each inhibits the activation of resting human B cells differently. *Eur. J. Immunol.* **20**, 1053-1059 (1990).
45. R. E. Callard, K. P. Rigley, S. H. Smith, S. Thurstan and J. G. Shields, CD19 regulation of human B cell responses. B cell proliferation and antibody secretion are inhibited or enhanced by ligation of the CD19 surface glycoprotein depending on the stimulating signal used. *J. Immunol.* **148**, 2983-2987 (1992).
46. D. T. Fearon and R. H. Carter, The CD19/CR2/TAPA-1 complex of B lymphocytes: linking natural to acquired immunity. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **13**, 127-149 (1995).
47. C. J. M. van Noesel, A. C. Lankester and R. A. W. van Lier, Dual antigen recognition by B cells. *Immunol. Today* **14**, 8-11 (1993).
48. J. M. Ahearn, M. B. Fischer, D. Croix, S. Goerg, M. Ma, J. Xia, X. Zhou, R. G. Howard, T. L. Rothstein and M. C. Carroll, Disruption of the *Cr2* locus results in a reduction in B-1a cells and in an impaired B cell response to T-dependent antigen. *Immunity* **4**, 251-262 (1996).
49. H. Molina, V. M. Holers, B. Li, Y.-F. Fang, S. Mariathasan, J. Goellner, J. Strauss-Schoenberger, R. W. Karr and D. D. Chaplin, Markedly impaired humoral immune response in mice deficient in complement receptors 1 and 2. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **93**, 3357-3361 (1996).
50. M. Hasegawa, M. Fujimoto, J. C. Poe, D. A. Steeber and T. F. Tedder, CD19 can regulate B lymphocyte signal transduction independent of complement activation. *J. Immunol.* **167**, 3190-3200 (2001).
51. T. F. Tedder, L. T. Clement and M. D. Cooper Discontinuous expression of a membrane antigen (HB-7) during B lymphocyte differentiation. *Tissue Antigens* **24**, 140-149 (1984).
52. K. Takahashi, Y. Kozono, T. J. Waldschmidt, D. Berthiaume, R. J. Quigg, A. Baron and V. M. Holers, Mouse complement receptors type 1 (CR1; CD35) and type 2 (CR2; CD21). Expression on normal B cell subpopulations and decreased levels during the development of autoimmunity in MRL/*lpr* mice. *J. Immunol.* **159**, 1557-1569 (1997).
53. H. Molina, T. Kinoshita, K. Inoue, J.-C. Carel and V. M. Holers, A molecular and immunochemical characterization of mouse CR2. Evidence for a single gene model of mouse complement receptors 1 and 2. *J. Immunol.* **145**, 2974-2983 (1990).
54. M. D. Moore, N. R. Cooper, B. F. Tack and G. R. Nemerow, Molecular cloning of the cDNA encoding the Epstein-Barr virus/C3d receptor (complement receptor type 2) of human B lymphocytes. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **84**, 9194-9198. (1987).

55. J. J. Weis, D. T. Fearon, L. B. Klickstein, W. W. Wong, S. A. Richards, A. d. Kops, J. A. Smith and J. H. Weis, Identification of a partial cDNA clone for the C3d/Epstein-Barr virus receptor of human B lymphocytes: homology with the receptor for fragments C3b and C4b of the third and fourth components of complement. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **83**, 5639-5643. (1986).
56. J. C. Carel, B. L. Myones, B. Frazier and V. M. Holers, Structural requirements for C3d,g/Epstein-Barr virus receptor (CR2/CD21) ligand binding, internalization and viral infection. *J. Biol. Chem.* **265**, 12293-12297 (1990).
57. D. T. Fearon and M. C. Carroll, Regulation of B lymphocyte responses to foreign and self-antigens by the CD19/CD21 complex. *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **18**, 393-422 (2000).
58. J. M. Ahearn and D. T. Fearon, Structure and function of the complement receptors, CR1 (CD35) and CR2 (CD21). *Adv. Immunol.* **46**, 183-219 (1989).
59. K. M. Haas, M. Hasegawa, D. A. Steeber, J. C. Poe, M. D. Zabel, C. B. Bock, D. R. Karp, D. E. Briles, J. H. Weis and T. F. Tedder, Complement receptors CD21/35 link innate and protective immunity during *Streptococcus pneumoniae* infection by regulating IgG3 antibody responses. *Immunity* **17**, 713-723 (2002).
60. Z. Chen, S. B. Koralov, M. Gendelman, M. C. Carroll and G. Kelsoe, Humoral immune responses in $Cr2^{-/-}$ Mice: Enhanced affinity maturation but impaired antibody persistence. *J. Immunol.* **164**, 4522-4532 (2000).
61. X. Wu, N. Jiang, Y. Fang, C. Xu, D. Mao, J. Singh, Y. Fu and H. Molina, Impaired affinity maturation in $Cr2^{-/-}$ mice is rescued by adjuvants without improvement in germinal center development. *J. Immunol.* **165**, 3119-3127 (2000).
62. A. W. Griffioen, G. T. Rijkers, P. Janssens-Korpela and B. J. Zegers, Pneumococcal polysaccharides complexed with C3d bind to human B lymphocytes via complement receptor type 2. *Infect. Immun.* **59**, 1839-1845. (1991).
63. T. Manser, K. M. Tumas-Brundage, L. P. Casson, A. M. Giusti, S. Hande, E. Notidis and K. A. Vora, The roles of antibody variable region hypermutation and selection in the development of the memory B-cell compartment. *Immunol. Rev.* **162**, 183-196 (1998).
64. J. Pryjma, J. H. Humphrey and G. G. Klaus, C3 activation and T-independent B cell stimulation. *Nature* **252**, 505-506. (1974).
65. O. G. Pozdnyakova, H.K. Guttormsen, F. N. Lalani, M. C. Carroll and D. L. Kasper, Impaired antibody response to group B streptococcal type III capsular polysaccharide in C3- and complement receptor 2-deficient mice. *J Immunol.* **170**, 84-90. (2003).
66. M. J. Peset Llopis, G. Harms, M. J. Hardonk and W. Timens, Human immune response to pneumococcal polysaccharides: complement- mediated localization preferentially on CD21-positive splenic marginal zone B cells and follicular dendritic cells. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* **97**, 1015-1024 (1996).
67. R. Guinamard, M. Okigaki, J. Schlessinger and J. V. Ravetch, Absence of marginal zone B cells in Pyk-2-deficient mice defines their role in the humoral responses. *Nature Immunol.* **1**, 31-36 (2000).
68. S. E. Henson, D. Smith, S. A. Boackle, V. M. Holers and D. R. Karp, Generation of recombinant human C3dg tetramers for the analysis of CD21 binding and function. *J. Immunol. Methods* **258**, 97-109. (2001).
69. W. Timens, A. Boes, T. Rozeboom-Uiterwijk and S. Poppema, Immaturity of the human splenic marginal zone in infancy. Possible contribution to the deficient infant immune response. *J. Immunol.* **143**, 3200-3206. (1989).
70. A. Cariappa, M. Tang, C. Parng, E. Nebelitskiy, M. Carroll, K. Georgopoulos and S. Pillai, The follicular versus marginal zone B lymphocyte cell fate decision is regulated by Aiolos, Btk, and CD21. *Immunity* **14**, 603-615. (2001).
71. J. E. Figueroa and P. Densen, Infectious diseases associated with complement deficiencies. *Clin. Microbiol. Rev.* **4**, 359-395. (1991).
72. L. A. Burman, R. Norrby and B. Trollfors, Invasive pneumococcal infections: incidence, predisposing factors, and prognosis. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* **7**, 133-142. (1985).
73. I. D. Riley and R. M. Douglas, An epidemiologic approach to pneumococcal disease. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* **3**, 233-245. (1981).
74. M. Botto and M. J. Walport, Hereditary deficiency of C3 in animals and humans. *Int. Rev. Immunol.* **10**, 37-50 (1993).
75. J. A. Winkelstein, The role of complement in the host's defense against Streptococcus pneumoniae. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* **3**, 289-298. (1981).
76. E. J. Brown, S. W. Hosea, C. H. Hammer, C. G. Burch and M. M. Frank, A quantitative analysis of the interactions of antipneumococcal antibody and complement in experimental pneumococcal bacteremia. *J. Clin. Invest.* **69**, 85-98. (1982).
77. G. J. Noel, S. L. Katz and P. J. Edelson, The role of C3 in mediating binding and ingestion of group B streptococcus serotype III by murine macrophages. *Pediatr. Res.* **30**, 118-123. (1991).

78. M. S. Borzy, A. Gewurz, L. Wolff, D. Houghton and E. Lovrien, Inherited C3 deficiency with recurrent infections and glomerulonephritis. *Am. J. Dis. Child.* **142**, 79-83. (1988).
79. E. J. Brown, S. W. Hosea and M. M. Frank, The role of complement in the localization of pneumococci in the splanchnic reticuloendothelial system during experimental bacteremia. *J. Immunol.* **126**, 2230-2235. (1981).
80. A. Circolo, G. Garnier, W. Fukuda, X. Wang, T. Hidvegi, A. J. Szalai, D. E. Briles, J. E. Volanakis, R. A. Wetsel and H. R. Colten, Genetic disruption of the murine complement C3 promoter region generates deficient mice with extrahepatic expression of C3 mRNA. *Immunopharmacology* **42**, 135-149. (1999).
81. Y. Fang, C. Xu, Y.-X. Fu, V. M. Holers and H. Molina, Expression of complement receptors 1 and 2 on follicular dendritic cells is necessary for the generation of a strong antigen-specific IgG response. *J. Immunol.* **160**, 5273-5279 (1998).
82. J. Arvieux, H. Yssel and M. G. Colomb, Antigen-bound C3b and C4b enhance antigen-presenting cell function in activation of human T-cell clones. *Immunology* **65**, 229-235. (1988).
83. S. A. Boackle, V. M. Holers and D. R. Karp CD21 augments antigen presentation in immune individuals. *Eur. J. Immunol.* **27**, 122-129 (1997).
84. S. A. Boackle, M. A. Morris, V. M. Holers and D. R. Karp, Complement opsonization is required for presentation of immune complexes by resting peripheral blood B cells. *J. Immunol.* **161**, 6537-6543. (1998).
85. B. P. Thornton, V. Vetvicka and G. D. Ross, Natural antibody and complement-mediated antigen processing and presentation by B lymphocytes. *J. Immunol.* **152**, 1727-1737. (1994).
86. A. Cherukuri, P. C. Cheng and S. K. Pierce, The role of the CD19/CD21 complex in B cell processing and presentation of complement-tagged antigens. *J. Immunol.* **167**, 163-172. (2001).
87. F. Martin, A. M. Oliver and J. F. Kearney, Marginal zone and B1 B cells unite in the early response against T- independent blood-borne particulate antigens. *Immunity* **14**, 617-629. (2001).
88. A. M. Oliver, F. Martin and J. F. Kearney, $IgM^{high}CD21^{high}$ lymphocytes enriched in the splenic marginal zone generate effector cells more rapidly than the bulk of follicular B cells. *J. Immunol.* **162**, 7198-7207 (1999).
89. J. C. Poe, M. Hasegawa and T. F. Tedder, CD19, CD21 and CD22: multifaceted response regulators of B lymphocyte signal transduction. *Int. Rev. Immunol.* **20**, 739-762 (2001).
90. R. M. Perlmutter, D. Hansburg, D. E. Briles, R. A. Nicolotti and J. M. Davie, Subclass restriction of murine anti-carbohydrate antibodies. *J. Immunol.* **121**, 566-572. (1978).
91. J. McLay, E. Leonard, S. Petersen, D. Shapiro, N. S. Greenspan and J. R. Schreiber, Gamma-3 gene-disrupted mice selectively deficient in the dominant IgG subclass made to bacterial polysaccharides. II. Increased susceptibility to fatal pneumococcal sepsis due to absence of anti-polysaccharide IgG3 is corrected by induction of anti-polysaccharide IgG1. *J. Immunol.* **168**, 3437-3443. (2002).
92. D. E. Briles, W. H. Benjamin, Jr., W. J. Huster and B. Posey, Genetic approaches to the study of disease resistance: with special emphasis on the use of recombinant inbred mice. *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* **124**, 21-35 (1986).
93. P. G. Shackelford, S. J. Nelson, A. T. Palma and M. H. Nahm, Human antibodies to group A streptococcal carbohydrate. Ontogeny, subclass restriction, and clonal diversity. *J. Immunol.* **140**, 3200-3205. (1988).
94. T. W. Kuijpers, R. S. Weening and T. A. Out, IgG subclass deficiencies and recurrent pyogenic infections: unresponsiveness against bacterial polysaccharide antigens. *Allergol. Immunopathol.* **20**, 28-34. (1992).
95. N. S. Greenspan and L. J. Cooper, Cooperative binding by mouse IgG3 antibodies: implications for functional affinity, effector function, and isotype restriction. *Springer Semin. Immunopathol.* **15**, 275-291 (1993).
96. H. Wardemann, T. Boehm, N. Dear and R. Carsetti, B-1a B cells that link the innate and adaptive immune responses are lacking in the absence of the spleen. *J. Exp. Med.* **195**, 771-780 (2002).
97. R. R. Hardy, C. E. Carmack, Y. S. Li and K. Hayakawa, Distinctive developmental origins and specificities of murine $CD5^{+}$ B cells. *Immunol. Rev.* **137**, 91-118 (1994).
98. T. M. Ross, Y. Xu, T. D. Green, D. C. Montefiori and H. L. Robinson, Enhanced avidity maturation of antibody to human immunodeficiency virus envelope: DNA vaccination with gp120-C3d fusion proteins. *AIDS Res. and Human Retroviruses* **17**, 829-835 (2001).
99. T. D. Green, D. C. Montefiori and T. M. Ross, Enhancement of antibodies to the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 envelope by using the molecular adjuvant C3d. *J. Virology* **77**, 2046-2055 (2003).
100. J. A. Mitchell, T. D. Green, R. A. Bright and T. M. Ross, Induction of heterosubtypic immunity to influenza A virus using a DNA vaccine expressing hemagglutinin-C3d fusion proteins. *Vaccine* **21**, 902-914 (2003).
101. T. D. Green, B. R. Newton, P. Rota, Y. Xu , H. L. Robinson and T. M. Ross, Immune responses in mice to measles hemagglutin-C3d DNA vaccinations. *Vaccine* **20**, 242-248 (2002).

102. T. M. Ross, Y. Xu, R. A. Bright and H. L. Robinson, C3d enhancement of antibodies to hemagglutinin accelerates protection against influenza challenge. *Nature Immunol.* **1**, 127-131 (2000).
103. I. Watanabe, T. M. Ross, S. I. Tamura, T. Ichinohe, S. Ito, H. Takahashi, H. Sawa, J. Chiba, T. Kurata, T. Sata and H. Hasegawa, Protection against influenza virus infection by intranasal administration of C3d-fused hemagglutinin. *Vaccine* **21**, 4532-4538. (2003).
104. S. T. Test, J. Mitsuyoshi, C. C. Connolly and A. H. Lucas, Increased immunogenicity and induction of class switching by conjugation of complement C3d to pneumococcal serotype 14 capsular polysaccharide. *Infect. Immun.* **69**, 3031-3040. (2001).
105. R. H. Carter, M. O. Spycher, Y. C. Ng, R. Hoffman and D. T. Fearon, Synergistic interaction between complement receptor type 2 and membrane IgM on B lymphocytes. *J. Immunol.* **141**, 457-463 (1988).
106. J. D. Fingeroth, M. A. Benedict, D. N. Levy and J. L. Strominger, Identification of murine complement receptor type 2. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**, 242-246 (1989).
107. K. M. Haas, F. R. Toapanta, J. A. Oliver, J. C. Poe, J. H. Weis, D. R. Karp, J. F. Bower, T. M. Ross and T. F. Tedder, C3d functions as a molecular adjuvant in the absence of CD21/35 expression. (submitted).
108. F. R. Vogel Improving vaccine performance with adjuvants. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **30 Suppl 3**, S266-270 (2000).
109. M. Bennett and T. Leanderson, Was it there all the time? *Scand. J. of Immunol.* **57**, 499-505 (2003).
110. S. Sato, M. Hasegawa, M. Fujimoto, T. F. Tedder and K. Takehara, Quantitative genetic variation in CD19 expression correlates with autoimmunity in mice and humans. *J. Immunol.* **165**, 6635-6643 (2000).
111. Y. Okano Antinuclear antibody in systemic sclerosis (scleroderma). *Rheum. Dis. Clin. North Am.* **22**, 709-735 (1996).
112. E. Saito, M. Fujimoto, M. Hasegawa, K. Komura, Y. Hamaguchi, Y. Kaburagi, T. Nagaoka, K. Takehara, T. F. Tedder and S. Sato, CD19-dependent B lymphocyte signaling thresholds influence skin fibrosis and autoimmunity in the tight-skin mouse. *J. Clin. Invest* **109**, 1453-1462 (2002).
113. S. A. Boackle, V. M. Holers, X. Chen, G. Szakonyi, D. R. Karp, E. K. Wakeland and L. Morel, Cr2, a candidate gene in the murine Sle1c lupus susceptibility locus, encodes a dysfunctional protein. *Immunity* **15**, 775-785. (2001).
114. A. P. Prodeus, S. Goerg, L. M. Shen, O. O. Pozdnyakova, L. Chu, E. M. Alicot, C. C. Goodnow and M. C. Carroll, A critical role for complement in maintenance of self-tolerance. *Immunity* **9**, 721-731 (1998).
115. M. Carroll, The role of complement in B cell activation and tolerance. *Adv. Immunol.* **74**, 61-88 (2000).
116. Z. Chen, S. B. Koralov and G. Kelsoe, Complement C4 inhibits systemic autoimmunity through a mechanism independent of complement receptors CR1 and CR2. *J. Exp. Med.* **192**, 1339-1351 (2000).
117. J. P. Atkinson, in: *Systemic Lupus Erythematosus*. edited by R. G. Lahita (Churchill Livingston, Edinburgh; 1992), pp. 87-102.
118. M. Fujimoto, J. C. Poe, M. Hasegawa and T. F. Tedder, CD19 amplification of B lymphocyte Ca^{2+} responses: A role for Lyn sequestration in extinguishing negative regulation. *J. Biol. Chem.* **276**, 44820-44827 (2001).
119. L. Chakravarty, M. D. Zabel, J. J. Weis and J. H. Weis, Depletion of Lyn kinase from the BCR complex and inhibition of B cell activation by excess CD21 ligation. *Intl. Immunol.* **14**, 139-146 (2002).

17

ROLE OF COMPLEMENT RECEPTOR 2 IN THE PATHOGENESIS OF SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

Susan A. Boackle*

1. INTRODUCTION

A number of recent studies have suggested that complement receptor type 2 (CR2, CD21) may play a role in the development of systemic autoimmunity. This receptor, located primarily on B cells and follicular dendritic cells in mice with a broader distribution in humans, binds C3 degradation products that have become covalently bound to antigen or immune complexes in the process of complement activation. Its role in both normal immune responses as well as systemic autoimmune disease has been supported by studies of mice in which the gene has been knocked out by homologous recombination. Furthermore, it is structurally and functionally altered in the NZM2410 mouse model of lupus, and is a strong candidate gene for lupus susceptibility in this model. Based on its known functions, several mechanisms can be hypothesized to explain its potential role in the pathogenesis of systemic lupus erythematosus.

2. COMPLEMENT RECEPTOR 2

2.1. Structure, Expression, and Regulation of CR2

CR2 is a surface glycoprotein composed of 15 repeating 60-70 amino acid extracellular subunits termed short consensus repeats (SCRs), a transmembrane domain, and a short cytoplasmic tail. In humans, a 16 SCR form of CR2 has been identified that is generated by alternative splicing of a single exon [1, 2]. CR2 is located primarily on mature B cells and follicular dendritic cells (FDC) in mice, although it has also been identified on peritoneal mast cells [3] and on a subset of activated T cells [4]. In humans, it is expressed more broadly, and has been found on mature B cells [5], thymocytes [6, 7], a subset

*Susan A. Boackle, University of Colorado Health Sciences Center, Denver, Colorado 80262.

of CD4 and CD8 peripheral T cells [8, 9], FDC [10], basophils [11], keratinocytes [12], astrocytes[13], and epithelial cells [14]. Regulatory elements in the proximal promoter control the level of CR2 expressed on cells [15-19], and an intronic silencing mechanism controls cell and lineage specificity [20-23]. In mice, CR1 and CR2 are transcribed from a single gene by alternative mRNA splicing [24], while in humans they are derived from two distinct but closely linked genes on chromosome 1. A soluble form of CR2 has been identified in human serum and supernatants of human B cell lines. Soluble CR2 is likely generated by proteolysis and is believed to be shed from activated B cells [25, 26].

2.2. CR2 Ligands

All three pathways of complement activation, classical, alternative, and lectin, converge in the cleavage of C3 by convertase enzymes specific to each pathway. Cleavage of C3 results in the generation of C3b fragments that are covalently attached to the activating substrate and serve as ligands, along with C4b-bound antigens, for complement receptor type 1 (CR1/CD35). C3b is then inactivated to iC3b and C3d, which are the specific ligands for complement receptor type 2 (CR2/CD21) [27, 28]. Human CR2 interacts with its C3d ligand primarily via SCR2 [29]. In addition, human CR2 also binds Epstein Barr virus [30], CD23 [31], and interferon-α [32].

2.3. Functions of CR2

CR2 has been shown to have multiple effects on B and T cell responses, including the amplification of antigen-induced B cell activation through surface IgM (sIgM) [33-35], the rescue of peripheral B cells from sIgM-mediated apoptosis [36], the promotion of antigen processing and presentation of C3d-bound targets [37-41], the modulation of the expression of costimulatory molecules [42], the stabilization of the B cell receptor in lipid rafts [43], and the targeting of immune complexes to germinal centers in secondary lymphoid organs [44, 45]. Since CR2 has only a short cytoplasmic tail, it is likely that many of these functions occur through interactions of CR2 with CD19 and CD81 on the B cell surface, where these receptors form a multimolecular signal transduction complex [46, 47]. CR2 has also recently been shown to participate in the transfer of immune complexes [48], and thus may play a role in immune complex clearance. Mice deficient in CR2 by homologous recombination have defects in antibody responses to T-dependent and T-independent antigens, formation of germinal centers, generation of memory B cells, and the development of a normal natural antibody repertoire [49-54]. CR2 on both B cells and FDC are required for the generation of normal T-dependent antibody responses [55, 56].

3. COMPLEMENT RECEPTOR 2 IN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE

3.1. Decreased CR2 Expression in Patients with SLE

Patients with lupus express levels of CR2 on their B cells that are approximately 50-60% lower than control patients [9, 57, 58]. Expression of CR2 may be decreased as a result of decreased gene transcription, increased receptor shedding, ligand-mediated downregu-

lation, or terminal differentiation. Since longitudinal studies have not yet been performed in patients with lupus, it is not clear whether decreased CR2 expression is a cause or a result of increased disease activity. Certainly, relative deficiency of CR2 in lupus may alter tolerance induction of B or T cells or impair immune complex clearance (see section 4), and may have important functional consequences irrespective of its mechanism.

3.2. Effects of CR1/CR2 Deficiency on Animals Models of Autoimmunity and Tolerance

In the MRL/*lpr* mouse model of lupus, levels of CR2 decrease prior to the development of clinically apparent disease [59], suggesting that a relative deficiency of CR2 may indeed contribute to the initiation or progression of autoimmune disease. In further support of this, CR1/CR2 deficiency has been shown to exacerbate or accelerate several animal models of autoimmunity and tolerance. On a mixed B6/129 background, CR1/CR2-knockout *lpr* mice develop marked splenomegaly and lymphadenopathy, increased anti-nuclear and anti-dsDNA antibodies, and increased glomerular deposits of immune complexes [60]. After more extensive backcrossing onto a B6 background, however, the main manifestation of CR1/CR2 deficiency in *lpr* mice appears to be on autoantibody production [61]. CR1/CR2 deficiency in the hen egg lysozyme (HEL) double transgenic model of B cell tolerance results in a break in tolerance, albeit incomplete, with normalization of B cell numbers and responsiveness [60], but continued impairment in production of serum anti-HEL. However, since both CR1 and CR2 are deficient in the knockout mice used in these studies, the phenotypes identified in these models cannot be attributed definitively to CR2.

3.3. Identification of *Cr2* as a Strong Candidate Gene for Lupus Susceptibility in Mice

Cr2, which encodes CR1 and CR2 in mice, has recently been identified to be a strong candidate gene for lupus susceptibility in the NZM2410 mouse model of lupus [62]. B6 mice have been generated that are congenic for the NZM2410 *Sle1c* lupus susceptibility interval, which includes *Cr2*. These congenic mice develop autoantibodies to chromatin but do not develop glomerulonephritis. CR1 and CR2 in these mice are increased in molecular weight because of a single-nucleotide polymorphism in the ligand binding domain of CR2 which introduces a novel N-linked glycosylation site and results in differential glycosylation. The altered amino acid was found by molecular modeling of the mouse gene sequence to be located at a site in the human receptor that is critical for receptor dimerization, and glycosylation at this site would be expected to alter dimerization. B cells from B6.*Sle1c* congenic mice were found to exhibit defects in C3d-ligand binding as well as CR2-mediated signaling. These data provide support for *Cr2* as a strong candidate gene for lupus susceptibility in the NZM2410 *Sle1c* interval. Furthermore, since the functions of CR2 were specifically affected in this model, these data suggest that CR2 rather than CR1 is responsible for the autoimmune phenotypes observed.

Nonetheless, although *Cr2* is a strong candidate gene for lupus susceptibility in this model, its role has not yet been proven. This awaits further narrowing of the *Sle1c* congenic interval as well as replacement of the altered *Cr2* gene products with normal proteins using transgenic technology. Although initial *in vitro* studies suggest that the polymorphism in the ligand binding domain is indeed responsible for the impairment in ligand binding, we have not yet ruled out a functional effect of the other 11 polymorphisms identified in this gene. However, if *Cr2* does prove to be the *Sle1c* lupus susceptibility gene, this model will provide a powerful tool for understanding the role of CR2 in the pathogenesis of lupus. Using knockin mice that express the *Sle1c* allele of CR2, the specific effects of this altered protein on tolerance induction and autoimmune disease can be isolated and studied.

4. COMPLEMENT RECEPTOR 2 IN PATHOGENESIS OF SLE

4.1. Effects of CR2 on B Cell Tolerance

CR2 may play a direct role in induction or maintenance of B cell tolerance. For example, coligation of CR2 with sIg may lower the threshold for B cell tolerance to autoantigens, just as it lowers the threshold for B cell activation. Thus, B cells that express lower levels of CR2 (as in human lupus) or an altered form of CR2 (as in NZM2410 mice) may not be tolerized appropriately. In addition, FDC in secondary lymphoid organs that express lower levels or altered forms of CR2 may not be able to target complement-coated autoantigen effectively. If this reservoir of self-antigen is important for the maintenance of B cell tolerance, then autoreactive B cells would be expected to develop under these conditions. Since expression of CR2 on both B cells and FDC is important in the generation of normal immune responses [55, 63], ligand binding to both cell types is likely to be important in the regulation of B cell tolerance.

4.2. Effects of CR2 on T Cell Tolerance

CR2 may also affect induction and maintenance of T cell tolerance. Although CR2 binds and internalizes antigen for presentation to T cells [38, 39], in the absence of sIg coligation, it does not induce upregulation of costimulatory molecules [39] and thus may be critical in the regulation of T cell tolerance. It is also possible that coligation of CR2 with sIg may alter the levels or types of costimulatory molecules upregulated and skew the T cell cytokine profile to create an environment that favors loss of tolerance to self-antigen[4]. Finally, CR2 may influence the development of regulatory T cells, such as $CD4^+CD25^+$ cells, which are decreased in the periphery in B cell-deficient mice [64], or NK-T cells (reviewed in [65]), which recognize antigen presented by $CD1d^+CR2^{high}$ marginal zone B cells.

4.3. Effects of CR2 on Immune Complex Clearance

Finally, CR2 may influence lupus pathogenesis by participating in immune complex clearance. Altered function or expression of CR2 in lupus may contribute to excessive deposition of immune complexes in tissues, resulting in tissue damage.

5. REFERENCES

1. A. Fujisaku, J. B. Harley, M. B. Frank, B. A. Gruner, B. Frazier and V. M. Holers, Genomic organization and polymorphisms of the human C3d/Epstein-Barr virus receptor, *J. Biol. Chem.* **264,** 2118-2125 (1989).
2. M. H. Holguin, C. B. Kurtz, C. J. Parker, J. J. Weis and J. H. Weis, Loss of human CR1- and murine Crry-like exons in human CR2 transcripts due to CR2 gene mutations, *J.Immunol.* **145,** 1776-1781 (1990).
3. J. L. Gommerman, D. Y. Oh, X. Zhou, T. F. Tedder, M. Maurer, S. J. Galli and M. C. Carroll, A role for CD21/CD35 and CD19 in responses to acute septic peritonitis: a potential mechanism for mast cell activation, *J. Immunol.* **165,** 6915-6921 (2000).
4. Z. Kaya, M. Afanasyeva, Y. Wang, K. M. Dohmen, J. Schlichting, T. Tretter, D. Fairweather, V. M. Holers and N. R. Rose, Contribution of the innate immune system to autoimmune myocarditis: a role for complement., *Nature Immunol.* **2,** 739-745 (2001).
5. T. F. Tedder, L. T. Clement and M. D. Cooper, Expression of C3d receptors during human B cell differentiation: immunofluorescence analysis with the HB-5 monoclonal antibody, *J.Immunol.* **133,** 678-683 (1984).
6. C. D. Tsoukas and J. D. Lambris, Expression of CR2/EBV receptors on human thymocytes detected by monoclonal antibodies, *Eur. J. Immunol.* **18,** 1299-1302 (1988).
7. D. Watry, J. A. Hedrick, S. Siervo, G. Rhodes, J. J. Lamberti, J. D. Lambris and C. D. Tsoukas, Infection of human thymocytes by Epstein-Barr virus, *J.Exp.Med.* **173,** 971-980 (1991).
8. E. Fischer, C. Delibrias and M. D. Kazatchkine, Expression of CR2 (the C3dg/EBV receptor, CD21) on normal human peripheral blood T lymphocytes, *J. Immunol.* **146,** 865-869 (1991).
9. E. Levy, J. Ambrus, L. Kahl, H. Molina, K. Tung and V. M. Holers, T lymphocyte expression of complement receptor 2 (CR2/CD21): a role in adhesive cell-cell interactions and dysregulation in a patient with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* **90,** 235-244 (1992).
10. M. Reynes, J. P. Aubert, J. H. M. Cohen, J. Audouin, V. Tricottet, J. Diebold and M. D. Kazatchkine, Human follicular dendritic cells express CR1, CR2, and CR3 complement receptor antigens, *J. Immunol.* **135,** 2687-2694 (1985).
11. K. Bacon, J. F. Gauchat, J. P. Aubry, S. Pochon, P. Graber, S. Henchoz and J. Y. Bonnefoy, CD21 expressed on basophilic cells is involved in histamine release triggered by CD23 and anti-CD21 antibodies, *Eur.J.Immunol.* **23,** 2721-2724 (1993).
12. J. Hunyadi, M. Simon, A. S. Kenderessy and A. Dobozy, Expression of complement receptor 2 (CD21) on human subcorneal keratinocytes in normal and diseased skin, *Dermatologica* **183,** 184-186 (1991).
13. P. Gasque, P. Chan, C. Mauger, M. Schouft, S. Singhrao, M. P. Dierich, B. P. Morgan and F. Marc, Identification and characterization of complement C3 receptors on human astrocytes, *J.Immunol.* **156,** 2247-2255 (1996).
14. J. Levine, S. C. Pflugfelder, M. Yen, C. A. Crouse and S. S. Atherton, Detection of the complement (CD21)/Epstein-Barr virus receptor in human lacrimal gland and ocular surface epithelia, *Reg.Immunol.* **3,** 164-170 (1990).
15. E. J. Rayhel, M. H. Dehoff and V. M. Holers, Characterization of the human complement receptor 2 (CR2, CD21) promoter reveals sequences shared with regulatory regions of other developmentally restricted B cell proteins, *J.Immunol.* **146,** 2021-2026 (1991).
16. L. Yang, M. Behrens and J. J. Weis, Identification of 5'-regions affecting the expression of the human CR2 gene, *J.Immunol.* **147,** 2404-2410 (1991).
17. L. A. Vereshchagina, M. Tolnay and G. C. Tsokos, Multiple transcriptional factors regulate the inducible expression of the human complement receptor 2 promoter, *J. Immunol.* **166,** 6156-6163 (2001).
18. D. Ulgiati and V. M. Holers, CR2/CD21 proximal promoter activity is critically dependent on a cell type-specific repressor, *J. Immunol.* **167,** 6912-1919 (2001).
19. D. Ulgiati, C. Pham and V. M. Holers, Functional analysis of the human complement receptor 2 (CR2/CD21) promoter: characterization of basal transcriptional mechanisms, *J. Immunol.* **168,** 6279-6285 (2002).
20. K. W. Makar, C. T. N. Pham, M. H. Dehoff, S. M. O'Connor, S. M. Jacobi and V. M. Holers, An intronic silencer regulates B lymphocyte cell- and stage-specific expression of the human complement receptor type 2 (CR2, CD21) gene, *J. Immunol.* **160,** 1268-1278 (1998).
21. K. W. Makar, D. Ulgiati, J. Hagman and V. M. Holers, A site in the complement receptor 2 (CR2/CD21) silencer is necessary for lineage specific transcriptional regulation., *Int Immunol* **13,** 657-664 (2001).
22. M. D. Zabel and J. H. Weis, Cell-specific regulation of the CD21 gene., *Int Immunopharm* **1,** 483-493 (2001).
23. H. Hu, B. K. Martin, J. J. Weis and J. H. Weis, Expression of the murine CD21 gene is regulated by promoter and intronic sequences., *J. Immunol.* **158,** 4758-4768 (1997).

24. H. Molina, T. Kinoshita, K. Inoue, J.-C. Carel and V. M. Holers, A molecular and immunochemical characterization of mouse CR2: evidence for a single gene model of mouse complement receptors 1 and 2, *J. Immunol.* **145,** 2974-2983 (1990).
25. H. P. Huemer, C. Larcher, W. M. Prodinger, A. L. Petzer, M. Mitterer and N. Falser, Determination of soluble CD21 as a parameter of B cell activation, *Clin.Exp.Immunol.* **93,** 195-199 (1995).
26. M. Masilamani, D. Kassahn, S. Mikkat, M. O. Glocker and H. Illges, B cell activation leads to shedding of complement receptor type II (CR2/CD21), *Eur. J. Immunol.* **33,** 2391-2397 (2003).
27. K. Iida, L. Nadler and V. Nussenzweig, Identification of the membrane receptor for the complement fragment C3d by means of a monoclonal antibody., *J.Exp.Med.* **158,** 1021-1033 (1983).
28. J. J. Weis, T. F. Tedder and D. T. Fearon, Identification of a 145,000 Mr membrane protein as the C3d receptor (CR2) of human B lymphocytes., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **81,** 881-885 (1984).
29. G. Szakonyi, J. M. Guthridge, D. Li, K. Young, V. M. Holers and X. S. Chen, Structure of complement receptor 2 in complex with its C3d ligand, *Science* **292,** 1725-1728 (2001).
30. J. D. Fingeroth, J. J. Weis, T. F. Tedder, J. L. Strominger, P. A. Biro and D. T. Fearon, Epstein-Barr virus receptor of human B lymphocytes is the C3d receptor CR2., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **81,** 4510-4514 (1984).
31. J.-P. Aubry, S. Pochon, P. Graber, K. U. Jansen and J.-Y. Bonnefoy, CD21 is a ligand for CD23 and regulates IgE production., *Nature* **358,** 505-507 (1992).
32. A. X. Delcayre, F. Salas, S. Mathur, K. Kovats, M. Lotz and W. Lernhardt, Epstein Barr virus/complement C3d receptor is an interferon alpha receptor, *EMBO J.* **10,** 919-926 (1991).
33. R. H. Carter, M. O. Spycher, Y. C. Ng, R. Hoffman and D. T. Fearon, Synergistic interaction between complement receptor type 2 and membrane IgM on B lymphocytes, *J. Immunol.* **141,** 457-463 (1988).
34. J. D. Fingeroth, M. E. Heath and D. M. Ambrosino, Proliferation of resting B cells is modulated by CR2 and CR1., *Immunol. Lett.* **21,** 291-302 (1989).
35. A. T. Luxembourg and N. R. Cooper, Modulation of signaling via the B cell antigen receptor by CD21, the receptor for C3dg and EBV, *J. Immunol.* **153,** 4448-4457 (1994).
36. Y. Kozono, R. C. Duke, M. S. Schleicher and V. M. Holers, Co-ligation of mouse complement receptors 1 and 2 with surface IgM rescues splenic B cells and WEHI-231 cells from anti-surface IgM-induced apoptosis., *Eur. J. Immunol.* **25,** 1013-1017 (1995).
37. J. Arvieux, H. Yssel and M. G. Colomb, Antigen-bound C3b and C4b enhance antigen-presenting cell function in activation of human T-cell clones, *Immunology* **65,** 229-235 (1988).
38. S. A. Boackle, V. M. Holers and D. R. Karp, CD21 augments antigen presentation in immune individuals., *Eur. J. Immunol.* **27,** 122-130 (1997).
39. S. A. Boackle, M. A. Morris, V. M. Holers and D. R. Karp, Complement opsonization is required for the presentation of immune complexes by resting peripheral blood B cells., *J. Immunol.* **161,** 6537-6543 (1998).
40. A. Lanzavecchia, S. Abrignani, D. Scheidegger, R. Obrist, B. Dorken and G. Moldenhauer, Antibodies as antigens: the use of mouse monoclonal antibodies to focus human T cells against selected targets, *J. Exp. Med.* **167,** 345-352 (1988).
41. B. P. Thornton, V. Vetvicka and G. D. Ross, Natural antibody and complement-mediated antigen processing and presentation by B lymphocytes, *J. Immunol.* **152,** 1727-1737 (1994).
42. Y. Kozono, R. Abe, H. Kozono, R. G. Kelly, T. Azuma and V. M. Holers, Cross-linking CD21/CD35 or CD19 increases both B7-1 and B7-2 expression on murine splenic B cells., *J. Immunol.* **160,** 1565-1572 (1998).
43. A. Cherukuri, P. C. Cheng, H. W. Sohn and S. K. Pierce, The CD19/CD21 complex functions to prolong B cell antigen receptor signaling from lipid rafts., *Immunity* **14,** 169-179 (2001).
44. G. G. B. Klaus, The generation of memory cells. II. Generation of B memory cells with preformed antigen-antibody complexes., *Immunology* **34,** 643-652 (1978).
45. M. Papamichai, C. Gutierrez, P. Embling, P. Johnson, E. J. Holborow and M. B. Pepys, Complement dependence of localization of aggregated IgG in germinal centers., *Scand. J. Immunol.* **4,** 343-347 (1975).
46. L. E. Bradbury, G. S. Kansas, S. Levy, R. L. Evans and T. F. Tedder, The CD19/CD21 signal transducing complex of human B lymphocytes includes the target of antiproliferative antibody-1 and Leu-13 molecules, *J.Immunol.* **149,** 2841-2850 (1992).
47. A. K. Matsumoto, J. Kopicky-Burd, R. H. Carter, D. A. Tuveson, T. F. Tedder and D. T. Fearon, Intersection of the complement and immune systems: a signal transduction complex of the B lymphocyte-containing complement receptor type 2 and CD19, *J. Exp. Med.* **173,** 55-64 (1991).
48. M. A. Lindorfer, H. B. Jinivizian, P. L. Foley, A. D. Kennedy, M. D. Solga and R. P. Taylor, B cell complement receptor 2 transfer reaction, *J. Immunol.* **170,** 3671-3678 (2003).

49. J. M. Ahearn, M. B. Fischer, D. Croix, S. Goerg, M. Ma, J. Xia, X. Zhou, R. G. Howard, T. L. Rothstein and M. C. Carroll, Disruption of the *Cr2* locus results in a reduction in B-1a cells and in an impaired B cell response to T-dependent antigen., *Immunity* **4,** 251-262 (1996).
50. D. A. Croix, J. M. Ahearn, A. M. Rosengard, S. Han, G. Kelsoe, M. Ma and M. C. Carroll, Antibody response to a T-dependent antigen requires B cell expression of complement receptors, *J. Exp. Med.* **183,** 1857-1864 (1996).
51. H. Molina, V. M. Holers, B. Li, Y.-F. Fang, S. Mariathasan, J. Goellner, J. Strauss-Schoenberger, R. W. Karr and D. D. Chaplin, Markedly impaired humoral immune response in mice deficient in complement receptors 1 and 2, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **93,** 3357-3361 (1996).
52. X. Wu, N. Jiang, Y.-F. Fang, C. Xu, D. Mao, J. Singh, Y.-X. Fu and H. Molina, Impaired affinity maturation in *Cr2-/-* mice is rescued by adjuvants without improvement in germinal center development, *J. Immunol.* **165,** 3119-3127 (2000).
53. R. A. Barrington, O. Pozdnyakova, M. R. Zafari, C. D. Benjamin and M. C. Carroll, B lymphocyte memory: role of stromal cell complement and FcgRIIB receptors., *J. Exp. Med.* **196,** 1189-1199 (2002).
54. S. D. Fleming, T. Shea-Donohue, J. M. Guthridge, L. Kulik, T. J. Waldschmidt, M. G. Gipson, G. C. Tsokos and V. M. Holers, Mice deficient in complement receptors 1 and 2 lack a tissue injury-inducing subset of the natural antibody repertoire, *J. Immunol.* **169,** 2126-2133 (2002).
55. Y. Fang, C. Xu, X.-Y. Fu, V. M. Holers and H. Molina, Expression of complement receptors 1 and 2 on follicular dendritic cells is necessary for the generation of a strong antigen-specific IgG response., *J. Immunol.* **160,** 5273-5279 (1998).
56. M. B. Fischer, S. Goerg, L. Shen, A. P. Prodeus, C. C. Goodnow, G. Kelsoe and M. C. Carroll, Dependence of germinal center B cells on expression of CD21/CD35 for survival., *Science* **280,** 582-585 (1998).
57. J. G. Wilson, W. D. Ratnoff, P. H. Schur and D. T. Fearon, Decreased expression of the C3b/C4b receptor (CR1) and the C3d receptor (CR2) on B lymphocytes and of CR1 on neutrophils of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arth. Rheum.* **29,** 739-747 (1986).
58. H. V. Marquart, A. Svendsen, J. M. Rasmussen, C. H. Nielsen, P. Junker, S.-E. Svehag and R. G. Q. Leslie, Complement receptor expression and activation of the complement cascade on B lymphocytes from patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* **101,** 60-65 (1995).
59. K. Takahashi, Y. Kozono, T. J. Waldschmidt, R. J. Quigg, A. Baron and V. M. Holers, Mouse complement receptors type 1 (CR1; CD35) and type 2 (CR2; CD21): expression on normal B cell subpopulations and decreased levels during development of autoimmunity in MRL/*lpr* mice., *J. Immunol.* **159,** 1557-1569 (1997).
60. A. P. Prodeus, S. Georg, L.-M. Shen, O. O. Pozdnyakova, L. Chu, E. M. Alicot, C. C. Goodnow and M. C. Carroll, A critical role for complement in the maintenance of self-tolerance., *Immunity* **9,** 721-731 (1998).
61. X. Wu, N. Jiang, C. Deppong, J. Singh, G. Dolecki, D. Mao, L. Morel and H. D. Molina, A role for the *Cr2* gene in modifying autoantibody production in systemic lupus erythematosus., *J. Immunol.* **169,** 1587-1592 (2002).
62. S. A. Boackle, V. M. Holers, X. Chen, G. Szakonyi, D. R. Karp, E. K. Wakeland and L. Morel, *Cr2*, a candidate gene in the murine *Sle1c* lupus susceptibility locus, encodes a dysfunctional protein., *Immunity* **15,** 775-785 (2001).
63. D. Qin, J. Wu, M. C. Carroll, G. F. Burton, A. K. Szakal and J. G. Tew, Evidence for an important interaction between a complement-derived CD21 ligand on follicular dendritic cells and CD21 on B cells in the initiation of IgG responses., *J. Immunol.* **161,** 4549-4554 (1998).
64. A. Suto, H. Nakajima, K. Ikeda, S. Kubo, T. Nakayama, M. Taniguchi, Y. Saito and I. Iwamoto, CD4+CD25+ T-cell development is regulated by at least 2 distinct mechanisms., *Blood* **99,** 555-560 (2002).
65. M. Taniguchi, M. Harada, S. Kojo, T. Nakayama and H. Wakao, The regulatory role of Va14 NKT cells in innate and acquired immune response, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **21,** 483-513 (2003).

18

COMPLEMENT REGULATION DURING PREGNANCY

Hector Molina

1. INTRODUCTION

The complement system has a significant role in innate immunity, in the inflammatory process, and in the adaptive immune response. Activated complement fragments also have the capacity to bind and damage tissues, especially in areas of inflammation. Cells must be sheltered from the harmful consequences of complement activation. To investigate the role of these molecules *in vivo*, we generated mice deficient in the expression of one of the molecules involved in complement regulation. The mouse Crry protein belongs to a family of molecules that regulates complement activation, protecting tissues from complement-mediated damage *Crry*$^{-/-}$ mice do not survive pregnancy due to abnormal complement deposition in the placenta. The Crry-deficient mouse, therefore, is a valuable model to study the role of complement and complement regulators during pregnancy. Herein we describe studies that analyze further the mechanisms by which the Crry deficiency affects fetal survival, clarifying our understanding of the role of innate immune responses in pregnancy.

2. THE COMPLEMENT SYSTEM

The complement system consists of plasma proteins that, once activated, are involved in many of the functions of the immune response and of inflammation.[1,2] Activation of complement promotes chemotaxis of inflammatory cells, generates proteolytic fragments that enhance phagocytosis by neutrophils and monocytes, and facilitates the clearance of immune complexes[3]. Lysis of cells and foreign organisms is mediated by the formation of the membrane attack complex. Activation occurs by three main mechanisms.[1] The classical pathway is initiated by the interaction of complement

*Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis, Missouri 63110.

proteins with antigen-antibody complexes. The alternative pathway is initiated by the binding of complement fragments directly to the target such as microbial surfaces. The lectin pathway is initiated by plasma proteins, known as mannan-binding lectins, which bind to carbohydrate moieties on the surface of pathogens. These pathways share a common essential purpose consisting of the cleavage and subsequent activation of C3.

Activation of C3 plays a vital role in the biology of the system.[2] Cleavage of C3 generates several biologically active products that are responsible for most of the complement functions described above. One fragment, known as C3a, is a potent anaphylatoxin that binds receptors (C3aR) on leukocytes, endothelial cells, and other cells, resulting in the activation and secretion of soluble inflammatory mediators.[4,5] This peptide also induces chemotaxis and degranulation of eosinophils and mast cells resulting in the secretion of potent vasoactive and proinflammatory substances. Another fragment, C3b, and its related cleavage fragments known as iC3b and C3d, are ligands for complement receptor 1 and 2, and the ß2-integrins CD11b/CD18 and CD11c/CD18.[2] Furthermore, C3b can attach covalently to targets forming an essential part of the alternative pathway C3 convertase, and the C5 convertase enzyme complex, responsible for the amplification and adequate activation of C3 and C5.[2] A cleavage product derived from C5, C5a, is a potent inflammatory anaphylatoxin and chemotactic peptide that interacts with receptors (C5aR) on the surface of leukocytes and endothelial cells.[3] C5a also interacts with granulocytes and monocytes/macrophages causing increased chemotaxis, degranulation, adhesion to endothelial cells, and production of reactive oxygen intermediates. In mast cells it shares a comparable function with C3a inducing degranulation, resulting in the secretion of potent vasoactive and proinflammatory mediators. Another fragment, C5b, interacts with C6 and C7, binds to the target, and initiates the assembly of the C5b-9 membrane attack complex responsible for abnormalities in cell membrane function.[2]

3. REGULATION OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION

An important stage in complement regulation is at the level of C3.[6] Inhibition of C3 activation effectively suppresses both the classical, alternative, and lectin pathways of complement activation. Furthermore, inhibition of C3 activation avoids the formation of most of the complement mediators involved in humoral immunity, inflammation, and tissue destruction. This regulation is achieved by two main mechanisms.[6,7] First, certain proteins prevent the formation, or accelerate the dissociation, of the C3 convertase enzyme complex by a process known as decay accelerating activity. Second, degradation of activated C3 is mediated by Factor I, a serine esterase that cleaves C3b, but only in the presence of protein cofactors.

There are three membrane-bound proteins that regulate activation of C3 on the surface of host cells.[6,7] Decay accelerating factor (DAF) is a 70 kd protein present on most human and murine blood cells, endothelial cells, and epithelial cells, and is responsible for the inactivation of the C3 convertases. Membrane cofactor protein (MCP) is a ~45-70 Kd membrane-bound glycoprotein present on most human blood cells (except erythrocytes), endothelial, and epithelial cells. In mice, however, MCP expression is restricted to the testis.[8] MCP serves as a cofactor for Factor I cleavage of activated C4b and C3b. Finally, Crry is a widely distributed murine protein with MCP-like and DAF-like activities, exhibiting decay accelerating activity against the C3 and C5 convertase,

and also serving as cofactor for Factor I mediated cleavage of C3b and C4b.[9-12] Thus, Crry is a mouse functional homologue of human MCP and human DAF.

The importance of these regulators of C3 activation in protecting host cells from complement-mediated damage is highlighted by several experimental observations. *In vitro*, antibody-induced functional blockade of human DAF and MCP, or mouse Crry, increases C3 deposition on the surface of autologous cells and sensitizes them to complement lysis.[13-17] In addition, expression of human DAF and MCP on the surface of mouse cells protects them from human complement damage.[18] *In vivo*, antibody-mediated interference of rat Crry induces deposition of C3 in the vascular endothelium with a concomitant inflammatory reaction and cell injury.[16,17] Mice injected with a soluble form of Crry are resistant to complement-mediated organ damage in a murine model of antibody-induced glomerulonephritis.[19] Finally, blocking antibodies reacting against Crry are important to the pathogenesis of active Heymann nephritis, a murine model of human membranous nephropathy.[20] Thus, expression of these molecules is essential to protect cells from complement-mediated injury.

4. REGULATORS OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION DURING PREGNANCY

Since the mammalian embryo expresses antigens that are foreign to the maternal environment, biologic paradigms dictate that recognition and rejection by the immune system should result in fetal damage.[21] The reasons why the maternal immune system does not view the paternal component of the embryo as alien and rejects it is still poorly understood. Fetal survival during pregnancy depends on the ability of embryonic tissue to avoid rejection by the maternal immune system.[22] Recent studies indicate that abnormal complement activation during pregnancy affects fetomaternal tolerance.[23-26]

The complement system is important in the reproductive system and in pregnancy. Placental tissue and fetal trophoblast cells are in direct contact with maternal blood and could induce complement activation by either maternal-derived anti-trophoblast antibodies or by the alternative pathway.[23] Complement activation does occur as shown by the deposition of activated complement components on the trophoblast surface of normal and pathological pregnancies.[27,28] Pre-eclamptic placentas have increased complement activation on their surface and this may be responsible for placental failure. Immunostaining of human placental tissue has shown the presence of DAF and MCP on the surface of trophoblast cells.[24] Furthermore, up to twenty percent of first trimester pregnancy losses can be characterized by the onset of hypocomplementemia and with complement deposition in the placenta.[29] This hypocomplementemia is associated with reduced DAF expression on the placenta and increased complement consumption at the fetomaternal interface.[29] Moreover, a human MCP polymorphism is associated with recurrent spontaneous miscarriages.[30] Complement activation is also required in a mouse model of recurrent fetal loss associated with anti-phospholipid antibodies, a condition characterized by increased miscarriages and spontaneous abortion.[25] In this context, it is tempting to hypothesize that some cases of unexplained recurrent human fetal losses may be secondary to loss-of-function mutations in DAF and/or MCP. Based on this observation it has been proposed that these molecules play major roles *in vivo* in the protection of trophoblast cells from the deleterious effects of complement activation.

5. STUDIES USING CRRY-DEFICIENT MICE

To investigate the role of these regulators *in vivo*, mice deficient in Crry were generated using gene targeting techniques.[24] The Crry deficiency leads to embryonic lethality that occurs at 10.5 day post coitus (d.p.c.). In addition, most *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos at 9.5 d.p.c. had signs of developmental arrest, such as the smaller deciduas resembling those of earlier stages. To determine the role of Crry on this developmental defect, its expression pattern in wild-type early embryos was analyzed. Immunohistochemical detection of Crry in cryosectioned embryos indicated that Crry is highly expressed in trophoblasts as early as 7.5 d.p.c., with little expression in the embryo proper. Trophoblasts are cells derived from the single-cell outer layer of the blastocyst and eventually form the parenchyma cells of the placenta. In addition, Crry is also expressed in the maternally derived decidual tissues. This expression pattern persists in later stages of embryonic development (examined up to 16 d.p.c). As expected, there is no Crry expression in *Crry*$^{-/-}$ trophoblast and embryos. Interestingly, trophoblasts and the embryo proper lack expression of DAF and MCP.[24] By Northern blot analysis and immunohistochemistry, MCP and DAF are not expressed in the early 10.5 d.p.c. and 14.5 d.p.c. embryo and placenta.

The 7.5 d.p.c. *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos exhibit positive staining for activated C3b on their trophoblasts and in the early placenta (ectoplacental cone) as compared to minimal or no staining in wild type trophoblasts[24] This observation indicates that the lack of Crry promotes abnormal activation and deposition of complement. In addition, 7.5 d.p.c. *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos exhibit an inflammatory reaction as shown by the presence of neutrophils around the ectoplacental cone and the associated trophoblast cells.[24] The embryonic lethality present in the Crry-deficient animals is completely rescued if these mice are bred to C3-deficient animals.

On the trophoblast, C3 activation is maximal at 7.5 d.p.c. At 8.5 d.p.c., minimal C3 deposition is noted, and no difference in C3 deposition is noted at 9.5 and 10.5 d.p.c. as compared to wild type controls.[31] In addition, most of the inflammation occurs at 7.5 d.p.c., with minimal infiltration of inflammatory cells at day 8.5 d.p.c., and no inflammation at 9.5 d.p.c. Although growth is retarded, embryos are still alive and growing at 9.5 d.p.c. These observations suggest that the critical time for C3 activation and inflammation is at 7.5 d.p.c. Interestingly, histological findings at 10.5 d.p.c. demonstrate the absence of normal vascular development suggesting the effect of complement is to compromise early placenta vascular development.[31] Thus, C3 activation and inflammation at 7.5 d.p.c. affect placental developmental events important for growth, and for survival beyond 10.5 d.p.c.

6. ACTIVATION OF COMPLEMENT IN CRRY-DEFICIENT MICE

Breeding of the Crry mutation to animal models with selective deficiencies in complement components was performed to determine the mechanism by which complement is activated in *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos.[31] C4 deficiency[32] does not rescue this embryonic lethality indicating that classical pathway components (C1, C4, and C2) are not involved in the activation of complement and the death of the embryos. Further supporting the dispensable role of the classical pathway is the observation that the absence of antibodies in B cell-deficient mice[33] ($\mu MT^{-/-}Crry^{+/-}$mating) does not rescue this embryonic lethality since antibodies are needed for the activation of the classical

pathway. This observation also provided evidence for a expendable role of antibodies and Fc receptors, not only as primary precipitating events, but also as effector mechanisms in the *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryonic lethality, and a potential negligible role for the lectin pathway since C4 is needed for its activation.[2] Maternal C3 is mostly responsible for the *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryonic death.[31] Thus, of the complement components with biological functions directly involved in tissue damage, only activation of maternal C3 is causing the embryonic death in the *Crry*$^{-/-}$ mice.

To examine if the alternative pathway provided the main mechanism of complement activation and fetal rejection, breeding the Crry mutation to factor B-deficient mice (*fB*$^{-/-}$) was performed.[34] Genotype analysis revealed that 27% (13/49) of the resulting 3-week old pups were *fB*$^{-/-}$*Crry*$^{-/-}$.[31] No increased C3 deposition and no neutrophil inflammation was also noted in 7.5 d.p.c. *fB*$^{-/-}$*Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos. These results indicate that the alternative pathway mediate the impaired fetomaternal tolerance related with the Crry deficiency.[2]

7. EFFECTOR MECHANISMS RELATED TO EMBRYONIC LOSS

The specific functions of complement that could been involved in this embryonic lethality have been examined. Complement components with biological functions directly involved in tissue damage include C5b-9 and fragments derived from C1, C3, C4, and C5.[2] C1 and C4 are not necessary to cause the Crry embryonic lethality[31] since C3 deficient mice should have no compromise in the activation of C1 and C4, and are still able to activate these complement components, but *C3*$^{-/-}$*Crry*$^{-/-}$ mice are viable. Although C3 deficiency rescues the embryonic lethality, C5 deficiency does not . Hence, by genetic analysis we have determined that C5 and the C5b-9 membrane attack complex may not be needed to cause the death of the embryos.[31]

One way that fragments derived from the activation of C3 mediate their biological functions is by interacting with complement receptors (CR) on the surface of cells.[2] No expression of CR1 and CR2 is detected in placental and embryonic tissues from wild type and *Crry*$^{-/-}$ mice as determined by immunohistochemistry using specific monoclonal antibodies. These receptors, therefore, are probably not involved in causing this embryonic lethality. CR3 and CR4 staining is comparable between the wild type and Crry-deficient mice. Thus, the possibility exits that either iC3b (CR3 and CR4) or C3a (C3aR) are the main effector fragments conducive to the demise of the Crry-deficient embryos.

Another way complement induces tissue damage is by attracting inflammatory cells.[2] The main cellular component involved in the inflammatory reaction observed at 7.5 d.p.c. are neutrophils, as determined by H/E staining and Ly-6G expression.[26] No evidence of increased tissue infiltration by macrophages, T cells, or B cells is noted in the Crry-deficient animals as determined by immunohistochemistry with specific antibodies, or by analysis of H/E sections. Surprisingly, neutrophil infiltration is not needed for the *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryonic demise.

To investigate the role of neutrophils in the *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryonic lethality, antibody-mediated depletion of these cells using monoclonal antibodies was performed. Injection of anti-Ly-6G antibodies causes severe neutropenia.[35] *Crry*$^{+/-}$ pregnant females were injected with 250 μg dose of anti-Ly-6G at 3.5 and 4.5 d.p.c. (two days pre-implantation to assure the presence of neutropenia at the time of implantation).

At day 7.5 d.p.c., mice were sacrificed and the number of *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos assessed by immunohistochemistry and PCR analysis. Of 20 embryos collected, three were Crry-deficient. These embryos failed to develop placental inflammation as compared to the inflammation generated in non-injected *Crry*$^{-/-}$ mice. Histology revealed a normal appearing placenta and embryo. This finding correlated with undetectable numbers of blood neutrophils in maternal blood as assessed by FACS analysis. No gross abnormalities were observed in the Crry-sufficient embryos suggesting that the induction of neutropenia did not affect pregnancy. In similar experiments, pregnant *Crry*$^{+/-}$ females, injected with 250 μg dose of anti-Ly-6G at 3.5, 4.5, and 7.5 d.p.c. (to achieve a prolonged neutropenia), were sacrificed at 9.5 d.p.c. Of 23 embryos analyzed, six were *Crry*$^{-/-}$. Nevertheless, these embryos were small, exhibiting growth retardation as compared to Crry-sufficient embryos from the same mother. Although histological analysis revealed the absence of neutrophils within the tissue, and FACS analysis from maternal blood revealed no neutrophils, abnormalities in placental development, reminiscent of those seen in untreated *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos, were observed. This result suggested that, even without an inflammatory component at 7.5 d.p.c., abnormalities in embryonic development still occurred in 9.5 d.p.c. *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos. In similar experiments, mice were injected with a 250 μg dose of anti-Ly-6G at 3.5, 4.5, and 7.5 d.p.c. Pregnant *Crry*$^{+/-}$ females were then sacrificed at 11.5 d.p.c.. Out of 21 embryos, no *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos were recovered, indicating that abnormalities in embryonic development still occurred in *Crry*$^{-/-}$ embryos derived from neutropenic mothers. It is important to emphasize that the critical time point for abnormal complement activation and inflammation is at 7.5 d.p.c. Elimination of neutrophils from maternal blood and the absence of inflammation at this critical time point does not inhibited embryonic lethality, indicating that neutrophils are not absolutely necessary for the embryonic lethality seen in Crry-deficient fetuses to occur.

8. CONCLUSION

Abnormalities in the regulation of the maternal immune response against the fetus are likely a significant cause for the conditions associated with pregnancy failure. Unfortunately, factors involved in pregnancy failure due to abnormal immunological fetomaternal tolerance are poorly understood. Recent experimental observations implicate the complement system as an important contributor to this type of immunoregulation.[23-26] Several mechanisms may be involved in complement-dependent spontaneous otherwise unexplained pregnancy loss.[1,2] Defining the relative contribution of these mechanisms to fetal loss will facilitate the understanding of the innate immune response during pregnancy and provide potential therapeutic options in the treatment of recurrent miscarriages. To this purpose, we have used the *Crry*$^{-/-}$ mouse model to further investigate the role of complement and complement regulators in recurrent fetal loss.[26,31] We have identified the pathways related to the activation of complement in the *Crry*$^{-/-}$ maternal-to-fetal rejection process, some of the complement components needed to cause the fetal demise, and the pathological consequences of this activation. Surprisingly, sole activation of the maternal third component of complement through the alternative pathway is enough to mediate defects in placenta formation and subsequent pregnancy loss. This effect is independent of other complement activation pathways and complement components, or the presence of B cells and antibodies. Thus, abnormal fetomaternal tolerance may be established using exclusively C3 as both, the inductive and effector element, without the contribution of downstream complement components or

mobilization of adaptive immune response components. However, it is still unclear from these studies the relative contribution of the numerous activation and effector mechanisms that may still be involved in this complement-dependent pregnancy loss.[2]

These results may also apply to human pregnancy loss in which anomalies in complement regulators within the placenta could increase the rate of fetal miscarriages.[24,29,30] The rate of human miscarriages related to abnormal complement regulation may be underappreciated. Our data also implies potential therapeutic targeting areas based on complement regulation. Specific regulation of the alternative pathway may provide a practical way of controlling tissue inflammation. Therefore, our studies indicate that further analysis of this pathogenic mechanism of fetomaternal intolerance is now needed in human pregnancy loss.

9. REFERENCES

1. B. Z. Schmidt, and H. R. Colten, Complement: a critical test of its biological importance, *Immunol. Rev.* **178**, 166-176 (2000).
2. A. K. Abbas, A. H. Lichtman, and J. S. Pober, in: *Cellular and Molecular Immunology*, (W.B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia, 2000), pp. 316-334.
3. M. M. Frank and L. F. Fries, The role of complement in inflammation and phagocytosis, *Immunol. Today*, **12**, 322-326 (1991).
4. J. A. Ember, M. A. Jagels,, and T. E. Hugli, Characterization of complement anaphylatoxins and their biological responses, in: *The human complement system in health and disease*, (Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1998), pp. 241-284.
5. R. A. Wetsel, Structure, function, and cellular expression of complement anaphylatoxin receptors, *Cur. Opin. Immunol.* **7**, 48-53 (1995).
6. D. Hourcade, V. M. Holers, and J. P. Atkinson, The regulators of complement activation (RCA) gene cluster, *Adv. Immunol.* **45**:381-416 (1989).
7. D. M. Lublin and J. P. Atkinson, Decay-accelerating factor and membrane cofactor protein, *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* **153**:123-145 (1989).
8. A. Tsujimura, K. Shida, M. Kitamura, M. Nomura, J. Takeda, H. Tanaka, M. Matsumoto, K. Matsumiya, A. Okuyama, Y. Nishimune, M. Okabe, and T. Seya, 1998. Molecular cloning of a murine homologue of membrane cofactor protein (CD46): preferential expression in testicular germ cells, *Biochemical J.* **330**:163-168 (1998).
9. W. Wong and D.T. Fearon, P65: A C3b-binding protein on murine cells that shares antigenic determinants with the human C3b receptor (CR1) and is distinct from murine C3b receptor, *J. Immunol.* **134**:4048-4056 (1985).
10. M.S. Paul, M. Aegerter, S. E. O'Brien, C. B. Kurtz, and J. H. Weis, The murine complement receptor gene family I. Analysis of mCRY gene products and their homology to human CR1, *J. Immunol.* **142**:582-589 (1989).
11. H. Molina, W. Wong, T. Kinoshita, C. Brenner, S. Foley, and V. M. Holers, Distinct receptor and regulatory properties of recombinant mouse complement receptor 1 (CR1) and Crry, the two genetic homologues of human CR1, *J. Exp. Med.* **175**:121-129 (1992).
12. Y.-U. Kim, T. Kinoshita, H. Molina, D. Hourcade, S. Tsukasa, L. M. Wagner, and V. M. Holers, Mouse complement regulatory protein Crry/p65 uses the specific mechanisms of both human decay-accelerating factor and membrane cofactor protein, *J. Exp. Med.* **181**:151-159 (1995).
13. T. Seya, T. Hara, M. Matsumoto, Y. Sugita, and H. Akedo, Complement-mediated tumor cell damage induced by antibodies against membrane cofactor protein (MCP,CD46), *J. Exp. Med.* **172**, 1673-1680 (1990).
14. T. Seya, A. Kojima, T. Hara, K. Hazeki, Y. Sugita, and H. Akedo, Enhancement of lymphocyte-mediated K562 cytotoxicity by antibodies against complement membrane cofactor protein (CD46) and decay-accelerating factor (CD55), *Immunobiology* **183**, 115-124 (1991).
15. R. J. Quigg, B. P. Morgan, V. M. Holers, S. Adler, A. E. Sneed, and C. F. Lo, Complement regulation in rat glomerulus: Crry and CD59 regulate complement in glomerular mesangial and endothelial cells, *Kidney Int.* **48**, 412-421 (1995).

16. A. Nomura, K. Nishikawa, Y. Yuzawa, H. Okada, N. Okada, B. P. Morgan, S. J. Piddlesden, M. Nadai, T. Hasegawa, and S. Matsuo, Tubulointerstitial injury induced in rats by a monoclonal antibody that inhibits function of a membrane inhibitor of complement, *J. Clin. Invest.* **96**, 2348-2356 (1995).
17. S. Matsuo, S. Ichida, H. Takizawa, N. Okada, L. Baranyi, A. Iguchi, B. P. Morgan, and H. Okada, In vivo effects of monoclonal antibodies that functionally inhibit complement regulatory proteins in rats, *J. Exp. Med.* **180**, 1619-1627 (1994).
18. K. R. McCurry, D. L. Kooyman, L. E. Diamond, G. W. Byrne, J. S. Logan, and J. L. Platt, Transgenic expression of human complement regulatory proteins in mice results in diminished complement deposition during organ xenoperfusion, *Transplantation* **59**, 1177-1182 (1995).
19. R. J. Quigg, Y. Kozono, D. Berthiaume, A. Lim, D. J. Salant, A. Weinfeld, P. Griffin, E. Kremmer, and V. M. Holers, Blockade of antibody-induced glomerulonephritis with Crry-Ig, a soluble murine complement inhibitor, *J.Immunol.* **160**, 4553-4560 (1998).
20. B. Schiller, C. He, D. J. Salant, A. Lim, J. J. Alexander, and R. Quigg, Inhibition of complement regulation is key to the pathogenesis of Heymann nephritis, *J. Exp. Med.* **188**, 1353-135 (1998).
21. P. W. Medawar, Some immunological and endocrinological problems raised by the evolution of viviparity in vertebrates. *Symposia of the Society for Exp. Biol. and Med.* **7**, 20-338 (1953).
22. W. D. Billington, The normal fetomaternal immune relationship, *Bailliere's Clin. Obstet. Gynaecol.* **6**, 417-438 (1992).
23. I. A. Rooney, T. J. Oglesby, and J. P. Atkinson, Complement in human reproduction: activation and control, *Immunol. Res.* **12**, 276-294 (1993).
24. C. H. Holmes, and K. L. Simpson, Complement and pregnancy: new insights into the immunobiology of the fetomaternal relationship, *Bailliere's Clin. Obstet. Gynaecol.* **6**, 439-460 (1992).
25. V. M. Holers, G. Girardi, L. Mo, J. M. Guthridge, H. Molina, S. S. Pierangeli, R. Espinola, L. E. Xiaowei, D. Mao, C. G. Vialpando, and J. Salmon, Complement C3 activation is required for the antiphospholipid antibody-induced fetal loss, *J. Exp. Med.* **195**, 211-220 (2002).
26. C. Xu, D. Mao, V. M. Holers, B. Palanca, A. M. Cheng, and H. Molina, A critical role for murine complement regulator Crry in fetomaternal tolerance, *Science* **287**, 498-501 (2000).
27. D. Sinha, M. Wells, and W. P. Faulk, Immunological studies of human placentae: complement components in pre-eclamptic chorionic villi, *Clin. Experiment. Immunol.* **56**, 175-184 (1984).
28. J. Ackerman, E. F. Gonzalez, E. Gilbert-Barness, Immunological studies of the placenta in maternal connective tissue disease, *Pediatric & Developmental Pathology*, 2, 19-24 (1999).
29. D. S. Cunningham and J. R. Tichenor, Jr., Decay-accelerating factor protects human trophoblast from complement-mediated attack, *Clin. Immunol. Immunopath.* **74**, 156-161 (1995).
30. J. M. Risk, B. F. Flanagan, and P. M. Johnson, Polymorphism of the human CD46 gene in normal individuals and in recurrent spontaneous abortion, *Human Immunol.* **30**, 162-167 (1991).
31. D. Mao, X. Wu, C. Deppong, L. D. Friend, G. Dolecki, D. M. Nelson, and H. Molina, Negligible role of antibodies and C5 in pregnancy loss associated exclusively with C3-dependent mechanisms through complement alternative pathway, *Immunity* **19**, 813-822 (2003).
32. M. B. Fischer, M. Ma, S. Goerg, X. Zhou, J. Xia, O. Finco, S. Han, G. Kelsoe, R. G. Howard, T. L. Rothstein, E. Kremmer, F. S. Rosen, and M. C. Carroll, Regulation of the B cell response to T-dependent antigens by classical pathway complement, *J. Immunol.* **157**, 549-556 (1996).
33. D. Kitamura, J. Roes, R. Kühn, and K. Rajewsky, A B cell-deficient mouse by targeted disruption of the membrane exon of the immunoglobulin mu chain gene, *Nature* **350**, 423-426 (1991).
34. M. Matsumoto, W. Fukuda, A. Circolo, J. Goellner, J. Strauss-Schoenberger, X. Wang, S. Fujita, T. Hidvegi, D. D. Chaplin, and H. R. Colten, Abrogation of the alternative complement pathway by targeted deletion of murine factor B, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* **94**, 8720-8725 (1997).
35. B. T. Wipke and P. M. Allen, Essential role of neutrophils in the initiation and progression of a murine model of rheumatoid arthritis, *J. Immunol.* **167**, 1601-1608 (2001).

INDEX

Adaptive immunity, 11–12
  and role of NKG2D, 53–54
  and role of TLRs, 14–15
Adjuvant
  activity of, 33–34
  and C3d, 131–132
AIRE, 13
Allergic inflammation triggered by
    TSLP, 69–71
Ankyrin repeats, 41–42
Anti-CD40 antibodies, 91–92
Anti-Ly-6G, 153–154
Antigen–antibody complexes, 150
Antigen presentation
  by DCs, 63, 83, 84, 88–89
  by dying cells, 89–90
  from environmental proteins, 90
  and T cell immunity, 92
Antigen presenting molecules and
    DCs, 87
Antigen-specific immunity, 106
Antigens
  and CD21/35, 131–132
  delivery, 94
  loading, 107
  uptake and DCs, 87
Atopic dermatitis and TSLP expression,
    70–72
Autoimmune regulator, 13
Autoimmunity, 109
  and NKG2D, 54
  regulation of, 133–134
  systemic, 141
  and TLRs, 15–16

B cells
  activation, 2, 3
    by CD19/21, 132
    by TLRs, 15
    by TRIF, 4
  and CD21/35, 131
  in Cd21/35-deficient cells, 129–130
  and CD19 expression, 126–127
  and CR2, 142
  and DCs, 93
  receptors, 11–12
  regulated by CD21, 133–134
  signaling, 126–127
    and CD19 function, 128
  tolerance maintenance by CR2, 144
B lymphocyte antigen receptor. *See* BCR
Bacteria regulation by CD21/35, 130–131
Bacterial infection affected by NKG2D, 53
Bacterial lipoprotein, 1
Balancing selection, 49
BCR, 125
  signal transduction and CD19,
    127–128
  and TLR9 signaling, 15
Birbeck granules, 115
BLP, 1
Bmp signaling, 43
Bmp signaling pathway, 43–44
Bone marrow precursors and LCs,
    116–117
Bone marrow transplants and KIR
    mismatch, 49

C2, 142

C3, 130, 150
  activation
    and embryonic loss, 152–153
    regulation of, 150–151
C3 convertase enzyme complex, 150
C3a, 150
C3b, 142, 150
C3d, 142
  as ligand for CD19/21 complex, 129
  as molecular adjuvant, 131–132
C3d–antigen complexes, 129–130
C3dg-tetramer, 129–130
C5, 150
C5a, 150
C5b, 150
C19 regulating autoimmunity, 133–134
C-106 activating *Drosophila* Toll pathway, 20–22
Caspases, 77
Cathepsin S, 65
CCL20, 118–119
CCR2 chemokine ligands, 118
CD4+ T cells
  and NKG2D, 54
  polyclonal expansion of, 72–74
  proliferation by TSLP, 69–71
  stimulation by dendritic cells, 71–73
CD8+ T cells and NKG2D, 53
CD19
  models of function, 127–128
  structure and expression, 125–126
CD21, 125, 128–130
CD21/35
  deficient mice, 129–130
  and protection against encapsulated bacteria, 130–131
  regulating autoimmunity, 133–134
CD22 signaling, 126
CD29 signaling function, 126–127
CD31 regulating autoimmunity, 133–134
CD34-DC vaccines, 107
CD35, 129
CD40 and DC maturation, 86
CD40L, 78
  and TSLP-dendritic cells, 69–70, 72
CD40 ligand, 79–80
CD81, 126
CD94, 51
Cell death, 89
Central memory T cell phenotype, 73
Central tolerance, 108–109
Chemokines
  in immune responses, 13
  and LCs, 118–119
Class I MHC peptide complexes and T cell immunity, 91
Clonal deletion, 12–13
Clonogenic common lymphoid precursor, 118
Clonogenic common myeloid precursor, 118
CLP, 118
CMP, 118
Collectins, 100
Complement activation, 151
  and protection against encapsulated bacteria, 130
Complement receptor 2. *See* CR2
Complement regulation during pregnancy, 149–155
Complement system, 149–150
  regulation of, 150–151
Costimulatory molecular model for CD19 function, 127–128
CpG1 mutation, 34
CR1/CR2 deficiency, 143
CR2
  and B cell tolerance, 144
  function of, 142
  and immune complex clearance, 144
  ligands of, 142
  role in systemic lupus erythematosus, 142–144
  structure of, 141–142
  and T cell tolerance, 144
Cr2, 143–144
CR3 and embryonic loss, 153
CR4 and embryonic loss, 153
c-Rel, 41
Cross-priming, 108, 110
Crry, 150–151
  deficiency of, 149, 152–154
Crry-deficient mice, 152–154
Cystatin C, 65
Cytokines
  in adaptive immunity, 14–15
  and autoimmunity, 15–16
  and DCs, 85, 86
  in immune responses, 13
  and NK cell responses, 59
  production, 70, 74
Cytomegalovirus (CMV)
  and NK cells, 58
  and NKG2D, 53

DAF, 150–151
DAP12, 58
DCs
  activated by TSLP, 69–71
  affected by TNF family, 78–79

DCs (*cont.*)
and antigen presentation, 63
from dying cells, 89–90
chimerism of, 119
controlling tolerance, 108–109
enhancing immunity, 107–108
and immunotherapy, 105–111
maturation, 2, 3, 13, 64–67, 84–87
during infection, 14–15
in peripheral lymphoid tissues, 83–94
and peripheral tolerance, 88–91
subsets of, 79, 93, 106–107
and T cell immunity, 92
Death domain (DD), 2
DEC-205, 87, 88–89
targeting function of receptor, 91–92
Decay accelerating activity, 150
Decay accelerating factor, 150–151
Dendritic cells. *See* DCs
Dendritic epidermal T cells, 117
Dermal mast cells, 117
Der p 2, 25
Dif, 41
Directional selection, 50
DNA and toll-like receptors (TLRs), 1
Donor T cells and LCs, 119
Dorsal, 41, 43
Dorso-ventral patterning system, 20
Double-stranded (ds) RNA, 1–3
Dpp gene, 43
Drosomycin-luciferase reporter construct, 21
Drosomycin promoter, 20–21
Drosophila, 19
Drosophila Toll pathway and activation by C-106, 20–22
Drosophila Toll receptors, 19–20
dsRNA, 34–35
signaling, 29
dsRNA1, 34–35

Ecsit, 42–44
Embryogenesis and Toll receptors, 19–20
Embryonic loss, 151–153
Environmental proteins, 90
and T cell immunity, 92–93
Epidermal T cells, 117
Fetal loss. *See* Embryonic loss
Fetomaternal tolerance, 151, 154–155
Flagellin, 1
Forward genetic analysis, 32–33, 37

GM2-AP, 25
gp120 and C3d, 132
Graft-versus-host disease. *See* GVHD
Graft-versus-tumor effect, 119
GVHD, 115
and LCs, 119

Haplotypes and infection susceptibility, 99–100
Heat shock proteins, 12
Hepatitis C infection, chronic, 53
HLA genes and KIR expression, 49
hTlrs, 19–20
Human Toll-like receptors, 19–20
Hu mouse as pre-clinical model, 110
Hypocomplementemia, 151

IFN-α in SLE, 109–110
IFN-β, induction of, 3
IFN-β promoter
activation by TRAM, 5
activation by TRIF, 4
IFN-γ production, 70
IFN-inducible genes, 3
IκB family proteins, 41–42
IκB kinase complex. *See* IKK complex
IκBα, 41
IκBβ, 41
IgG2 and CD21/35, 131
IgG3 and CD21/35, 131
IKK complex, 42, 44
IKKε, 6–7
IL-1 receptor. *See* IL-1R
IL-1R, 2
signaling, 32
signaling pathway, 7
IL-1R-associated kinase family. *See* IRAK
IL-1R/TLR family, 77–79
IL-6
and autoimmunity, 15–16
and regulatory T cells, 14
IL-7 and TSLP-dendritic cells, 69–70
IL-10 production, 70
Imidazoquid, 1
Immune complex clearance and CR2, 144
Immunity and LCs, 115–116
Immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs, 58
Immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs, 57
Immunotherapy and dendritic cells (DCs), 105–111
Infections
protection from, 14–15
susceptibility to, 99
INF-inducible genes and TRIF, 4

Innate immunity, 11
and DCs, 83–85
genetic analysis of, 29–37
receptors, 30
regulated by TRAF6, 77
and role of NKG2D, 52–53
and role of TLRs, 14
Interleukin-1 receptor/Toll-like receptor family. *See* IL-1R/TLR family
Interstitial DCs (intDCs), 106
IRAK, 2, 42
IRAK-1, 2, 32
IRAK-2, 32
IRAK-4, 2
IRF-3, 3, 6–7
IRF-3 kinases, 7
ITAMs, 58
ITIMs, 57

JNK, 77
and TRAF6, 80

Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors. *See* KIR
Kinases in signaling pathways, 6–7
KIR, 57
diversity of, 47–50
haplotypes of, 48
mismatch in bone marrow transplants, 49
population differences in, 48
recombination of, 49
species-specificity of, 48
KIR2DL4, 48

Langerhans cells. *See* LCs
Langerin, 115
LCs
and chemokines, 118–119
chimerism of, 116–117
and DCs, 85
and GVHD, 119
hematopoietic lineage of, 118
homeostasis of, 116–117
and immunity, 115–116
recruitment to inflamed skin, 118–119
separate ontogeny of, 117
and skin inflammation, 118
Lectin expression by DCs, 107
Lectin pathway, 150
Leucine-rich repeat. *See* LRR
Lipopolysaccharide. *See* LPS
LPS, 2, 3
and binding to MD-2, 25
induction by TRAM, 5
sensing of, 30
signaling, 29
stimulating DCs, 79–80
stimulating signaling pathways, 3
and TLR4 receptor, 23
and TLRs, 1
and TSLP-dendritic cells, 69–70
Lps2, 29
Lps2 locus, 32–33
Lps locus, 30
LRR, 2, 22, 23
Ly49H, 58–59
Lymphoid tissues and DCs functions, 83–94
Lyn kinase activity, 126
Lysosomal pH, 66
Lyst gene mutation, 35

m157 molecule, 58–59
Macrophages, 117
Major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *See* MHC class I
MAL, 32
Mal. *See* TIRAP
MALP-2, 1
Mannose-binding lectin. *See* MBL
Mannose-binding lectin-associated serine protease, 100
MAPKs
activation of, 2–4
and TIRAP, 3
and TRAM, 5
MASP, 100
MASP-2, 100
Mast cells, 117
Maturation, control of, 64–67
MBL, 99–101
null mice, 100–101
MBL-A, 100
MBL-C, 100
MCP, 150–151
MCP-1, 117
MD-2
and binding to LPS, 23–25
and TLR4 receptor, 23
MD-2-related lipid binding proteins. *See* ML family
mDCs, 110
MEKK1, 43
Membrane cofactor protein. *See* MCP
MHC class I and NK cells, 57
MHC class I-like proteins, 52

MHC class II-peptide complexes and dying cells, 89–90
MHC peptide complexes and DC maturation, 86, 87
MICA, expression of, 53, 54
Mice
  CD21/35-deficient, 129–130
  Crry-deficient, 152–154
  MBL null, 100–101
  tight-skin, 133
  transgenic, 127
Miscarriages, 155
Missing self hypothesis, 57
ML family and signal transduction, 23–24
Model of immune system, 110
Monocyte-chemokine protein-1, 117
Monocytes and DCs, 85
Murine cytomegalovirus and NK cell activation receptor, 58–59
Mutations, immunodeficiency, 34–35
MyD88, 7, 36, 42
  in cascading signaling pathways, 2–6
  dependent signaling pathway of, 2, 4, 7, 33
  and IL-1 receptor signaling, 32
  independent signaling pathway of, 2–4, 7
    affected by TRAM, 5
    role of TRIF, 4
  and signal transduction of TLRs, 14
MyD88 adapter like protein, 32
Myeloid Differentiation factor 88. *See* MyD88
Myeloid pathway, 106
Myoplasmal lipoprotein, 1

Nascent tumors, 52
Natural killer cells. *See* NK cells
NF-κB, 41–44
  activation, 2, 3, 7
    levels of, 25
    by TIRAP, 3
    by Toll receptors, 20–22
    by TRAM, 5
  and TRAF6, 80
NF-κB1, 41
NF-κB2, 41
NF-κB family, 77
NK cells
  activation, 34
    receptors, 51, 58
  and cytokines, 59
  and KIR expression, 47
  responses to viral infection, 57–59
NKG2A, 51
NKG2C, 51
NKG2D, 51
  in adaptive immunity, 53–54
  in innate immunity, 52–53
  ligands of, 52
NKG2D-S, 52
NKG2E, 51
NK-κB
  activation by TRIF, 4
NKR-P1, 51
NLDC-145, 88
NOD/SCID mice, 110

Oblivious, 35
OVA, 88–89
  and antigen presentation, 90
  and T cell immunity, 91–93
Ovalbumin. *See* OVA

p38 kinases, 77
  and TRAF6, 80
PAMPs, 1–2, 11, 42
PanR1, 35
Pathogen-associated molecular patterns. *See* PAMPs
Pathogen recognition receptors. *See* PRRs
pDCS and SLE, 109–110
Pellino1, 7
Pellino2, 7
Pellino3, 7
Pellino family of proteins, 7
Peptide-MHC class II complexes, 65
Peripheral tolerance, 108–109
  by DCs, 88–91
  in immunity, 12–13
Phagocytosis, 83
Plasmacytoid DCs (pDCs), 106
Population diversity in KIR, 48
Pregnancy and complement regulation, 149–155
Processive amplification, 126
Proinflammatory cytokine production, 2, 3
  influenced by TRIF, 4
PRRs, 1, 11, 42

RAET1 genes, 52
RANK, 79
Recombinant of genes, 49
RelA/p65, 41
RelB, 41
Relish, 41
Response regulator model for CD19 function, 128
Response regulators, 125
Rheumatoid factor antibodies, 15

RNA and toll-like receptors (TLRs), 1
RNA tumor cells, 52

SA and C3d, 132
SAM domains, 33
SARM, 5–6, 33
SCID mouse, 110
SCRs of CR2, 141
Self-antigens, tolerance to, 13
Short consensus repeat (SCR) domain, 129
Signaling cascades, 2
Signal one–signal two theory, 94
Signal transducers, 78
Signal transduction
  biochemistry of, 30–32
  in DCs, 80
  and TIRAP, 3
Skin inflammation and LCs, 118
SLE
  influenced by pDCs, 109–110
  and role of complement receptor 2, 141–144
Smad7, 43–44
SNPs, 99
Spätzle gene, 20
Species specificity of KIR, 48
SSc, 133
Staphylococcus aureus and infection susceptibility, 100–101
Sterile Alpha Motif domains, 33
Streptavidin, 132
Streptococcus pneumoniae regulation by CD21/35, 130–131
Substitution single nucleotide polymorphisms, 99
Suppressor cells in immunity, 13
Systemic autoimmunity, 141
Systemic lupus erythematosus. *See* SLE
Systemic sclerosis, 133

TAAs, 107
TAB1, 42
TAB2, 42
TAPs, 87
TBK1, 6–7
T cell activation
  and autoimmunity, 15–16
  by DCs, 80
  and dendritic cell maturation, 14–15
T cell homeostasis promoted by TSLP, 71–75
T cell immunity
  and environmental proteins, 92–93
  initiated by DCs, 92
  via DEC-205 receptor, 91–92
T cells
  activation by DCs, 105–106
  and clonal deletion, 13
  and dendritic cells, 63
  and NK receptors, 51
  receptors, 11–12
  regulatory, 13
    and induction of adaptive immune response, 14
    and peripheral tolerance, 13
  tolerance maintenance by CR2, 144
TCR and CD4+ T cells proliferation, 72–73
TGFβ signaling pathway, 43
Thymic stromal lymphopoietin. *See* TSLP
Thymus and TSLP expression, 71–72
TI antigens and CD21/34-deficient mice, 129–130
TICAM-1. *See* TRIF
TICAM-2. *See* TRAM
Tight-skin mice, 133
TIR, 19
TIR adapter proteins, 29–37
TIR domain, 2
TIR domain-containing adaptors, 3–6
TIR domain-containing adaptor inducing IFN-β. *See* TRIF
TIR domain-containing Adaptor Protein. *See* TIRAP
TIR motifs, 31–32
TIRAP, 3–4, 6–7
TKR3 signaling, 34
TLR1, 2
TLR2, 1, 2, 30, 32
  ligands of, 12
  and TIRAP, 3
TLR3, 1, 3, 7, 29, 30, 36
  ligands of, 12
  and TIR adapter protein, 32–33
  and TIRAP, 3
  and TRIF, 4
TLR4, 1, 3, 7, 30, 32
  ligands of, 12
  recognition specificity of, 29
  and signal transduction, 23–25
  and TIR adapter protein, 32–33
  and TIRAP, 3
  and TRAM, 5
  and TRIF, 4
TLR5, 1, 2, 30
  and TIRAP, 3
TLR6, 2

TLR7, 1, 2, 30, 36
  ligands of, 12
  and TIRAP, 3
TLR8, 36
TLR9, 1, 2, 30, 36
  and B cell activation, 15
  ligands of, 12
  and TIRAP, 3
TLR10, 30
TLR-IL-1R signaling pathway, 7
TLRs, 1–2, 42
  and autoimmunity, 15–16
  and dendritic cell maturation, 64
  linking innate and adaptive immunity, 11–12
  recognition specificities of, 29
  role in protection from infections, 14–15
  and signaling pathway, 2–3
  signaling pathways, 36
  and their ligands, 12
TLR signaling pathway, 6, 43–44
TNFR, 77–79
TNF receptor, 77–79
Toll-5, 21
Toll-9, 21
Toll-IL-1R domain. *See* TIR domain
Toll/IL-1R identity region. *See* TIR
Toll/IL-1R/Resistance motifs. *See* TIR motifs
Toll-like receptors. *See* TLRs
Toll receptor families, 19–20
Toll receptors expression by DCs, 107
Tonsils and TSLP expression, 71–72
TRAF1, 78
TRAF2, 78
TRAF3, 78
TRAF6, 7, 32, 34, 42–44, 77–80
  and DC maturation, 79–80
TRAF proteins, 78
TRAM, 4–7, 33, 34
TRANCE, 79
TRANCE-R, 79
Transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, 115–116
Transporters for antigenic peptides. *See* TAPs
Tr cells. *See* T cells, regulatory
TRIF, 4, 7, 29, 32–34
  and TLR3-mediated pathway, 4, 6
  and TLR4-mediated pathway, 4, 6
  and TRAF6, 7
  and TRAM, 5
TRIF-Related Adaptor Molecule. *See* TRAM
Trophoblast cells and complement activation, 151
TSLP
  promoting T cell homeostasis, 71–75
  triggering allergic inflammation, 69–70
TSLP receptor, 69
TSLPR, 69
Tumor-associated antigens, 107
Tumors affected by NKG2D, 52–54
Tumor targets recognition by NK cells, 57–58
Tyrosines, 126

UCM, 29
Ugly mutation, 35
UL18, 58
Unmethylated CpG DNA, 1–2
Upregulation of costimulatory molecules. *See* UCM
Upregulation of costimulatory proteins, 29, 34

Vaccination therapy and use of DCs, 107–108
Vaccine biology, 93–94
Vacuolar ATPase. *See* V-ATPase
V-ATPase, 66–67
Viruses
  and NKG2D, 53
  recognition by NK cells, 58–59

Y-Ae antibody, 90